Snyder, Virginia; And Others

The Classroom Music Program.

Bloomington Public Schools, Minn.

501p.

MF-$0.65 HC-$19.74

*Curriculum Guides; *Grade 4; *Grade 5; *Grade 6; Musical Instruments; Music Appreciation; *Music Education; Vocal Music

ABSTRACT

GRADES OR AGES: Grades 4, 5, and 6. SUBJECT MATTER: Music. ORGANIZATION AND PHYSICAL APPEARANCE: The introductory section contains material on the purpose, general objectives, and organization of the program; recommendations for the classroom vocal program, the classroom instrumental program, the classroom music listening program, and the non-classroom music program; and a scope and sequence chart. Each grade level has sections on 1) materials, equipment and supplies; 2) classroom vocal program; 3) classroom instrumental program; and 4) classroom listening program, with appendixes on vocal, instrumental, and listening resources. There is also a glossary of common terms and symbols, and an 11-item bibliography. The guide is mimeographed and spiral bound with a soft cover. OBJECTIVES AND ACTIVITIES: General objectives are listed in the introductory material. Behavioral objectives are listed at the beginning of each section of the three grades. Activities are listed in detail for each grade in the vocal, instrumental, and listening sections. INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS: Texts, records, and other materials are listed at the beginning of each grade and are also referred to in relation to the activities. The appendixes for each grade include additional instructional material. STUDENT ASSESSMENT: There is a pre-test for each grade. (MBM)
THE CLASSROOM MUSIC PROGRAM

BLOOMINGTON PUBLIC SCHOOLS
INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT NO. 271
BLOOMINGTON, MINNESOTA
1969

MR. FRED M. ATKINSON
Superintendent of Schools

Mr. P. Arthur Hoblit
Assistant Superintendent
in charge of
Secondary Education

Mr. Bernard Larson
Assistant Superintendent
in charge of
Elementary Education

Mr. Stanley Gilbertson
Assistant Superintendent
in charge of
Curriculum, K-12

Mr. Allan W. Christensen
Coordinator of Music, K-12

Board of Education

Mr. James Kempf, Chairman
Mr. Earl Fischer
Mr. Luther Ford
Mr. Raymond Glumack
Dr. Harley Racer
Dr. Robert Rainey

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH,
EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION
THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRO-
DUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM
THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIG-
INATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPIN-
IONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY
REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDU-
CATION POSITION OR POLICY.
Music Curriculum Committee

Mrs. Doris Maxvold, K
Mrs. Carol Gackle, 1
Miss Betty Zimmerman, 2
Mrs. Alma Taragos, 3
Mrs. Eloise Kelle, 4
Mrs. Helen Timmons, 5
*Mrs. Shirley Rolfe, 6
Mr. Kenneth Johnson, RCS
Mrs. Linda Reed, RCS

Miss Claire Snider, Elem. Prin.
Mr. John Waldow, Elem. Prin.
**Mrs. M. Ruth Pribble, Jr. Hi.
Mrs. Alveris VanFleet, Jr. Hi.
Mr. John Dennis, Jr. Hi.
Mr. Robert Shannon, Sr. Hi.
Mr. James Bontrager, Sr. Hi.
Mr. Gerald Nichols, Sec. Ass't. Prin.
Mr. Daniel Jones, Sec. Ass't. Prin.

Music Consultants

Mrs. Marilyn Cathcart
Mrs. Karen Johnson
Mr. Dale Copeland
Miss Janice Wiest
Mrs. Emily Burggraff
Mrs. Martha Babbitt

Mrs. Barbara Marick
Mrs. Betty Erickson
Mrs. Shadford Bailey
Mrs. Jane Wold
Mrs. Jean Larson

Music Curriculum Writing Team

Miss Virginia Snyder
Miss Janice Wiest
Mrs. Marilyn Hooker
Mrs. Karen Johnson
Mrs. Eloise Kelle
Mrs. Helen Timmons

Mrs. Shirley Rolfe
Mrs. Alveris VanFleet
Miss Theano Pappas
Mr. James Bontrager
Mr. Gordon Barry

* Elementary Chairman
** Secondary Chairman
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bloomington School Philosophy.</th>
<th>v</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overview.</td>
<td>vi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization.</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Music Program.</td>
<td>viii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Objectives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommendations for the Classroom Vocal Program.</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommendations for Classroom Instrumental Program.</td>
<td>xvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommendations for the Classroom Music Listening Program</td>
<td>xxii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Non-Classroom Music Program</td>
<td>xxiv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope and Sequence</td>
<td>xxx</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Goldenrod Section**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Grade Four Program</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Materials, Equipment and Supplies.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classroom Vocal Program</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classroom Instrumental Program</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classroom Listening Program</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocal Resource</td>
<td>A-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrumental Resource.</td>
<td>B-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listening Resource.</td>
<td>C-1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Green Section**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Grade Five Program</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Materials, Equipment and Supplies.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classroom Vocal Program</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classroom Instrumental Program</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classroom Listening Program</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocal Resource</td>
<td>A-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrumental Resource.</td>
<td>B-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listening Resource.</td>
<td>C-1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Buff Section**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Grade Six Program</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Materials, Equipment and Supplies.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classroom Vocal Program</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classroom Instrumental Program</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classroom Listening Program</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocal Resource</td>
<td>A-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrumental Resource.</td>
<td>B-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listening Resource.</td>
<td>C-1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary of Common Terms and Symbols | D-1 |
Bibliography | D-7

iii
The philosophy of education of the Bloomington Public Schools professes the belief that each child should develop his potential to the fullest, and to meet his intellectual, moral, spiritual, aesthetic, vocational, physical, and social needs as an individual, an American citizen, and a member of the world community.

It believes the following basic principles. We believe in:

- The value of the individual personality.
- The worth of the individual.
- The individual's potentialities.
- The individual patterns of human growth.
- The individuality of learning.
- The value of good mental and physical health of the individual.
- The importance of the moral and spiritual values of the individual.
- The individuals who need to identify with groups.
- The value of creative instruction.
- Continuous educational research and utilization of its findings.
- The value of excellence in all instruction.
OVERVIEW

Music is a part of every child's life. As a means of expression and as an area for appreciation, it can, and should be, an important facet of human personality.

Musical growth is a gradual understanding of musical concepts, a perfection of skills, and a maturing awareness and appreciation of the value of music. The cultivation of this area of human growth frequently is left in large measure to the school. The incidental contact pre-schoolers have with music is usually a pleasant experience and it behooves the teacher and the school to maintain and build upon this positive attitude toward music.

Music as an area of instruction in the schools has two primary roles. First is the active role of the performer, the composer, the producer. Each child should be encouraged, if not required, to develop the knowledge, skill and competence in vocal and instrumental expression to be able to contribute as an individual and as a member of a group toward a satisfying musical experience. He should, also, be encouraged in his creative endeavor. This very challenging objective or goal requires the structuring of a sound program and the enthusiastic utilization of all resources for its realization.

The second basic role of the program is that of the appreciator, the listener, the consumer. Inasmuch as the student does not "perform" the music, this role is passive; yet the activeness of a reactor or responder to music does not suggest a truly passive role. This role provides for the utilization of the creative urge inherent in all pupils, for expression related to music such as rhythmic, pictorial, dramatic and other kinds of individual expression. The continuing refinement of musical taste, through the introduction of the more challenging and interesting musical forms and development of discriminating listening is necessary for the achievement in this role.
In the Bloomington Elementary Schools, the classroom teacher has the responsibility for classroom instruction of music in all its aspects. Consultive help is provided each teacher by a music consultant when the teacher requests it. This includes a broad variety of kinds of help such as the identification and preparation of materials for instruction, the demonstration of effective methods of instruction, the observation of the teachers' classroom procedures, teacher-consultant conferences and any other techniques that can be of help in making recommendations to the teacher for improvement. In addition, supervisory help is provided the classroom teacher by the elementary principal who functions as the supervisor in all areas of instruction within the building.

The elementary classroom music program is organized into three basic parts-the vocal program, the instrumental program and the listening program.

**The classroom vocal program:** Vocal music is instructed at all grade levels (K through six) in the elementary schools by the classroom teacher. Basic materials are provided for effective instruction and specific grade objectives are identified in this Guide. All students take part in the vocal music program with the basic objectives to sing with accuracy, to independently read music and, perhaps even most important, to enjoy music. Vocal music is taught through rote instruction and the use of syllables for note reading to develop independence in this subject area.

**The classroom instrumental program:** Instruction in simple rhythm and tonal instruments is a basic part of the classroom music program. Rhythm instruments are used in grades one, two and three. The Keyboard is introduced in the third grade. Flutophones are used in the fourth grade for a pre-instrumental experience. Instructional materials are provided by the school with other special instructional needs, such as flutophones, purchased by the students. The classroom instrumental program provides the necessary tools for the development of music reading and a readiness for more advanced instrumental instruction which will be given to all students in the fifth grade. In addition, the autoharp, melody bells and resonator bells are used in all grades.

**The classroom music listening program:** The development of attitudes, musical tastes and the skills of discriminating listening are the general objectives for providing systematic instruction in music listening. The introduction of basic music forms, the development of an understanding of the role of music in the culture and history of man and the introduction of persons whose contributions to the field of music have been of great significance aid in the achievement of these objectives. The utilization of instructional materials, such as basic texts, records and other related materials, enriches and facilitates this aspect of the program.

**The time allotments:** The development of balance in the music program is important. The skills of singing, playing and listening are all of value and none should be neglected. The State Department of Education recommends 125 minutes per week be devoted to music instruction. It is expected that the following weekly plan be followed in order to assure proper balance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weekly plan</th>
<th>Number of vocal lessons per week</th>
<th>3 - 75 minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of instrumental lessons per wk.</td>
<td>1 - 25 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of appreciation lessons per wk.</td>
<td>1 - 25 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>125 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE MUSIC PROGRAM

PURPOSE

Music instruction enables the individual to realize more fully his potential in the area of musical expression and appreciation and contributes to the development of each individual as a total being.

GENERAL OBJECTIVES

To develop positive attitudes and appreciation toward music in all of its various forms.

To develop skill in the use of the singing voice.

To develop skill in the utilization of musical instruments.

To develop an understanding of the system of notation and skill in reading and using the system.

To develop skill in utilizing musical knowledge in a creative manner.

To develop an extensive repertoire of musical experiences both vocal and instrumental.

To discover talents and abilities important to leisure-time pursuits.

To relate music to man's historical development and to contemporary society as well.
RECOMMENDATIONS FOR THE CLASSROOM VOCAL PROGRAM

The development of the vocal music program that stresses the enjoyment of singing while introducing and developing skills must be carefully structured. The introduction of many rote songs that are sung for enjoyment and provide an opportunity for building an extensive music repertoire is a first and continuing point of emphasis. At the same time, in the beginning program the utilization of a variety of activities to develop the skill to tone matching, ear development and good voice quality is necessary to acquaint the children with an awareness of basic tonal patterns. It is recommended that the beginning steps of instrumental instruction be begun concurrently with the vocal instruction through the use of rhythm instruments. At the same time, in the classroom listening program, basic ideas relative to simple compositions and the enjoyment and response to music should be developed.

Just as it is important in learning to read words that the child hear many words and say many words, it is also important in learning to read music that the child hears many songs and sings many songs before he attempts to read them. This part of the program then functions as a readiness program for music reading as well as developing lasting values of music enjoyment.

Following these beginning procedures, the vocal skills of the singing program and rhythmic skills of the instrumental program are both brought to bear on the formal music reading program in the third grade. At this time, the children should learn to identify and sing by syllables, phrases and whole songs having simple tonal and rhythmic patterns. A variety of key and time signatures are introduced and used in the instructional program. Both rote and note songs are instructed with the enjoyment of music, the improvement of singing skills and a growing independence in music reading as major goals.

The Rote Song

Individual and group tone-matching activities are used to develop this skill of singing simple songs. A large number of rote songs presenting simple tonal patterns and familiar intervals in well-known songs, will provide opportunities for such ear training. Simple songs of this type should be initially instructed in a rote manner without reference to the notes of the written page. Emphasis should be placed on the building of a large repertoire of songs for enjoyment. Recordings of songs in the basic text may well be utilized in the teaching of rote songs.

As soon as the children begin to use the books and read music even to a very limited degree, the printed page should become increasingly more meaningful to them. From the second grade on most rote song instruction should be done with the use of the books and all of the music reading abilities the children have thus far learned should be applied. Learning a song by rote, as it is used in this Guide, then does not mean ignoring the written music.

There are several methods of presentation of rote songs and the teacher is encouraged to use all methods and not rely on one alone. A charac-
teristic of all of these methods is that the children first hear the whole song several times. The children should be given something different to listen for each time they hear the song (repeated phrases, words, rhythm patterns, highest tone, etc.) In each case, motivational techniques such as talking about the title of the song, the source, the kind of song, the mood, the illustration and any other appropriate ideas should be utilized.

The alternate-phrase method:

1. The teacher sings or plays the whole melody through several times.
2. The children sing every other phrase as the song is sung or played through. (In some texts each new phrase is indicated with a dot or diamond.) Choose the easier phrases for the children to sing first.
3. Children then sing the alternate phrase as the song is sung or played.
4. This is repeated until the group is able to sing the song without teacher leadership.
5. Accompaniment may be added after the children know the song.
6. Regular review of the song assures retention and extend enjoyment.

The sing-it-back method:

1. The teacher sings or plays the whole song several times.
2. The teacher sings or plays a phrase.
3. The children repeat the phrase.
4. The teacher sings or plays the next phrase in the song.
5. The children sing it back.
6. This continues throughout the song.
7. The children sing the song putting the phrases together.
8. This is repeated until the children know the song.
9. Frequent review and practice assures retention.
10. Accompaniment may be added after children know the song.

The whole-song method:

1. The teacher sings or plays the song through several times.
2. The teacher sings or plays the song through and the children join in the singing.
3. If children have difficulty with a particular part, the teacher gives special help to that part.
4. Frequent practice and review assures retention.
5. Accompaniment may be added after children know the song.

All of these methods rely on the ability of the child to listen and to repeat or imitate with reasonable accuracy. Being able to match tones is a requisite for this learning and the instructional procedures to develop this ability should begin in kindergarten and continue through
the second, third and possibly the fourth grade. Some individual children need more help in this area and should be given continued help until they demonstrate reasonable competence. The building of a positive attitude and a wide repertoire of rote songs are, also, important facets of this program of ear and voice training.

Music Reading Readiness

The readiness for music begins and is a part of vocal music from the beginning. Virtually all activities contribute to the development of insight into music as a language or form of expression.

An introductory activity for the development of reading written music is the utilization of hand levels for leading or directing of children through a song. The teacher moves her hand, held horizontally, to visually describe tones as they go higher (hand up), or lower (hand down). This procedure can be used for both simple tone matching activities as well as simple rote songs. Relating this activity to notes or visual symbols on a staff by pointing out the similarity of the "up and down" of the hand and the location of the note or symbol with the tone is a next logical step.

As a following activity for reading music, the teacher may copy on the chalkboard part or all of a familiar song to be sung, (or by using the jumbo book in first grade). Then, through the use of a pointer, the teacher can point and the children follow the note symbols, again noting the "up and down" represented by these symbols on the staff as they correspond to the sound of the music they are singing.

Similarly, the teacher in introducing concepts of rhythm or meter, might instruct the children to listen carefully to songs she sings and to note the length of time different words are held. Simple lines or marks of varying length on the chalkboard, as in the following examples, may be counted as illustrated for 4\(\frac{1}{4}\) time:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{one} & \quad \text{two} & \quad \text{three} & \quad \text{four} \\
\text{one} & \quad \text{two} & \quad \text{three-four} & \\
\text{one-two} & \quad \text{three} & \quad \text{four}
\end{align*}
\]

It is frequently helpful to use a variety of techniques to reinforce this concept of difference of time values; for example, referring to "walking" notes, or words, and "running" notes, or words, to describe their time value.

The introducing of the music reading from the textbook is the next step by having the child use a "pointer finger" in the text. The teacher might first put the basic note pattern of the song on the board and, using a pointer, lead the children to follow it using a syllable like "loo." The children can then look in their textbooks and use a pointing finger "read" through a song using a simple mono-syllable. Frequent experience of this type develops an insight into the meaning of written music and prepares the children for following instruction in music reading.
First grade children should sing the scale ascending and descending with words and finally, syllables. In order to introduce the utilization of syllables in note singing, the children in second grade should have many experiences in singing syllables as an additional verse to a song already learned. This helps the children to associate the syllables with various tonal patterns even before they understand the function of syllables in music reading. They should further develop a fluency in singing scale patterns from the syllable chart. That is, once the tonality is established they should be able to sing from any note in the scale to the next one up or down without difficulty. Beyond this, second grade children should be able to sing tonic-chord patterns, i.e., and sequence of the notes do-mi-sol-do, and should be made aware of the more obvious of these patterns as they are found in their songs. In the latter part of the school year, second grade children should learn to build both ascending and descending scale on the staff in the key of F. They should also be able to build and identify on the staff do-mi-sol in the key of F.

The use of the syllables do-re-mi, etc., for reading whole songs is introduced in grade three as soon as the children review the scale both ascending and descending and the tonic-chord patterns (do-mi-sol-do). Reference to the written scale strengthens in the mind of each child the relationship between the printed symbols and the sounds.

**Reading System**

In the Bloomington Elementary Schools, the syllables or the "moveable do system" is used for note reading instruction. The reading of whole songs by syllables begins in third grade. The teacher should review the readiness activities before she begins the introduction of the syllable reading. It is important to review also those basic rhythmic concepts that have been introduced.

The first step in instructing with syllables is the review of the scale using do, re, mi, fa, sol, la, ti and do to represent the notes. It is important the children know this pattern by memory both going up and down and are able to sing it with a reasonable degree of accuracy. Some teachers have used simple exercises or song like "Do-Re-Mi" from The Sound of Music to motivate and encourage the children.

As this part of the program is being developed, it is important for the teacher to continue to develop the pupils' competence with basic tonal patterns that appear with frequency. Common patterns are scalewise tones such as "do-re-mi-re-do," "sol-fa-sol" and intervals of thirds, "do-mi-do," "do-mi-sol-mi-do." Continued identification of these patterns, both their sound and their appearance, by writing them on the board is helpful.
Use of Textbook

The pupils' first experience with a textbook will come in the first grade with the use of the jumbo book. Important goals of this introduction to the text include the ability to learn the pattern of reading the words of a song reading from left to right, and following the melodic direction. It is at this time that the knowledge of the notes of simple rhythm and tonal patterns are brought to bear on the singing of a simple song. The simple syllable "loo" is recommended to be used as an additional verse initially with the introduction of the proper syllable names following in subsequent grades. Before using the syllable in the manner described, the teacher should teach the songs in a rote manner.

The instruction in music reading introduces the children a basic skill for independence in music. The ability to unlock written music will depend largely on the ability of the child to interpret musical symbols and terms as they exist in our notation system. The enjoyment of music should not be minimized at this point and frequent review of well-known and well-liked songs, as well as "singing for fun," is a must. It, however, is a truism to state that one enjoys what he does well. Therefore, effective instruction to develop skill, combined with enthusiastic and eager pupil participation, will not only increase the level of skill but will also heighten the interest of the children.

When beginning instruction using syllables, the teacher should avoid the added complexity of the key signature until confidence is developed in the use of the syllables by the children. For this reason, the recommendations for beginning notes songs is to point out the position of "do." The key and the starting tone are both indicated in the teacher's edition of Exploring Music. "Do", indicated by an "X", is marked in color in the Follett books. From the identified "do" position, the children should count up or down to find the beginning note and proceed from there. The following is a recommended step-by-step procedure for teaching the syllables.

Suggested Procedure for Music Reading

1. Motivate using title, picture, source and type of song.
2. Read through words and discuss.
3. Note time signature and discuss.
4. Clap through song . . . notice rhythm patterns.
5. Identify difficult or new rhythm patterns; put on board and practice.
6. Find "do" and then find beginning note if it is not "do."
7. Read through syllables in rhythm, not singing.
8. Identify difficult tone intervals; put on board and practice.
9. Note like phrases in tonal pattern and in rhythmic patterns.
10. Sing through the whole song using syllables with teacher helping when necessary. In the upper grades it may be advisable to divide the song into two sections (for example: verse and chorus), the syllables and words for the easier part one day and learning the remaining part a second day.
11. Sing through whole song using words.
12. Sing song frequently in future lessons to establish it as part of repertory.

The final basic step in vocal music reading is the instruction of "how to find do" which occurs in the beginning of the fourth grade. In grade three, the teacher indicates the position of "do" for the pupils. Because this position changes, it is likely there will be much curiosity about this moveability of "do" as it occurs on different lines and spaces. The children should learn that the position of "do" for any given key signature is constant. That is, the position of "do" is determined by the key signature.

When introducing the key signature, the pupils should be told of the position of "do" when there are no sharps or flats (key of C). They simply have to memorize this. Then introduce the two additional basic rules as they relate to the presence of sharps or flats in the signature. These may be explained in this way:

The key signature is the number of sharps or flats, or absence of them which occur on the staff immediately following the clef sign. When flats occur in the key signature, the right hand flat is on the same line or space as "fa." When sharps occur in the key signature, the right hand sharp is on the same line or space as "ti." In each case, the pupil should count up or down to find "do."

The introduction of major and minor keys and the effect of these keys as they convey a mood or feeling in the music occurs in third grade. To determine whether or not a song is in a major or minor key by looking at the music is introduced in grade four. A simple general rule to follow is if the song ends on "do," it is a major key; if it ends on "la," it is in a minor key.

It is always well for the teacher to take children from where they are (conducting a thorough review of concepts introduced in previous grades) and to attempt to develop and extend their knowledge, background and enthusiasm for the "language" of music. It is a mistake to take for granted that because a concept was introduced it should be known by the pupils. An understanding of individual differences certainly suggests that, in some cases, many will remember; in other cases, only a few will retain the knowledge of a fact.

Daily Lesson Procedure

The development of sound classroom procedures for music instruction is an integral part of any good program. While deviations from any specific procedure are likely, inasmuch as the particular talents of each teacher are interjected into every curriculum area, it is still of importance that a basic procedure be established and that, generally, teachers be expected to follow it. The design of the classroom lesson procedure reflects the thinking that the program must be enjoyed, must be instructional and must be organized. For this reason, each daily plan should include some singing "just for fun," some instruction in the skills of music reading either in rote singing or in note singing, and some scheduled review of previously learned skills and song. The lesson procedures for
vocal music, instrumental music and music listening are similar. For
clearly, a plan suitable for each will be presented. The time allocation
is twenty-five minutes per day for grades one through six with more time
being given to music activities in kindergarten and is consistent with
the recommendation of the Minnesota State Department of Education Curriculum
Bulletin #4.

Recommended Daily Lesson Plan--Vocal Lesson (25 minutes)

1. Sing review songs, songs recently introduced . . 5
   minutes (review any basic skill taught in context
   such as finding "do," expression, tempo, etc.)
2. Introduce new song . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 15
   minutes
   a. Point out new skill in reading notation if
      note song. Practice specific aspects of
      the song as required for learning.
   b. Use approved procedures with rote song.
3. Sing for fun . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .5
   minutes
   a. Familiar songs children have learned and
      enjoy.
   b. Popular, folk, and fun songs.
   c. Use songs creatively, i.e., make up songs,
      act out songs, add instrumentation with
      the use of autoharp, bells, water glasses,
      rhythm instruments, etc.

Total time . . 25 minutes

- Any new notation content that is to be introduced
  should be on the chalkboard for effective instruction
  and ready use.
- Songs to become a real part of children's repertoire
  must be sung a number of times. Do not hesitate to
  repeat them.

It is expected that at least two new rote songs and one new note song
be taught each week in grades three through six.

In grade three, note songs are those songs which are sung by syllables
only on common tonal groupings as well as songs sung by syllables
throughout.

In grades four through six, only songs sung by syllables throughout
will be considered note songs. Songs sung with syllables only on
common tonal groupings will be considered rote songs in those grades.
In the primary grades, before note singing is introduced, it is advis-
able to teach at least three rote songs each week.
RECOMMENDATIONS FOR CLASSROOM INSTRUMENTAL PROGRAM

The instrumental program is a basic part of the classroom music program and provides for breadth of musical development with the initial focus on rhythmic expression. Like the vocal program, it has as its main objective the development of a positive attitude. Its specific focus initially, through the use of rhythm instruments, is the development of rhythmic skills. With the introduction in grade four of flutophones, the instrumental program provides for the developing of an awareness of tonal differences and the ability to produce them using simple tonal instruments. Insofar as the classroom instrumental program leads to instruction by music consultant personnel with band and orchestra instruments, it may also be said that the program is requisite to more advance instrumental instruction.

The sequence of instruments used in the classroom program is as follows:

Grades Kindergarten, 1, 2 and 3 - Rhythm instruments
Grade - Flutophones
Grades 3, 4, 5 and 6 - Keyboard experience

In each case written music is used for instruction and the basic skills of reading musical notation are expected as an outgrowth. In many instances, it is recommended to use the instruments with the music in the vocal music texts as well as with the music provided with the instruments. The recommendations of the authors in each teacher's edition of the basic music texts point out the selections that are most likely to lend themselves to use of instruments. Teachers should also make extensive use of available records and taped selections for effective instruction.

The instrumental program enriches and supplements the vocal music program. It provides an opportunity for the development of the rhythmic talents of children. This can be of particular value when working with children who lack other aspects of music ability inasmuch as the first focus of this program is on rhythmic instruction without the added complexity of tonal variation. Subsequently, through the use of simple tonal instruments (flutophones), enrichment and depth is introduced into the program. The stimulation of children's interest and participation in musical activities and the development of physical coordination in utilizing the instruments in a rhythmic manner are other important outcomes of this instruction.
Methods

Initial instruction in the area of instrumental music in the classroom program is limited to informal instruments such as rhythm instruments, flutophones, etc. This instruction, however, is important as a readiness for formal instrumental instruction as well as providing an opportunity for a richer program of musical expression.

An organized program of instruction is just as important in this aspect of the program as in any other part. For this reason, it should be well organized and systematic. The following lesson procedure is recommended for classroom use.

Recommended Daily Lesson Plan--Instrumental Lesson (25 minutes)

1. Review past lesson topic and understanding . . . 3 minutes
   - How to hold instrument
   - How to blow it, strike it, shake it, etc.
2. Introduce new content and establish goals . . . 15 minutes
   - Use chalkboard
   - Demonstrate
   - Provide practice opportunities
3. Provide for using instruments in an enjoyable activity
   - Play familiar "fun" music
   - Exchange instruments or parts

   25 minutes

Rhythm Instruments (Grades Kindergarten, One, Two and Three)

The classroom instrumental program in kindergarten, grades one, two and three used rhythm instruments. The instrumentation for this program includes:

- Rhythm sticks, one notched and one plain
- One pair of claves
- One pair of finger cymbals
- Tambourines
- Jingle clogs
- Snare boys (drum effects) and mallets
- Tom-Boys (tom-tom effects) and mallets
- Triangles with strikers
- Cymbals with straps and rhythm stick strikers
- Sand blocks
- Tone blocks and mallets
- Hand drums

These instruments are available in every building, usually in the office or the resource center, in sufficient quantities for instruction. Classroom teachers are expected to use them in accordance with the time recommendations of about twenty-five minutes per week.
The development of instrumental readiness should be an enjoyable experience for the boys and girls. Teachers should utilize rhythmic activities from all aspects of the music program. The following rhythmic activities are recommended for the development of readiness and should be emphasized particularly in kindergarten and first grade. It is important for the teacher to provide experiences in all of the areas and not focus her attention on any one. Specific classroom activities are suggested and illustrated in the appropriate graded section of this Guide.

1. Directed bodily responses (walking, marching, tiptoeing, running, skipping, jumping, hopping, galloping, swinging, swaying, clapping and ball bouncing) to recorded or live music (sung by children or by the teacher).
2. Singing games
3. Free play to music
4. Imitative play to music
5. Listening to music and developing (through the guidance of the teacher) a concept of long or held tones as opposed to short or quick-moving tones.

The introduction of rhythm band instruments should begin in kindergarten. All children should have instruction and experiences with each instrument gaining a familiarity with how to hold it and play it. Unison playing, or having the different instruments take turns, or different rows take turns, are suggested simple introductory procedures. The basic objective here is to familiarize each child with each instrument and to prepare him for eventually using it in a music activity. Simple familiar songs or records should be used. All playing should be done by rote.

In the first grade the teacher should review the above activities and begin the development of the skill of reading notation including the quarter, half and eighth note and quarter rest. The following symbols should be introduced to indicate procedures of reading music notation: the staff, treble clef sign, the use of bar lines to indicate measures, double bar lines and the repeat sign. Time signatures of two-four, three-four and four-four should be introduced and the significance of the top number explained. Specific suggestions for lesson procedures are included in the graded sections for the appropriate grades.

It is recommended that different rhythm patterns be played at the same time by different instruments after success in unison playing. In kindergarten all patterns should be in unison. In first grade, it is best to have no more than three patterns played at the same time. By the end of third grade, approximately five or six rhythm patterns should be played simultaneously. This should not suggest that unison and fewer rhythm pattern selections should not be continued throughout the program for they provide for continued enjoyment of familiar music activities.
When introducing the playing of multiple rhythm patterns, after successful unison playing, it is best to have several instruments play the basic pattern throughout the song and another group of instruments play a different pattern. The teacher can use any number of basic note patterns. New patterns, using the notational skills already introduced, can be presented by the teacher or even suggested by the children. Illustrations of this are included in the appropriate graded section.

As new notational symbols (half note, half rest) are introduced and developed, they can be used for more varied and interesting activities. It is well to note that as the development of multiple part playing occurs, it is recommended that one part be added at a time, such as from three parts to four and then five.

It is important that when playing parts, the concept of strong or principal beats be identified by having the heavy sounding or loud instruments such as the tone block, drums or cymbals, played on these beats. In two-four time (or fast six-eight), this is beat one; in three-four time, it is beat one; and in four-four time, it is beat one and beat three. It is expected that several songs will be available in each building written on large paper using three to six staffs to facilitate instruction of music reading of multiple parts.

**Flutophones (Grade Four)**

In the fourth grade, flutophones are used in the classroom instrumental music program. Children in these grades provide their own instruments by purchasing them at school. Printed music and other instructional needs are provided by the school.

The instruction of the flutophone is a basic part of the development of the instrumental program in that it introduces the complexity of tone variation at the same time as reading the different rhythmic patterns the notes represent. The manner in which the flutophone is played, i.e., the covering of designated finger holes, makes it possible for some children who may be limited in vocal ability to produce good results. For this reason, this program offers to the "poor singer" an opportunity for success in an important part of the music program.

**Content**

It is important that the teacher and pupils review the music reading skills introduced, such as time signature, kinds of notes and note values, staff, bar lines, measures, repeat signs and other notational signs and symbols previously introduced. At this time, the significance of the treble clef sign as the "G" clef should be explained and the letter names of the treble clef staff demonstrated fully. It is suggested that the two simple sayings for identifying the lines and spaces be learned:

1. Lines from bottom -- *Every Good Boy Does Fine*
2. Spaces from bottom -- *F A C E* (face)
It is also important to point out that the letter names of the scale are in alphabetical order from the bottom to the top of the staff, i.e., B, F, G, A, B, C, D, E and F and that the musical alphabet goes from A to G and repeats when necessary. Ledger lines should be introduced when necessary to show the procedure used for notes above and below the staff.

Suggestions for the introduction of the flutophone may be found in the graded section for the appropriate grade.

In subsequent lessons, fingering positions for specific notes should be introduced and simple melodies played. New songs should be introduced to the children weekly and they should be encouraged to practice them at home. The material and music provided give ample opportunity for new combinations and simple melodies.

Music Time With Flutophone is the basic text.

The flutophones should also be used, when appropriate, to accompany vocal selections.

Keyboard Experience (Grades 3, 4, 5 and 6)

Perhaps the most common of all musical instruments in our society is the piano. The piano not only functions as an instrument for accompaniment but also offers a help in the selection of pitch and simple chording with singing or instrumental music. It is felt that a basic knowledge of the piano and how it can be used in a desirable goal of the music program.

Keyboard experience differs from piano instruction in that the piano keyboard is used as a teaching aid for the better understanding of music in general and for teaching children how to make simplified use of the piano. In this way, it can be used to develop better singers, music readers and listeners.

Keyboard experience is another means by which children may be helped to sing on pitch, understand scale structure, understand intervals, develop a sense of harmony, develop note-reading skill and know the piano keyboard.

The piano does not replace bells, autoharp, and other teaching aids but, rather, is used along with them. Knowledge of the piano makes for more intelligent use of other instruments.
Through the use of keyboard experience the child will develop and extend broad areas of knowledge of music. These include an increased number of practical musical experiences, a stimulation to further musical experiences, seeing the relationship of notes and their uses in songs, learning the fundamentals of music, developing listening skills, and developing creative skills in music.

Content

The teacher should provide each student with a three octave tagboard keyboard, or have the students make them (specific directions are included in the graded Instrumental Resource section). The student should have the keyboard before him at all times during classroom keyboard music activities. While at times no reference will be made to the paper keyboard, it should be one hand in the event some discussion arises where reference to it will make for clearer understanding. The piano should always be present and, if possible, the bells and autoharp should be on hand.

Third graders are introduced to the keyboard in approximately six lessons. They should learn to play the C Major scale, the arrangement of whole steps and half steps that comprise a Major scale and how to play a five finger melody.

Chords are introduced in the fourth grade with the building of the triads I - vii° in C Major. Approximately nine lessons are devoted to keyboard activities in grade four.

Fifth grade work, again in nine lessons, focuses on the primary chords in C Major, harmonizing melodies with the I and V chords in root position and finally using the V7 chord.

Harmonizing simple C Major melodies using I, IV and V7 chords is pursued in grade six and finally expanded to include the key of G Major. Approximately eighteen lessons are devoted to keyboard experience in the sixth grade.

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR THE CLASSROOM MUSIC LISTENING PROGRAM

In the Bloomington Elementary Schools, instruction in the music listening program is a basic part of the classroom music program. One period each week, or an equivalent amount of time, should be devoted to this particular area. This would total about twenty-five minutes directly focused on the development of those activities that would lend themselves primarily to instilling a positive attitude toward music. Instruction in music listening related closely to the other areas of instruction, vocal and instrumental, in that it requires the development of listening skills, some
recognition and understanding of structure of music and an awareness of the diversity of rhythmic patterns, tonal differences and music moods. This area of music instruction relates to the more passive, i.e., the non-performing role of the reactor, listener or appreciator. As previously mentioned, however, the "appreciator" in a real sense does perform certain activities in response to and in relation with the music, as in the case of the researcher who looks into the life of a composer or the background of a musical composition.

It is in this area of instruction that the school transmits the musical heritage through the presentation, identification and instruction of musical selections. The student is exposed to many types of compositions, composers and performers and the history and development of this material are primarily in the pedagogic area, rather than on the musical talents and skills of the teacher.

Methods

The appreciation of music, its structure, its variety, its complexity and its beauty, is based partly upon a knowledge and understanding of it. It is well then for the teacher to have in mind, when planning classroom activities, specific goals for pupil attainment. The planning of purposeful classroom activities in the music program is as important as in any other subject area.

The following lesson procedure is recommended for classroom use.

Recommended Daily Lesson Plan--Music Listening Lesson (25 minutes)

1. Review past lesson topic and understandings . . 3 minutes
   - Various "moods" of music
   - Composers
   - Kinds of compositions
   - Folk music around the world
   - Instruments
2. Introduce new topic and set purposes of . . . . 15 minutes
   goals; present materials, highlight points of interest, recordings, story, etc.
3. Discuss content in terms of the objectives . . 7 minutes
   or purposes; draw conclusions and decide method of recording them.
   - Make booklet, write summary, draw pictures, etc.

Content

In kindergarten and the first grade, simple familiar musical forms are used to introduce to the children an understanding of the differences existing in music structure and purpose. A lullaby, for example, to put a person to sleep, and a dance to stimulate their sense of rhythm. This concept of musical structure is expanded in the fourth grade by the introduction of a number of additional forms of music such as the gavotte, the chanty, the waltz and others. Point out the purposes for
the different types of music with review of the previously taught types. In the sixth grade, the major forms of music such as the symphony, suite, opera and others are introduced as the most complex of musical forms. Recommended examples are used to demonstrate the aspects of their structure and effectiveness. In this manner, it is felt that a basic knowledge of the different types and forms of musical composition and the purposes for which they were used can be developed.

Not only do we identify and describe forms of music but also, beginning in the second grade, we begin introducing the instruments that are used to produce this music. In the second grade, the introduction of the families of the orchestra is felt to be an adequate beginning. Understanding the familial relationship of instruments that are blown, that are struck, that vibrate a reed or are plucked or bowed and the similarity of the sounds produced is the major objective at this point.

In grade four, a more extensive examination is made of each of the families of instruments with more focus on the specific instruments within each family, recognizing its shape, sound and the method of playing it. This offers a good opportunity to prepare the children for the selection of an instrument in grade five in the instrumental program. Collecting pictures of instruments, visiting the band practice sessions and having demonstrations in the classroom offer some opportunities for instruction.

In the listening program one of our goals is to bring about an understanding of "composership," that is, that most music is written, and that a composer is a creative, talented and somewhat unique person. In grade three, eight composers are introduced with examples of their music presented in the text material. It is suggested that some research into the life of the composer with booklets, discussions and reports be parts of the activities. Later in grade five, the original eight composers are reviewed and eight additional composers introduced. Again some of their works and their lives are presented with opportunities for research made available. More extensive study of some of the major works of these and other composers is a part of the sixth grade curriculum which also includes an introduction to some of the technique used in contemporary compositions.

The content of the music listening program is presented in the following graded outline. It follows a developmental progression and is organized into these parts: musical forms, composers and their compositions, musical instruments and their uses, musical organization and extensive listening experiences with a wide variety of selections suggested for use.

It is presented in such a way as to provide systematic listening experiences adopted from the basic listening series: R.C.A. Listening Program, Volumes I - VI; Adventures in Music Listening, Grades I - VI (R.C.A. Victor); Musical Sound Books Records and listening activities in Exploring Music (HRW). In addition, the study of composers requires the use of the Music Masters Series (Vox). Individual recordings demonstrating instruments of the orchestra in great works are further recommended in the graded sections of this Guide.
The Bloomington Schools employ music consultant personnel to provide leadership in the music instructional program throughout the elementary schools. The music consultant functions both in the classroom music program and in the non-classroom program such as band, string, and select chorus instruction.

Music consultants are assigned to schools by the elementary district office to work with the personnel in the schools under the direction of the elementary principal. Consultants are responsible to the principal of the building in which they are working according to the schedule of assignments. They are to develop a working schedule of instrumental instruction periods. This schedule should provide opportunity for the classroom teachers to sign out the services of the music consultant as well as setting regular times of instrumental instruction and chorus work. The consultant should provide leadership in the planning and execution in the music program through:

- Inservice work within the building in all areas of music instruction.
- Teacher consultation for improvement of the classroom music program through teacher-consultant conferences, classroom visitation, grade area meetings, demonstrations, workshops, clinics and the distribution of written materials.
- Instrumental instruction of all pupils in grade five, and in the school select band and string. The consultant screens students for placement in the select band, and strings, identifies music, organizes performances and sets up the annual music concert.
- Advisory service to the principals in recommending action to aid in the improvement of the music instructional program in the building.
- Serving as a consultant in connection with all special music programs or functions such as music festival, roundup, Mothers' Club, P.T.A., and other approved functions involving music.
- Operating the non-classroom music instructional program with respect to all business aspects of inventory, inspection and repair of instruments, storage and care of instruments, music and all materials, supplies and equipment of the music program.
- Identification and direction of the school select chorus as it provides an opportunity for the instruction of vocally skilled pupils. The music consultant screens all fifth and sixth grade students and selected gifted fourth grade students for placement in the school select chorus. The consultant selects the music, organizes the program, prepares for performances such as the annual spring concert, Mothers' Club, P.T.A. and other approved functions.
Music consultants also provide leadership at a district level. They meet regularly with the Coordinator of Music for the general purpose of the improvement of instruction of music.

The consultants work cooperatively with other music consultants under the direction of the music coordinator for the improvement of the music instructional program in the Bloomington Elementary Schools:

- To provide services as needed for inservice work at a district level for upgrading instruction.
- To direct attention toward curriculum study and development to improve the quality of the curriculum.
- To identify and recommend materials, supplies and equipment that would result in an improved quality of instruction. This should include instruments, mouthpieces, music and furniture.

The Select Chorus

The music consultants test all fifth and sixth grade children, and selected, gifted fourth grade children, as to their vocal ability. Children who demonstrate the interest and ability in vocal music are identified in this way and recommended by the consultants for the school select chorus. A good guideline in selecting children for the chorus is generally not to select more than a third of all the children tested. However, in buildings with very few fifth and sixth grade children this percentage should probably be exceeded. It is recommended that no chorus be smaller than forty or larger than eighty in number. The consultants inform the principal as to names of the children recommended. Weekly practices are held by the consultants of approximately forty-five minutes in length. Whenever possible, these practices are held outside of the regular school day or during the special activities-study period time.

The select chorus performs as opportunities present themselves, such as Mothers' Club visitation and student council meetings, and at other approved times. In the spring of the year the chorus holds a special performance, usually in cooperation with the select band to present to the parents the evidence of growth. Special performances of the select chorus or other vocal groups are permitted with authorization of the elementary district office.

The String Instrumental Instruction Program

The program of string instrument instruction in the Bloomington Schools is open to all fifth grade students and to sixth grade students who have had string instrument instruction. At the beginning of the year a demonstration of the string instruments is given to the students and a notice telling about the program is sent home with the children. This notice is returned with their parent's signature if they are interested in receiving instruction.
Classes are held once each week on a specified day for up to forty-five minutes. Because frequently more than one student is assigned to each school instrument, the instruments are taken home for practice in rotation during the week between classes. The students are expected to be responsible for getting instruments returned to the buildings at the specified time. At the end of the first semester, a string ensemble in each school will be selected.

Each fifth grader in the Bloomington School has a semester of instruction on a band or string instrument for one semester. Students electing a string instrument receive instruction the first semester and those electing a band instrument, the second semester.

Instruments are assigned on the basis of student choice, the number of instruments available and the results of the music aptitude test, (Selmer Music Guidance Survey) which is administered to each fifth grader at the beginning of the year. Because of the limited number of school instruments, the parents are encouraged to provide instruments for their child's instruction if they are able to do so.

The Select Strings

The student who completes successfully the first year of string classes is recommended for subsequent instruction and can register for classes in sixth grade.

String groups have performed at P.T.A. meetings, Mothers' Club meetings, student council programs, music festivals and on spring concert nights. These programs are arranged in each building with the principal. Participation in programs by string students is limited in the same way as in other performing activities. For special performances by these students, authorization from the elementary office is required.

The Band Instrumental Instruction Program

Band instruments are provided by the school and are assigned to fifth graders electing the band experience.

Band instruction is organized so all children receive two instrumental instructional periods each week. The first of these is a sectional class. Band instruments are grouped in five sections (clarinets; flutes and saxophones; percussion; trumpets, mellaphones and French Horns; and trombone, baritones and tubas.) The second instructional period is as a member of the classroom band which includes all of the sectional members.
The Select Band

At the conclusion of the fifth grade those students playing band instruments are evaluated by the consultants and recommended either for subsequent instruction as a member of the select band in grade six or for termination of formal band instruction. The competence, enthusiasm, interest and potential for future success are basic criteria for this evaluation. Children having their own instruments may continue with the consent of the music consultant.

In the beginning of sixth grade, those children recommended for select band are identified by the music consultant and the select band is organized. Music consultants notify the principal as to the names of pupils who are assigned to the select band.

Sectional practices for select band are held weekly and organized as in fifth grade. Full band practices are usually held weekly for about thirty to forty minutes in length. Frequently these are scheduled after or before school. Children continue with band instruction so long as they give evidence of interest and achievement. New enrollees are systematically evaluated by the music consultant for possible inclusion in the program.

The select band is not primarily a performing group. However, it is important that a reasonable number of opportunities be provided to help motivate and encourage growth. Occasional appearances at Mothers' Club meetings and student council functions in the building are usually sufficient. It is well to strongly resist the inclination to exploit the talents of individuals and groups of musically apt pupils. Special performances by the select band or other instrumental musical groups are permitted with authorization of the elementary district office.

Each select band is expected to perform annually for the parents of the school at the spring music concert to be held in May. This concert presents an opportunity to demonstrate the growth in competence of the band as a group and as individuals.

This concert is shared with the string ensemble and the chorus so that approximately one hour is used -- one-half band and strings and one-half chorus.

All-City Chorus

The Bloomington All-City chorus was first organized in October, 1962. It is a city-wide group of fifth and sixth grade pupils selected from the members of the select choruses of the elementary buildings. These children are selected at large from each building. The chorus is to have no more than two-thirds of either boys or girls. In order for a child to participate in this chorus, he must be a member of his building's select chorus, be recommended by the music consultant, and have his parents' approval to belong to the group.
The purposes of this chorus are:

- To present by means of public performances the highest type of achievement that can be exemplified by selected, talented children in the elementary vocal instructional program.

- To give the members the experience of being part of a large excellent chorus and through this means to develop a high level of skill in the use of their voice, in music reading, and in other aspects of vocal music.

- To understand that the singing voice is a form of communication and a way of expressing ideas and emotions.

- To make the student aware of his heritage through the use of good choral music taken from the classical music through the ages.

After a child is selected for the All-City Chorus, conduct, regular attendance and vocal performance will be considerations for continued membership. Pupils having two unexcused absences from rehearsals or performances will be automatically dismissed.

The All-City Chorus is administered by the All-City Chorus Committee which is made up of music consultants and includes the chorus director and an accompanist.

All-City Orchestra

The Bloomington All-City String Orchestra was organized in October, 1963. It is a city-wide organization made up of selected string instrument pupils from the various elementary string ensembles. At least one pupil from each building is included. Candidates for the orchestra are recommended by the building music consultant and evaluated by the director or assistant director.

The purposes of the orchestra are:

- To present by means of public performances the highest type of achievement that can be exemplified by selected talented children in the elementary instrumental instructional program.

- To give the members the experience of being a part of a large orchestra and through this means to develop a high level of skill in the use of their instrument, in music reading and in other aspects of instrumental music.

- To understand that instrumental music is a form of communication and a way of expressing ideas and emotions.
- To make the student aware of his heritage through the use of good music taken from the classical music through the ages.

After a child is selected for the All-City Orchestra, conduct, regular attendance and performance will be considerations for continued membership. Pupils having two unexcused absences from rehearsals or performances will be automatically dismissed.

The All-City Orchestra is administered by the All-City Orchestra Committee which is made up of music consultants and includes the orchestra director and accompanist.

All-City Band

The Bloomington All-City Band was just organized in 1964 and is a City-wide organization made up of selected sixth grade band students from the various elementary buildings. At least one pupil from each school is included. Candidates for the band are recommended by the building music consultant and evaluated by the director.

The purposes of the band are:

- To present by means of public performances the highest type of achievement that can be exemplified by selected, talented children in the elementary instrumental instructional program.

- To give the members the experience of being a part of a large band and through this means to develop a high level of skill in the use of their instrument, in music reading and in other aspects of instrumental music.

- To understand that instrumental music is a form of communication and a way of expressing ideas and emotions.

- To make the student aware of his heritage through the use of good music taken from the classical music through the ages.

After a child is selected for the All-City Band, conduct, regular attendance and performance will be considerations for continued membership. Pupils having two unexcused absences from rehearsals or performances will be automatically dismissed.

The All-City Band is administered by the All-City Band Committee which is made up of music consultants, including the director.
SCOPE & SEQUENCE (K-12)

The Scope and Sequence has been developed to provide guidelines for teachers in the instruction of music. Though music is a performing art, it is also an aural art and academic discipline that can be pursued and enjoyed without performing abilities. The Scope and Sequence, consequently, has been organized into the two main areas of concepts and skills as follows:

I. Concepts
   A. Rhythm
   B. Melody
   C. Harmony
   D. Form
   E. Expression

II. Skills and Experiences
   A. Vocal
   B. Instrumental
   C. Listening

III. Selected Topics

The chart on the following pages indicates the recommended time for initial introduction of the concept or skill identified. This is indicated by the code I and the line indicates continued instruction, expansion and development.
# MUSIC SCOPE AND SEQUENCE

## Levels

### I. CONCEPTS

#### A. RHYTHM

1. Beat (pulse)
   - a. Become aware of the pulse in music
   - b. Rhythm of the melody (rhythmic pattern)
   - c. Meter
   - d. Accents
   - e. Syncopation

2. Duration
   - a. Become aware of longer and shorter tonal durations
   - b. Written symbols depicting rhythmic duration
     1) \( \text{\textbf{\textbullet}} \), \( \text{\textbf{.}} \), \( \text{\textbf{\textbullet\textbullet}} \), and \( \text{\textbf{\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet}} \)
     2) \( \text{\textbf{\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet}} \), \( \text{\textbf{.}} \), and \( \text{\textbf{\textbullet}} \)
     3) \( \text{\textbf{\textbullet\textbullet}} \)
     4) \( \text{\textbf{\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet}} \)
     5) \( \text{\textbf{\textbullet}} \), \( \text{\textbf{\textbullet\textbullet}} \), and \( \text{\textbf{\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet}} \)
     6) Triplets

3. Meter signatures
   - a. 2/4, 3/4, and 4/4
   - b. 6/8 and 3/8
   - c. 3/2, 2/2, and 6
   - d. 9/8 and 12/8
   - e. Other compound and irregular meters

4. Tempo
   - a. Distinguish characteristics of fast and slow
   - b. Relate tempo to meter
   - c. Metric markings

### B. MELODY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kg</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Recognition of high and low
2. Melodic direction (ascending, descending, same)
3. Develop an awareness of melodic phrases
4. Movement in steps and skips
5. Pitch designation in treble clef
6. Tonality
   a. Major
   b. Minor
   c. Pentatonic
   d. Mode
   e. Other tonal organizations (whole tone, twelve tone row, etc.)
   f. Polytonality
7. Key Signatures
8. Chromatic tones
9. Pitch designation in bass clef

C. HARMONY
1. Awareness of multiple sounds
2. Chord changes produce harmonic movement
3. Melodies demand chord changes in accompaniment
4. Textures in music (polyphonic, homophonic)
5. Triad
6. Chord symbols
7. Intervals
8. Consonance - dissonance
9. Primary chords in major (I, IV and V)
10. Seventh chords
11. Primary chords in minor
12. Inversions

D. FORM
1. Awareness of musical phrases
2. Repetition and contrast (like and unlike tonal and rhythmic patterns and phrases)
3. Cadence
4. Themes
5. Specific musical forms
   a. Song forms – lullaby
   b.
I. More song
   - chanty

b. Dance forms – gavotte
   - minuet
   - waltz
   - ballet

c. Imitative forms – rounds and canons
   - rondo
   - theme and variations
   - fugue

d. Instrumental forms – march
   - program music
   - suite
   - sonata, concerto, symphony

e. Large vocal forms – operetta
   - opera
   - musical comedy
   - overture
   - oratorio and cantata
   - Art song

E. EXPRESSION
1. Respond to the mood
2. Dynamic markings
3. Tone color (timbre)
   a. Orchestra, band, piano, voice
   b. Woodwind, brass, percussion, strings
   c. Individual instruments
4. Expressive contributions of melodic contour
   rhythmic pattern, meter, tonality,
   harmonic sequence
II. SKILLS AND EXPERIENCES

A. VOCAL
1. Sing informally for enjoyment
2. Sing in tune
3. Sing with a light, pleasant tone quality
4. Sing by memory a variety of songs
5. Establish good singing habits in posture, enunciation, breath control
6. Follow written notation
7. Recognition and utilization of notational symbols
8. Sing the major scale
9. Differentiate between steps and skips on the staff
10. Recognition and utilization of dynamic markings
11. Sight read a vocal line
12. Independence in part singing
   a. Rounds and canons
   b. Descants and partner songs
   c. Two-part songs
   d. Three-part songs
   e. Four-part songs
13. Location of the tonal center from the key signature
14. Create simple melodies

B. INSTRUMENTAL
1. Respond physically to rhythmic music
2. Rhythm instruments
   a. Play rote accompaniments to singing
   b. Play recurring rhythm patterns in unison
   c. Play rhythm patterns by note
   d. Play rhythm patterns in 2 and 3 parts
III. SELECTED TOPICS

A. RUDIMENTS OF MUSIC  
   (Theory, ear training, beginning harmony)

B. WORKSHOP IN MUSIC  
   (Harmony, arranging for voices and instruments, individual projects)
*** THE GRADE FOUR PROGRAM ***

MATERIALS, EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES

Texts:

- EXPLORING MUSIC 4
- EXPLORING MUSIC - T.E. [HRW]
- Music Time with Flutophone (Flutophone textbook) [HRW]

Records:

- EXPLORING MUSIC - Grade 4 [HRW]
- Music Across the Country #4 [Follett Pub. Co.]
- Adventures in Music
- Musical Sound Books - records
- RCA Listening Program

Additional Materials:

- Rhythm instruments
- Orff instruments (IMC)
- Orff instrument guide
- Grade 4 - Music Appreciation Lesson Plans
- Flutophone Lesson Plans
- Threshold to Music Chart and Teacher's Manual
- Melody bells
- Resonator bells
- Autoharp
- Record player
- Tape recorder
- Tapes
- Piano (or pianet)
- Pitch pipe
- Chalkboard music staff liner

Teacher-made Materials:

- Vertical syllable chart
- Name tags for children for use during consultant demonstrations.
Behavioral Objectives

I. To sing in tune.
- Given the starting pitch of C, the student will be able to sing "White Coral Bells" in tune and with correct rhythm.
- The student will demonstrate proper voice production by singing with a light, pleasant tone quality.
- The student will be able to sing by memory twenty songs of varying types.

II. To develop rhythmically.
- The student will demonstrate his ability to read rhythmic notation by reading and clapping rhythm patterns in $\frac{3}{4}$, $\frac{2}{4}$ and $\frac{4}{4}$ time that contain $\frac{3}{4}$, $\frac{2}{4}$, and $\frac{1}{4}$.
- From a group of four notated rhythm patterns, the student will be able to select the one that is being played or clapped.
- The student will be able to write rhythmic patterns in $\frac{3}{4}$, $\frac{2}{4}$ or $\frac{4}{4}$ time that have the appropriate number of beats per measure.

III. To read music.
- Given the following phrase of music, the student will be able to identify verbally 10 music symbols:

- The student will be able to sing "Little Fox" (HRW, p.118) at sight using syllables.
- Given the following key signatures, the student will be able to find the home tone (or "do"):

- Given the song "Holla-Hi! Holla-Ho!" (HRW, p.47), the student will be able to identify its tonality by sight as being Major.
- Given a list of 6 dynamic markings, the student will be able to arrange them in order from the softest to the lowest. (pp, p, mp, mf, f, ff.)
- The student will be able to identify intervals of a second, a third and a fourth in notated music.
IV. To sing in harmony.
   - The student will be able to sing a descant to a song as the melody is being sung.
   - The student will be able to sing an independent part in two, three and four part rounds.

V. To create music.
   - The student will be able to make up a simple melody and notate it on the staff with the key and meter signatures.
I. Matching. Match the terms with the correct symbols by placing the letter name of the symbol in the blank by the term.

Notes and Rests -

- (D) 1. dotted quarter notes
- (C) 2. eighth note
- (A) 3. dotted half note
- (E) 4. whole rest
- (B) 5. half rest

Music Symbols -

- (D) 1. natural or cancel
- (F) 2. crescendo
- (C) 3. medium loud
- (G) 4. medium soft
- (E) 5. very soft

II. Finding "Do". Place a note on the staff to indicate "do" in each key signature.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.
III. Letter Names in the Treble Clef. Put the letter name of each note in the blank below the note.

(B) (E)

(C) (A) (B) (B) (A) (G) (E)

(E) (G) (G)

(F) (A) (D) (E) (D)

IV. Syllable Recognition by Ear.
Teacher: Sing the patterns on "loo" or play the patterns on the piano or bells. If played, the following notes are suggested:

do = F  re = G  mi = A  fa = B♭  sol = C  la = D  ti = E  do = F

Sing or play each pattern twice very slowly. Then sing or play a third time, more fluently, so the children can check their answers. Children circle the correct syllables. Mark only one syllable in each column. (Second note in column 2, third note in column 3, etc.)

A. do - mi - sol - fa - mi - re - do
B. do - re - mi - re - mi - re - do
C. do - mi - re - fa - re - ti - do (Underlining denotes tones below low "do")

A.  
1 sol 2 sol 3 sol 4 sol 5 sol 6 sol 7 sol
fa fa fa fa fa fa fa
mi mi mi mi mi mi mi
re re re re re re re
(do) do do do do do (do)

B.  
1 mi 2 mi 3 mi 4 mi 5 mi 6 mi 7 mi
re re re re re re re
(do) (do) do do do (do) (do)
V. Measure Building. Put in the bar lines to make measures that will fit the meter signature.

A. \[ \begin{array}{cccccccc}
\text{crotchet} & \text{quaver} & \text{minim} & \text{crotchet} & \text{quaver} & \text{minim} & \text{crotchet} & \text{quaver} \\
\text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} \\
\text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} \\
\text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} \\
\text{sol} & \text{ti} & \text{ti} & \text{ti} & \text{ti} & \text{ti} & \text{ti} & \text{ti} \\
\end{array} \]

B. \[ \begin{array}{cccccccc}
\text{crotchet} & \text{quaver} & \text{minim} & \text{crotchet} & \text{quaver} & \text{minim} & \text{crotchet} & \text{quaver} \\
\text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} \\
\text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} \\
\text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} \\
\text{sol} & \text{ti} & \text{ti} & \text{ti} & \text{ti} & \text{ti} & \text{ti} & \text{ti} \\
\end{array} \]

VI. Listening. Play the recording of "All Beautiful the March of Days" (Record 1, HRW) three times. Allow the students to answer as many questions as they can between each playing, reminding them to check their answers on the last playing.

1. The form of this song is
   a) ABAB   b) AABA   c) ABCD

2. The melody of the song is based on a
   a) major scale   b) minor scale   c) pentatonic scale

3. The rhythm of the melody begins with this pattern:
   a) \[ \begin{array}{cccc}
   \text{crotchet} & \text{quaver} & \text{minim} & \text{crotchet} \\
   \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} \\
   \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} \\
   \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} \\
   \end{array} \]   b) \[ \begin{array}{cccc}
   \text{crotchet} & \text{quaver} & \text{minim} & \text{crotchet} \\
   \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} \\
   \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} \\
   \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} \\
   \end{array} \]   c) \[ \begin{array}{cccc}
   \text{crotchet} & \text{quaver} & \text{minim} & \text{crotchet} \\
   \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} \\
   \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} \\
   \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} \\
   \end{array} \]

4. The instrument used to accompany this song is the
   a) organ   b) guitar   c) piano

5. The melody at the beginning of this song could be outlined like this:
   a) \[ \begin{array}{cccc}
   \text{crotchet} & \text{quaver} & \text{minim} & \text{crotchet} \\
   \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} \\
   \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} \\
   \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} \\
   \end{array} \]   b) \[ \begin{array}{cccc}
   \text{crotchet} & \text{quaver} & \text{minim} & \text{crotchet} \\
   \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} \\
   \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} \\
   \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} \\
   \end{array} \]   c) \[ \begin{array}{cccc}
   \text{crotchet} & \text{quaver} & \text{minim} & \text{crotchet} \\
   \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} & \text{mi} \\
   \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} & \text{re} \\
   \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} & \text{do} \\
   \end{array} \]

6. The voices singing this song are:
   a) ladie's voices   b) children's voices   c) men's voices
I. Matching. Match the terms with the correct symbols by placing the letter name of the symbol in the blank by the term.

Notes and Rests -

_____ 1. dotted quarter note
_____ 2. eighth note
_____ 3. dotted half note
_____ 4. whole rest
_____ 5. half rest

Music Symbols -

_____ 1. natural or cancel
_____ 2. crescendo
_____ 3. medium loud
_____ 4. medium soft
_____ 5. very soft

II. Finding "Do". Place a note on the staff to indicate "do" in each key signature.
III. Letter Names in the Treble Clef. Put the letter name of each note in the blank below the note.

IV. Syllable Recognition by Ear. Listen to the phrase, then circle the correct syllables. Every phrase begins on "do".

A.  
1. sol  
2. fa  
3. mi  
4. re  
5. do  

B.  
1. mi  
2. re  
3. do  

C.  
1. fa  
2. mi  
3. re  
4. do  
5. ti  

V. Measure Building. Put in the bar lines to make measures that will fit the meter signature.

A.  
\( \frac{3}{4} \)

B.  
\( \frac{3}{4} \)
VI. Listening. The song will be played three times. Complete as many statements as you can between each playing by underlining the correct answer.

1. The form of this song is
   a) ABAB  b) AABA  c) ABCD

2. The melody of the song is based on a
   a) major scale  b) minor scale  c) pentatonic scale

3. The rhythm of the melody begins with this pattern:
   a) \[ \begin{align*} &\text{\underline{d} d d d d d} \\ &\text{\underline{d} d d d d d} \\ &\text{\underline{d} d d d d d} \end{align*} \]  
   b) \[ \begin{align*} &\text{\underline{d} d d d d d} \\ &\text{\underline{d} d d d d d} \\ &\text{\underline{d} d d d d d} \end{align*} \]  
   c) \[ \begin{align*} &\text{\underline{d} d d d d d} \\ &\text{\underline{d} d d d d d} \\ &\text{\underline{d} d d d d d} \end{align*} \]

4. The instrument used to accompany this song is the
   a) organ  b) guitar  c) piano

5. The melody at the beginning of this song could be outlined like this:
   a)  
   b)  
   c)  

6. The voices singing this song are:
   a) ladie's voices  b) children's voices  c) men's voices
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

I. To Sing in Tune

A. Tone Matching

Although we would expect all fourth grade children to be able to match tones, the following devices help them to become more aware of pitch. This is a way of tuning up the children when you start to sing.

1. "Carrying a tone in a basket:" The teacher sings a tone in a middle range on "loo." A child in a front desk repeats it and passes it to the next child until all children have sung the tone. Check on pitch pipe to see if the last child has the same tone that was given. If the last tone is lower, it has "fallen out of the basket;" if the tone is higher, it has "hopped out."

2. Easy phrases within a song: Select very easy phrases of a song the children know and have various children sing "solos" on these parts.

3. Teacher sings or plays rhythm instruments a simple pattern, 2 notes as:

   sol sol sol sol sol
   fa fa fa fa fa fa
   mi mi mi mi mi mi

B. Tone Quality

1. Children should be told to sing "lightly" not "loudly." Children should always sit tall with feet on the floor when singing.

2. Use the tape recorder so individuals can hear how they sound.

3. Play records of children's choral groups.

4. Discuss "tone quality" of school chorus after hearing the group perform.
1. This should be done very quickly so that the child forgets himself.

2. Example: "Row, Row Your Boat"
   First phrase: "Row, row, row your boat."

   "Where Is John?"
   First phrase: "Where is John?"

   This activity should be done as part of learning a rote song.

   HRW p 5
   Follett p 101

3. Both children and teacher will feel more confident if the tone matching activities begin with instruments as the Orff Instruments or bells rather than vocally.

   Example: 5 claps, 4 patschen
             4 snaps, 5 claps
             3 stamps, 5 claps

   Action should be continuous, no stopping.

   Orff Guide pp 19-20

   Orff Guide p 1
II. To Develop Rhythmically

   A. Rhythmic Exercises

      1. Group clapping
         Step 1 - Teacher begins clapping, children join in imitating the teacher.
         Step 2 - As teacher changes the patterns, the children change with her. There is no need to keep a basic meter as 4 rather interchange 3 4, 4, etc.
         Step 3 - Add finger snaps, stamps and patschen (slapping knees or thighs with hands)
         Step 4 - Children can take turns being the leader.

      2. Echo clapping
         Step 1 - Teacher claps a short rhythm pattern and children clap pattern in an echo.
         Step 2 - Without losing any beats the teacher immediately claps a second short rhythm pattern and children clap pattern in echo, etc.
         Step 3 - Without losing any beats, class members may take turns leading the group.
         Step 4 - Add finger snaps, patschen and stamps for more variety.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR CLASSROOM TEACHER

Use the pitch pipe to establish the key the song is written in. If teacher must use lower keys when he sings, he should be sure to pitch song correctly for the children. Teacher should sing with a light buoyant tone quality.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example A - Teacher claps</th>
<th>Children echo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \frac{3}{4} ) d d d d</td>
<td>echo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \frac{3}{4} ) d d d d</td>
<td>echo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \frac{3}{4} ) d d d d</td>
<td>echo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \frac{3}{4} ) d d d d</td>
<td>echo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \frac{3}{4} ) d d d d</td>
<td>echo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example B - Teacher claps

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example B - Teacher claps</th>
<th>Children echo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \frac{3}{4} ) d d d d</td>
<td>echo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \frac{3}{4} ) d d d d</td>
<td>echo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \frac{3}{4} ) d d d d</td>
<td>echo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \frac{3}{4} ) d d d d</td>
<td>echo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MATERIALS

- Pitch Pipe
- Tape recorder

1) Vienna Boys' Choir
2) Obernkirchen Children's Choir from Germany
3) Willmar Boys' Choir
4) Others at IMC guide

Orff Guide pp 1-2
Threshold Charts pp 11, 69-70
Teachers Guide pp 87, 107

Records
- Echo Songs and Rhythms R1086
- Orff's Music for Children R1018
### GOALS

To Develop Rhythmically - cont.

### ACTIVITIES

3. Unison speech exercises (chanting)
   
   **Step 1** - Teacher reads words of first two lines in rhythm.

   **Step 2** - Teacher reads words a second time while clapping on beat "one" and "two" having the children clap with her.

   **Step 3** - Teacher repeats a third time while clapping and children "whisper" words in rhythm.

   **Step 4** - Children say words while teacher claps and "whispers" words.

   **Step 5** - Divide class into two groups having one group clap the beats, while the other group says the words.

---

a. Thanksgiving chant I

   **Step 1** - Have one child clap the rhythm for each basic pattern. The whole class should then clap and chant each pattern.

   **Step 2** - When the children can read each pattern easily have them recite the whole chant while one child (or teacher) beats the basic beat (1, 2, 3, 4) on a drum.

   **Step 3** - For variety clap the rhythm without reciting the words.
There was a frog lived in a well,

\[
\text{Whip see-did-dle dee dan-dy dee.}
\]

This frog he would a-woo-ing ride,

\[
\text{With sword and buck-ler by his side.}
\]

This song moves in two's and therefore, was changed to \( \frac{3}{4} \) in the above example.

Have the basic patterns and the whole chant written on the chalkboard.

Chant I - Basic patterns

A - \( \frac{4}{4} \) Tur-key, tur-key

B - \( \frac{4}{4} \) Oh how I love tur-key

C - \( \frac{4}{4} \) We give thanks.

Whole chant

\[
\text{We give thanks, We give thanks.}
\]

\[
\text{For Fa-ther, Mo-ther, Sis-ter, Bro-ther,}
\]

\[
\text{Cou-sins & Un-cles & Play-mates & Friends.}
\]

\[
\text{We give thanks, yes, We give thanks.}
\]
**GOALS**

To Develop Rhythmically - cont.

**ACTIVITIES**

b. Thanksgiving chant II
   Step 1 - Have all children chant the words while one person plays the basic beat on the drum.
   Step 2 - Divide the class into two, three or four groups; chant the words as a round. Each new group should start after the preceding group passes the two quarter rests.

c. Poetry
   Step 1 - Teacher and children recite poem.
   Step 2 - Teacher claps the meter of the poem while repeating the poem and the children clap with her.
   Step 3 - All children recite the poem while one child, or several children, play the meter of the poem on rhythm instruments.

4. Question and answer
   Step 1 - Teacher plays a rhythm pattern and child answers with a different pattern, but with same number of beats.

5. Canons and round
   Step 1 - Clap the rhythm of a familiar song or round, making it a rhythmic sound.
Chant II - Have the whole chant written on the chalkboard.

\[ \frac{4}{4} \] 

Thanksgiving Day is here. The church bells will ring out clear. And people in the churches everywhere, will kneel and pray on Thanksgiving Day.

See "Poetry" in Holt, Rinehart, Winston text in classified index.

Example: "Here We Come A-Piping," Follett p 66.

The basic meter for this poem is probably \( \frac{3}{8} \).

It moves in one strong beat per measure.
Clap meter where lines are: Here we come a-piping.

Example: Teacher - \( \frac{2}{4} \) \( \frac{4}{4} \)
Child -

Example: "Three Blind Mice"

\[ \frac{2}{4} \]

For contrast clap:
Quarter notes \( \frac{1}{4} \) waist level
Half notes \( \frac{1}{2} \) on knees
Eighth notes \( \frac{1}{8} \) above heads
## VOCAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To Develop Rhythmically - cont. | 6. Rhythmic rondo - A form in which one musical thought or pattern keeps reoccurring.  
Step 1 - Clap simple rondo  
A: ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ B: ᓂ ᓂ  
A: ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ C: ᓂ ᓂ  
A: ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ D: ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ  
A: ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ ᓂ B: ᓂ ᓂ |
|       | 7. Rhythmic Ostinato (repeated rhythm pattern) - Clap or play on rhythm instruments a short repeated pattern as an accompaniment to a song. |
|       | B. Reading rhythms  
1. Symbols  
a. Teacher should make a chart for music symbols which will be added to as new symbols are learned by the children.  
b. Teacher may make a set of flash cards of music symbols to be used in various ways for reinforcement of knowledge of music symbols. |
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

Have different groups within the room do different parts to the rondo.

Try standing, stretching tall and kneeling as you clap the different parts.

Using clapping, finger snaps, patschen and stamp for variety.

MATERIALS

Orff Guide pp 9-10
Threshold to Music Chart 71

Orff Guide 6-9
HRW p.112

Music symbols:

Staff
Treble Clef Sign
Bar
Double bar
Repeat mark
Measure
Time signature
Fermata or hold
Natural or cancel
1st & 2nd endings
Slur

Quarter rest
Half rest
Whole rest
Eighth rest
Quarter note
Half note
Whole note
Dotted quarter note
Dotted half note
Eighth note
Tie
Short Flat
Accent

Tagboard
### Goals
To Develop Rhythmically - cont.

### Activities

#### c. Teaching note values, teacher may wish to use movie "Reading Music: Finding the Rhythm"
This movie includes:

- Note values
- "Beat"
- Bar
- Measure
- Accent
- Time signature
- Dotted note
- Tie
- Rest (eighth, quarter, half and whole).

#### 2. Rhythm Patterns
Teaching rhythm patterns

a. Write children's names in rhythmic notation on chalkboard.
   **Examples:**
   - Thomas
   - Peter-son
   - John
   - Thomp-son
   - Cynthia
   - Mil-ler
   - Ca-rol
   - Cleve-land

b. After each child's name has been represented in rhythmic pattern, each child should copy his name and rhythm pattern onto a card.

c. Teacher could have all children with the same pattern respond to a direction.
   For example: she might clap the pattern and all children whose names are thus identified should stand and clap the pattern in an echo. They might also play the pattern on rhythm instruments.
**Hints for teaching the difference between half and whole rest:**
- **Whole rest** (\(\text{\textbullet}\)) - a "whole" gentleman tips his hat
- **Half rest** (\(\text{\textbullet}\)) - a "half" gentleman simply lifts his hat
- **Whole rest** (\(\text{\textbullet}\)) - so heavy it falls below the line
- **Half rest** (\(\text{\textbullet}\)) - lighter than the whole rest so stays above the line

(Film available in IMC)  
F-1084 - "Reading Music: Finding the Rhythm"

Threshold to Music Charts, T.E., pp. 13-26

See Vocal Resource Sheet

**Use middle names for variety.**

**For P.T.A. teacher could put up each child's musical name--for parent identification and use it for labeling displayed work, seats, etc.**

**Tagboard**

**Rhythm Instruments**

**IMC Guide Kit - K-5079 "Rhythm"**
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

To Develop
Rhythmically - cont.

d. Use rhythm patterns in a round. Divide class into two or three groups. Choose a leader for each group. Each leader's name should represent a different rhythm pattern. The first group should start by chanting the leader's name. After they have chanted the name once, they continue and "group two" comes in, etc. The teacher should decide how many times to say each name. A variation of this could be the use of rhythm instruments or clapping or tapping.

e. Walking the rhythm of songs
Have the children walk the rhythm of songs in 2/4, 3/4, and 4/4 time using the following steps:
- eighth note - run
- quarter note - step
- Dotted quarter - eighth note - step, bend knee (for dot), and hop (for eighth note).
- half note - step and dip
- dotted half note - step with one foot, slide to the side and back in with other foot
- whole note - step with one foot, place toe out front, to the side, and back in with other foot.

3. Distinguishing rhythm patterns by ear

Step 1: Put three or four rhythm patterns on the board - one or two measures long having the same number of beats. The teacher should clap or play on a rhythm instrument one of these patterns and the children should guess which one it is.

Step 2: After all the patterns have been introduced, have one child play or clap one of the patterns while the other children guess which one it is. The child who guesses one correctly can come up and play another pattern.

Step 3: Divide the class into four groups. Each group should be assigned to clap or play on rhythm instruments one of the four patterns. Each pattern should be represented by a different sound. Decide how many times the group should repeat the pattern. Group A should begin, after one measure Group B should begin, after two measures Group C should begin and after three measures Group D would begin. This would represent a round in rhythm.
When using instruments or clapping or tapping, each group should be assigned one kind of instrument or sound.

Each time a pattern has been identified, the children should clap out the pattern together with the teacher.

Examples:

A  \[ \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \mid \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \mid \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \]
B  \[ \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \mid \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \mid \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \]
C  \[ \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \mid \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \mid \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \]
D  \[ \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \mid \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \mid \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \]

Rhythm instruments
GOALS

To Develop Rhythmically - cont.

VOCAL ACTIVITIES

4. Introducing dotted quarter-eighth note pattern

Step 1: Sing the song "America" having the children notice how the dotted quarter-eighth note pattern sounds. (♩♩♩) They should notice that it sounds "jerky", rather than even.

Step 2: "Walk" the rhythm of the song.

Step 3: After singing the song, clap or play the rhythm of the song on rhythm instruments.

Step 4: Teach the children that a dot after a note means that the note would get half again as much as it would get without the dot. To test children's understanding of this, set up some hypothetical notes. Tell them what each note would get without a dot and have them tell what the note would get with a dot.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of beats</th>
<th>No. of beats</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>note gets with-</td>
<td>note gets with dot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out dot.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 5: Put the following rhythm pattern on the chalk board.

\[ \begin{array}{cccc|cccc} 4 & \leftrightharpoons & \leftrightharpoons & \leftrightharpoons & 4 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \end{array} \]

Write the beats below the notes, having the children help you figure out where the beats would go. Explain to them that when we divide a beat in half, we call the first half of the beat by its number and the second half of the beat "and". Have the children clap the pattern from the board.

Step 6: Teach a note song incorporating the dotted quarter-eighth note pattern.
Example: song "America"
The dotted quarter followed by an eighth note
together form a group of notes frequently used
in 2/4, 3/4, & 4/4 music. It is important for
the children to recognize this group of notes and its
corresponding sound.

6. Example: "We Sing of Golden Mornings"
"Stodola Pumpa"

Example: "Thanks for Food"
"America"
5. Measure Building
   a. Write music in time signatures the children have studied using only whole notes. Have the children change the whole notes into other kinds of notes so that each measure fits the time signature.
   b. As a variation of this activity, have the children write the notes which would fit the time signature.
   c. As another example, have the children draw lines between the notes so that each measure fits the time signature.

6. Tempo
   a. Maintain steady tempo
      Children should be made aware that each song may have a different tempo. Some move very quickly and others very slowly, etc.

      They should notice at the beginning of some songs in this text, the tempo is indicated. Example: "The Cuckoo," p. 15 HRW, gayly
                                                brightly
      "How Does My Lady's Garden Grow," p. 144 HRW, smoothly


      Once a song has begun, its tempo should remain the same throughout except where a change is indicated in the music.
When teaching a new song, the teacher should have its tempo well in mind. If a song is introduced in the proper tempo, it is likely the children will always sing it at that tempo. It is very difficult to change a tempo once a song has been introduced. In order that a song maintains the same tempo throughout, the teacher may use some of the following techniques, as needed.

a. Clap the basic beat.

b. "Whisper" the words while directing with hand.

c. Nod head in rhythm.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Develop Rhythmically - cont.</td>
<td>C. Movement to Music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Creative Movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Through movements children, can attain freedom in self expression and gain experience in feeling beat, accent and phrasing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Reaction Movements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Children do movements as drum beats change speed, stop and start again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Action Songs and Chants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Children move as they sing or chant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Dances and singing games.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: Orff Guide p. 15

Example: Action song, "The Cuckoo"
Directions for actions are given in HRW, t.g., page 15. The actions are done as children sing the refrain of the song.

Example: Action song - "The Bird Song"

Motions:
Away up in the sky (hands point upward).
The little birds fly (imitate flying with hands elevated at side).
Way down in the nest (hands point down).
The little birds rest (hands rests on palms pressed together).
With a wing on the left (left arm in outward circle from shoulder to hip).
With a wing on the right (right arm in outward circle from shoulder to hip).
We'll let, etc. (eyes closed with head resting on palms pressed together).
Sh. . . (Index finger pressed against closed lips).
The bright sun comes up (hands move up in animation as tempo grows faster).
The dew falls away (fingers move rapidly as hands are lowered.)
Good morning (nodding of head to each side alternately.)
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

III. To Read Music -

A. Music Symbols
   1. Review pitch notation
      a) Staff
      b) Ledger lines (added above and below staff for added notes)
      c) Treble clef sign
      d) Names of notes placed on the staff
      e) # = sharp (raised ½ step)
      f) ♭ = flat (lowered ½ step)
      g) ♮ = natural (return to original)

B. 1. Teaching a note song
    The children should learn one new note song each week. It is helpful to sing several songs in one key before moving on to another key.

    2. Awareness of origins of songs -
       Children should notice that the source of the melody for any song is written up in the right-hand corner of the song. Many songs in textbooks are folk songs; some are written by famous composers. The source of the words is written in the left-hand corner.
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>a.</strong> Teacher should make a chart for music symbols which will be added to as new symbols are learned by the children.</td>
<td><strong>MATERIAL</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **b.** Teacher may make a set of flash cards of music symbols to be used in various ways for reinforcement of knowledge of music symbols. | IMC - Film F1085  
"Learning About Notes"  
IMC Kit - K5019  
"The Staff and Its Notes"  
IMC Kit - K5032A  
"Let's Learn About Music-The Music Alphabet"  
IMC Chart - Ch1040  
Music Instruction Chart  
IMC Guide - F4053  
"What Does Music Mean"  
Part I |

---

### Example: "Wraggle-Taggle Gypsies"

1. Talk about the source of the song.  
2. Read through the words and discuss.  
3. Have children clap the rhythm.  
4. Divide each verse into two phrases.  
5. Find "do" and beginning note.  
6. Have class read through the song with syllables or numbers.  

---

### Example: "Going to Market"

1. Talk about the source of the song.  
2. Read through the words and discuss.  
3. Have one child clap out the rhythm for line one. Have the children notice that all four phrases have the same rhythm.  
4. Have all children clap the rhythm of the song.  
5. Find "do" and beginning note.  
6. Have class read through the syllables of the first phrase. Notice that there are no skips, the whole line moves by steps.  
7. Read the syllables for the second phrase. Discover that this also moves by step.  
8. Notice that phrases three and four are exactly the same as one and two.  
9. Sing the whole song by syllables.  
10. Sing using words.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

To Read Music - cont.

3. Learning to find "do"

Review the concept that "do" can be on any line or in any space in a given song. The position of "do" is determined by the key signature.

a. Determining whether a sharp or flat is on a line or space: When a sharp is on a line, the line cuts through the center of the "box" of the sharp.

When a sharp is in a space, the "box" of the sharp fills the space.

When the flat is on a line, the line cuts through the center of the round part of the flat.

When the flat is in the space, the round part of the flat fills the space.

b. Children's Choice - Allow the children to choose songs. In order for a song to be sung, the child must tell where "do" is and the name of the first note.

Rules for finding "do"
1) When there are no sharps or flats in the key signature, "do" is found on the first added ledger line below the staff or on the third space.
2) The sharp farthest to the right is called "ti" count up or down to find "do".
3) The flat farthest to the right is called "fa", count down three to find "do".

C. Teaching a rote song using syllables on common tonal pattern

1. Select a song from "Melody Patterns", on page 292 in the Holt Rinehart Winston text. Choose a song in a key which children are using in note songs.
The teacher should make clear to the children the difference between key signature and time signature.

Example: "Old Texas"

1. This is an echo song
2. Divide the class into two groups and sing the song in two parts as suggested in the pupil's book.
3. Group one sings the first phrase, while they hold the last word of this phrase, group two echoes the melody.
4. Sing the complete song in this manner.
2. Recognizing like-phrases

When teaching a new rote song, have the children listen for like-phrases. While the teacher sings the song on the syllable "loo", a phrase at a time, the phrases should be labeled by the children by letter, each like-phrase having the same letter. The letters should be written on the board. Some children will discover that some phrases are alike (by looking at the music) even before the teacher sings the song. In singing songs by note, the children should get into the habit of looking for like-phrases before they start to sing the song.
Example: "Go in and Out the Window"
1. Discover this is an American singing game and discuss singing games.
2. Read through the words in rhythm. Since this song contains rhythm patterns beyond the music reading ability of fourth grade children, the teacher should establish the rhythm.
3. Have the children find "do" and ask them to figure out the syllables for the bracketed notes.
4. Establish the tonality by singing do-mi-sol in the key of F. Help the children to find low sol and have them sing the syllables for the bracketed tonal patterns.
   - sol-do-mi (Tonic Chord)
   - sol-ti-re (Dominant Chord)
5. Proceed to teach the song like a rote song having the children notice the sounds of the bracketed patterns.

   a. Recognizing like phrases
      Example: "The Happy Plowman"
      Phrase one - B' (B' indicates that the melody is almost the same as B).
      Phrase two - B
      Phrase three - A
      Phrase four - B

      Example: "We Sing of Golden Mornings"
      Phrase one - A
      Phrase two - A' (indicates that the melody is almost the same as A)
      Phrase three - B
      Phrase four - A' (indicates that the melody is almost the same as A)

      Example: "All Through The Night"
      Phrase one - A
      Phrase two - A
      Phrase three - B
      Phrase four - A

      Example: "Mill Wheel"
      Phrase one - A
      Phrase two - A
      Phrase three - B
      Phrase four - C
      Phrase five - D
      Phrase six - E
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Read Music - cont.</td>
<td>3. Scale Patterns by hand levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teacher should establish a given hand level for &quot;do&quot;. He should then move his hand up and down in scale patterns while the children follow in singing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| | 4. Contour of melody line. |
| | a. When a song is being learned, notice the contour of the melody line. The teacher may wish to write the notes of the song on the board and draw lines above the notes showing the contour of the melody line. |
| | b. To check on how well children are sensing melody line, draw several melody patterns on the board using straight lines. Have the children find the corresponding patterns in the song. |
| | c. In singing songs by note, the children should get into the habit of looking for like phrases before they start to sing the song. |

D. Scales
1. Review the major scale.
   a. Help students see the need for sharps and flats.
   b. Use melody bells, Orff instruments or the piano to let students discover major scales.
2. Building the natural minor scale on the staff
   Step 1: Pass out to each child a tagboard staff, notes, sharps and flats. Have them place sharps and flats on the staff for a given key signature.
   Step 2: Have the children find "do" and place it on staff about three inches to the right of the G clef sign.
   Step 3: Count down to "la" and place "la and low ti" on the staff to the left of "do."
   Step 4: Complete the scale by placing the remaining notes up to "high la."
   Step 5: Sing the minor scale from the staff.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

See Vocal Resource section on hand signals.

Example: "Old Folks At Home," page 104
Notice a phrase that goes like this: $\left(1,8,6,8\right)$
like this: $\left(3,2,1\right)$
like this: $\left(5,3,1,2\right)$

Other examples are:
- Happy Plowman
- Serranilla
- Nightingale's Song

Example: "Appeal to Sky God", page 36
Notice a phrase that goes up and down like this:
like this:

Examples:
- "Good Night", page 114
- "Go to Sleepy", page 129
- "Deck the Halls", page 150
- "The Frog and the Mouse", page 131

The minor scale has its peculiar sound through having the whole and half steps in a different sequence from that of the major scale.

Drawing a scale ladder of the minor scale for the children might make this easier for them to understand.

| la | 8 |
| sol | 7 |
| fa | 6 |
| mi | 5 |
| re | 4 |
| do | 3 |
| ti | 2 |
| la | 1 |

MATERIAL

Threshold to Music
- t.g., pp. 137-138, 29, 70-76

IMC Guide - F4054
- "What Is a Melody" Part I
- HRW text, page 104

Follett
- HRW text, page 32
- HRW text, page 65
- HRW text, page 161

Follett

Tagboard staffs, notes, sharps and flats from school office.

Threshold to Music, t.g., pp. 106-107, 114-115
### GOALS

To Read Music—cont.

### ACTIVITIES

3. **Building a natural minor scale with the resonator bells**

Ask eight children to come to the front of the room. Give one of the notes d-e-f-g-a-b-c-d of the resonator bells to each child. Do not have the notes in order. Through experimenting, the children should arrange the notes in the proper sequence. They should play the scale - each child playing one note. The class could sing the scale with them as they play it a second time.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

Vary this activity by using smaller groups. It might be fun to divide the class into four or more groups - giving each group a chance to get the jumbled notes into their proper sequence. Time each group to see which one is the quickest. This could also be done with the major scale.

Resonator bells

Scales:

Scale - a grouping of tones arranged in a particular pattern of whole and half steps.
Distonic scale - a group of eight tones arranged consecutively on different staff degrees.
Major scale - a diatonic scale arranged in the following pattern:

```
1 step 2 step 3 half 4 step 5 step 6 half 7 step 8 whole
```

Natural minor scale - a diatonic scale arranged in the following pattern:

```
1 step 2 step 3 half 4 whole 5 whole 6 half 7 step 8
```

Pentatonic scale - a scale of fine tones, the most common form being the major scale with the fourth and seventh steps omitted.

C Major  C Pentatonic

IMC Guide - K5020
"Major and Minor Scales"

HRW, t.g., p. 292
classified index "Melody"
### GOALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To Read Music - cont.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4. Singing the scale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>a. Syllable chart:</strong> Children should review singing the scale by memory ascending and descending. The teacher should make a vertical syllable chart which should be displayed somewhere in the room at all times so it can be referred to quickly. Stress going down scale.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>b. Scale ladder:</strong> The teacher should draw a scale ladder on the chalkboard. Children should discover that the ladder has eight steps (or rungs) some of which are spaced closer than others. They will discover that steps 3 and 4 (mi and fa) and 7 and 8 (ti and do) are the close steps. These are called half steps. The others are called whole steps. They should sing the ascending scale from the scale ladder being especially careful to take big steps on the whole steps so they will not &quot;flat&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5. Singing scale patterns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Children should be able to sing scale patterns with syllables fluently. That is, they should be able to sing from any note in the scale to the next one up or down without difficulty.

| **a. Singing from syllables chart:** The teacher should establish "Do" on the pitch pipe (D, E for E). Then by starting with "Do", he should point to notes on the syllables chart moving up and down by step. |
| **b. Scale patterns by hand level and hand signals:** Teachers should establish a given hand level for "do". He should then move his hand up and down in scale patterns while the children follow in singing. |
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syllable chart:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>Ti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>La</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La</td>
<td>Sol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sol</td>
<td>Fa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fa</td>
<td>Mi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mi</td>
<td>Re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re</td>
<td>Do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pitch in the keys of D, E or E. Check on pitch pipe to see if the top note is in tune. Teacher should tell the children to sing big steps when going up and "tiny" steps when going down. "Flattering" occurs when ascending steps are not big enough and descending steps are too big.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scale ladder:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Do &gt; 1/2 step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Ti &gt; 1/2 step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>La</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Sol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Fa &gt; 1/2 step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Mi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the teacher directs the singing of the scale with hand levels, he should make large movements for whole steps and small movements for half steps.

### MATERIAL

- Tagboard

Examples: do-re-do
do-re-mi-fa-mi-re-do
do-re-mi-fa-sol-la-sol-la-sol-fa-mi-re-do

Examples from HRW text pages 4, 47, 54, 68, 104, 134, 184
### GOALS

To Read Music - cont.

### ACTIVITIES

6. Building the scale and tonal patterns on the staff

The children should build scales ascending and descending in various keys on the staff. It is advisable to do this in preparation for a note song in the same key as the note song. In teaching a note song it is suggested that the children build the key-chord pattern, dominant chord pattern and other tonal patterns which occur in the song. This should be done before starting the new song.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pentatonic Scale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. The pentatonic scale is based on 5 tones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(penta - five, tonic - tone) These tones are do-re-mi-so-la</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \[
| \begin{array}{cc}
| & 1 \\
| & 2 \\
| & 3 \\
| & 5 \\
| & 4 \\
| \end{array}
| \]
| (Notice the arrangement of whole steps and one step of a whole and a half between mi and sol). |
| b. Because it does not contain fa(4)and ti (7), both tones which seem to need to be resolved, songs written in this scale are easy to compose and accompany. Many Oriental and folk songs are written in this scale. |
| c. Build this scale on the Orff instruments or resonator bells. |
| d. Sing favorite songs that are written in pentatonic. Improvise ostinati accompaniments for them. |
| a. Students should have had some rhythmic experience before beginning this. Ex. Echo and group clapping. |
| b. Start with one or two of the notes, perhaps sol and mi, and later add others from the five tones to be used (do, re, mi, sol, la) |
| c. As the students become more proficient have them try to remember the accompaniments or melodies. This will probably be a good reason for them to try to write it down. |
**VOCAL ACTIVITIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR THE TEACHER</th>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Make staff, notes, sharps and flats | IMC Guide - F1085
"Reading Music, Learning About Notes" |

Any combination of the tones do-re-mi-sol-la will result in a pleasant sound. Students can have a rewarding experience since they may start and end on any note of the scale.

Orff Guide, t.g., p. 40
GOALS

To Read Music - cont.

ACTIVITIES

E. Intervals

1. Reviewing the concept of intervals
   a. Reviewing second and third intervals - To give the children a good review of a second (step) interval and of a third (skip) have them build these intervals on the staff, using the tagboard staffs and notes or the chalkboard.

2. Introduce interval of a fourth - Tell the children to determine the size of an interval by calling the first note "1" and counting by steps up or down to the next note. If the second note is "3", the interval is a third. If the second note is "4", the interval is a fourth.

3. Reinforcing intervals concept - Use worksheets to reinforce concept of intervals of a second and of a third. (Basic Musicianship Series)

F. Chords

1. Review the tonic-chord pattern (do-mi-sol-do). Explain to the children that if we put these notes together and sang them or played them simultaneously, we would produce a chord. This is called the tonic or I chord. This chord is sometimes outlined in melodies where we sing only one note at a time.

Example: "The Lone Star Trail"

Sing - in' Ki
(do - mi - sol)
Example: Have children place a note on the first line. Then ask them to place another note a second higher.
Have children place a note in the first space on the staff. Have them place another note in the second space. Ask them if this is a second or a third.

Example:

\[\text{third} \quad \text{fourth}\]

Circle correct answer: Third
Second
Fourth

Lone Star Trail

MATERIAL

Mastercodo
Duplicating paper
Tagboard staffs, notes, sharps and flats from school office.

IMC kit - K5022
"Intervals and Phrases"
Threshold to Music - t.g., p. 140, Specific Intervals are Listed.

IMC - Basic Musicianship Series, Book I, Lessons 7 through 12.

Follett, page .47
### Vocal Activities

**Goals**

**(Chords - cont.)**

- Have children sing this pattern from syllables chart. Divide the class into three groups and sing chord.
- Have three children simultaneously play chord on resonator bells.

**Activities**

2. Introducing the dominant chord pattern.
   - Tell the children that the notes sol-ti-re form another chord. This is called the dominant or V chord. This chord is also often outlined in melodies. Example: "The Speckled Bird"
     
     ![music notation]

     "Kil-ku-rin"
     (sol-ti-re)

   - Have children sing this pattern from syllables chart. Divide the class into three groups and sing chord.
   - Have three children simultaneously play the chord notes on the resonator bells.

3. Introducing the tonic-chord in Minor
   - Tell the children that the notes do-mi-sol form the tonic-chord in major. Point out to them that this chord starts on the first note of the scale and is built of thirds. Ask them if they could figure out the tonic-chord in minor. It is la-do-mi.
     - Divide the class into three groups. Sing the minor tonic-chord.
     - Have three children play this chord simultaneously on the resonator bells.

4. Awareness of difference between songs in major and minor by sound.
   Children will notice that songs in minor have a very different sound from songs in major. They should be told that most songs are in major. That is, they usually end on "do" and have a characteristic sound. Minor songs usually end on "la" and sometimes sound sad or spooky. However, songs in minor can sound happy, too.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

The teacher can sing or play the minor scale for the children to show them the difference in sound. Minor songs are based on the minor scale (la-ti-doe-mi-fa-sol-la).

See "Minor Songs," Classified Index

See "Songs in Minor Mode," Classified Index

MATERIAL

The Speckled Bird, Follett, page 13

Dominant Chord Figures Follett, page 189

Resonator Bells

Melody Bells

HRW text, p. 292

Follett, p. 188
### VOCAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Read Music - cont.</td>
<td>5. Discovering whether a song is in major or minor through looking at the music.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It should be brought to the children's attention that usually when the songs end on "do", it is in major, and when it ends on "la" it is in minor. To make this more clear to the children, divide the class into groups. Each group should be assigned a certain number of pages in the Follett text in which to find songs in the minor key.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G. Dynamic Markings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The children should be told that these words (piano, forte, mezzo, etc.) are Italian and mean &quot;soft&quot;, &quot;loud&quot;, &quot;medium&quot;, etc. in that language. The children should observe these markings when they appear in music.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. p (piano) - soft  
b. f (forte) - loud  
c. crescendo - gradually louder  
d. decrescendo or diminuendo - gradually softer  
e. pp (pianissimo) - very soft  
f. mp (mezzo piano) - medium soft  
g. mf (mezzo forte) - medium loud  
h. ff (fortissimo) - very loud  

The following activities will help the children to remember the meanings of dynamic markings:

1. Dynamic Chart - The teacher should make a chart for dynamic markings to be displayed in the room, adding to it as each new marking is encountered in songs.
2. Flash Cards - The teacher may make a set of flash cards of dynamic markings to be used in various ways.
3. Dynamics in Poetry - Select a poem to be dramatized through the use of dynamics. Write the poem on the board. Add appropriate dynamic markings, accents, etc. For each line have the children decide. Chant the poem incorporate the dynamics. Add rhythm instruments or other sound effects if they fit.
4. Introducing crescendo and diminuendo - Have children clap very softly with one finger on the palm of the hand four even beats. Without losing any beats, clap four more beats a little louder using two fingers. Increase this by one finger every four beats until all fingers are used in a loud clap. This should sound like a crescendo. Reverse the procedure to achieve a diminuendo.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

See "Minor Songs," Classified Index

See "Songs in Minor Mode," Classified Index

Sing songs more loudly and more softly, and recognize differences, including very slight changes.

Listen to musical compositions, identify and differentiate among those passages that are louder and softer than others.

Learn the meaning of visual symbols for dynamic effects that have been heard, sung or played.

Ex: "America" (see *Expression in Teacher edition - page 2)

Ex: "Wing Song"

p Blow in, blow in, O Western Wind!

mp From out the blue, foam-flowered main,

mf Blow in across the coastwise hills

f And bring the ploughing rain!

Have some children making sound of wind in background.

MATERIALS

HRW text, p. 292

Follett, p. 188

Tagboard

HRW, t.g.

Classified Index

"Poetry," p. 292

HRW, t.g., p. 2

Follett, "Poetry"

Classified Index,

p. 190

Anthology of

Children's Literature

Arbuthnot
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Read Music - cont.</td>
<td>H. Drill on sight-singing syllables in a right to left progression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Teacher should write syllable patterns on the chalkboard. Children should sing circled notes as teacher points to them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

**Example 1 of scale pattern:**
- mi mi mi mi mi mi
- re re re re re re re
- do do do do do do do

**Example 2 of key-chord pattern:** (Major)
- sol sol sol sol sol sol sol
- fa fa fa fa fa fa fa
- mi mi mi mi mi mi mi
- re re re re re re re
- do do do do do do do
- ti ti ti ti ti ti ti
- la la la la la la
- sol sol sol sol sol sol

**Example 3 of pattern of thirds outside of the key-chords:**
- fa fa fa fa fa fa fa
- mi mi mi mi mi mi mi
- re re re re re re re
- do do do do do do do
- ti ti ti ti ti ti ti

**Example 4 including interval of a fourth outside of the key-chord:**
- sol sol sol sol sol sol sol
- fa fa fa fa fa fa fa
- mi mi mi mi mi mi mi
- re re re re re re re
- do do do do do do do

**Example 5 of dominant 7th chord:**
- fa fa fa fa fa fa fa
- mi mi mi mi mi mi mi
- re re re re re re re
- do do do do do do do
- ti ti ti ti ti ti ti
- la la la la la la la
- sol sol sol sol sol sol sol

**Example 6 key-chord pattern minor:**
- mi mi mi mi mi mi mi
- re re re re re re re
- do do do do do do do
- ti ti ti ti ti ti ti
- la la la la la la

---

## MATERIALS

- Mastercodo
- Duplicating Paper
- Basic Musicianship Series worksheets - IMC
### VOCAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IV. To Sing in Harmony</td>
<td>A. Children should be able to sing familiar songs and add a simple ostinato. (short repeated pattern). Music written in the pentatonic (do, re, mi, sol, la) lends itself to short music accompaniments. Children will probably have greater success if they begin by improvising an instrumental ostinato on the resonator bells or Orff instruments and then adding words to these so that they might also be sung.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Descants -
   The descant adds interest to a song, either as a separate part or combined with the melody after it has been learned separately. A descant can be played on any melody instrument or sung. Make sure the melody is learned well before adding the descant. Have all the children learn the descant first. Then divide class into two parts having strong singers on both parts. About 1/3 of the children should be in the descant and 2/3 in the melody. |
Example: Descant

AUNT RHODIE

Go tell Aunt Rhodie, go tell Aunt Rhodie

Go tell Aunt Rhodie, the old gray goose is dead

(descant)

AH! ----- Me!

OH! What misery

OH - Such tragedy, AH! ----- ME!
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Sing in Harmony - cont.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Rounds and canons  
   a. Sing many rounds and canons.  
   b. Combination Rounds - the following rounds can be sung together:  
      "Make New Friends"  
      "Sing Together"  
      "Three Blind Mice"  
      "Are You Sleeping?"  
      "Row Your Boat"
Example: "Pick A Bale of Cotton", Follett, p. 49
This is an easy beginning descant.
Teacher should walk around the room listening to the children, making sure they sing their own part.

Two part rounds usually sung twice, three part rounds three times, and four part rounds four times.

"Make New Friends"

Sing, sing to-geth-er, mer-ri-ly, mer-ri-ly sing.

Partner songs are available in the following books:
"Partner Songs", Bachman, Ginn and Co.
"More Partner Songs", Bechman, Ginn and Co.
"Partner Songs", Bechman, Ginn and Co.
"Golden Book of Favorite Songs"
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Sing in Harmony - cont.</td>
<td>c. Partner songs -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There are a combination of two different songs which can be sung together. Example: &quot;Solomon Levi&quot; &quot;Spanish Cavalier&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d. Echo songs -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Teacher sings a phrase, and children echo; without losing any beats, the teacher sings a second rhythm pattern and children respond.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Come Along

Come a long, sing a song, follow me.

Come a long, sing a song, follow

It is easy, as you see, every day.
In this

It is easy, as you see, every day.

Way just repeat till the tune is complete

In this way just repeat, complete.
### VOCAL ACTIVITIES

#### GOALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To Sing in Harmony - cont.</th>
<th>3. Two part songs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ACTIVITIES</strong></td>
<td><strong>CONT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. To develop a readiness for two part singing, the teacher may wish to use easy descants or songs with individual melodic line harmony, Have entire class learn the part and change grouping several ways. Have the class arranged so that each section will include strong singers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Divide class into two parts. One half sings do-re-mi-fa-sol-la while the other half sings on ascending scale.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Step 1: Write on the board - do-re-mi-fa-sol-la-sol. Sing once or twice. Step 2: Write under it - do-re-mi-fa-mi. Sing once or twice. Step 3: Divide the class into two parts and sing them together.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Vocal melody with Ostinati 1. Two tone melodies a. Sing melody using two tones (sol,mi) b. Play ostinato using all notes of pentatonic scale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### V. To Create Music

| 1. Making up simple melodies or songs |  |
| In order to get children in the proper mood for making up melodies, start out with very spontaneous activities. |  |
| a. Musical news: Have children tell news through singing it. Teacher should ask questions in singing. |  |
| b. Playing operas: Group decides on a topic. The teacher starts by asking a question in singing. One child answers in singing. Teacher asks another question in singing, another child answers, etc. If something interesting develops, try to remember the melodies. Select a group to represent the chorus and other children to be soloists. Present the opera for another class. |  |
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

b-c. Some other easy exercises of the same type:

1. do-re-mi-fa-mi-fa-sol
   do-re-do-re-do-re-mi

2. do-re-mi-mi-fa-fa-sol
   do-re-do-do-re-re-mi

3. do-mi-sol-la-sol
   do-do-mi-fa-mi

4. mi-fa-sol-la-sol
   do-re-mi-fa-mi

5. sol-la-ti-do-ti-la
   mi-fa-sol-la-sol-fa

6. do-re-mi-fa-sol
   do-ti-do-re-mi

Examples: "Stop, Look, and Listen"
"Baseball Game"

MATERIAL

HRW text, pages 103, 105, 107, 122, 149, 161, 178,
Follett, t.g., Classified Index, p. 188

Orff t.g., p. 20-22
IMC Guide - F1083, "Reading Music: Finding the Melody"

a. Choose a topic interesting to all children.
   Example: "We Visited the Moon"
   At first, do not try to write melodies down.
b. Play different character roles, Example: "Farmer"

4/4 ♪ ♪ ♪ ♪ I hoe and I plow.
VOCA\AL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Create Music - cont.</td>
<td>c. Writing a melody to a poem: Select a poem. Have the children discover the meter and write the notes for the rhythm of the first lines. Establish the key by singing the scale or do-mi-sol-do. Have several children suggest a melody. Choose the most interesting one and write it on the board. Continue in this manner until the song is completed. Try to develop a sense of unity. (One way this can be done is through repeated phrases.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Help children discover or review the ideas of &quot;even&quot; or &quot;uneven&quot;. Write rhythmic notation on the board for some of the patterns they discover. They might sing or play tones that sound with the beat or that are an even division of the beat in the pattern.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| e. Improvisation can be done quite simply by using resonator or melody bells and Orff instruments.  
1. Children make up Ostinati for songs  
2. Several children make up ostinati, then another improvises a melody for voice or instrument. |
| f. Make up additional verses for familiar songs. |
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HRW t.g., Classified Index, &quot;Poems&quot;, p. 291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follett, Classified Index, &quot;Poetry&quot;, t.g., p.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arbuthnot's <em>Anthology of Children's Literature</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRW text, pp. 12, 13, 102-127, 183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orff t.g., p. 42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. See "Poetry" in classified index of Teacher's Guide of HRW text, page

2. Example of beat in patterns:
CLASSROOM INSTRUMENTAL PROGRAM

Behavioral Objectives

I. To develop music skills through the use of rhythm instruments.
   - The student will be able to play the basic rhythm instruments in accompaniment to class singing.

II. To develop skill through the use of melody instruments.
   - The student will be able to read by letter names, the notes in the treble clef.
   - The student will be able to play melodic patterns on the bells by note to accompany vocal selections.
   - The student will be able to play the flutophone demonstrating proper hand positions, tone production and tonguing.
   - The student will be able to play the flutophone by note in two- and three-part harmony in the keys of C, F and G.
   - The student will be able to play a major scale on the bells or piano from any given starting tone.
   - The student will be able to play on the keyboard a triad on each tone of the C Major scale and identify them by root number.

III. To develop music skills through the use of the autoharp.
   - The student will be able to play the autoharp by reading chord symbols in simple two- and three-chord accompaniments in the keys of C, F and G.
   - The student will be able to write in the treble clef the I, IV and V7 chords in the keys of C, F and G.

IV. To develop self-expression and imagination through creative instrumental activities.
   - The student will be able to improvise rhythm accompaniments employing rhythm patterns of the song.
   - The student will be able to write introductions and codas to songs sung in class.
INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| I. To Develop Music Skills Through Use of Rhythm Instruments | A. Review of Non-pitched percussion instruments.  
1. tom-toms and other drums  
2. tambourine  
3. sleigh bells  
4. triangle  
5. cymbals  
6. claves  
7. jingle clogs  
8. maracas  
9. castanets  
10. sandpaper block |
| | B. Use of non-pitched percussion instruments.  
Encourage further usage and participation to expand knowledge and ability in usage of instruments. |

II. To Develop Skills Through Use of Melody Instruments

A. In order to play melody instruments by notes, the fourth grade children will have to learn the letter names of the treble clef.

1. Music alphabet - Review the music alphabet, A, B, C, D, E, F, G.  
The children should be able to say these letters forward and backwards, and should know that when all the letters have been used, we start over again with A. When we go by step up the staff, the names of the notes represent the music alphabet going forward. When we go down by step, the names of the notes are the music alphabet going backwards.
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

For additional helps in playing techniques see HRW, t.e., p. xii and xiii.

Use rhythm instruments individually and in combination for accompaniment to songs. Adapt the accompaniment to the mood and character of the song.

### MATERIALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HRW text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| Orff instruments |

### B. Make up original accompaniments to songs, figure out the rhythmic notation and combine the patterns. Select appropriate instruments to play one or more patterns as an accompaniment to the song.

1) Using word patterns from song "This Old Man"
2) Making up word patterns that are related to the song text as a basis for the rhythmic pattern, "Buffalo Gals".
3) Use instruments to add expressiveness to choral reading or poetry.

### A. To review melodic concepts, have a "Mystery tune of the Day," or play a game "Melody spell Down."

Directions for games are listed in HRW, t.e., p.51
## GOALS

To Develop Skills - melody instruments continued -

## ACTIVITIES

2. **Names of the lines** - Review the treble clef as the G Clef, having the children notice that the curved loop of the clef sign goes around the G line. By using the first letters of the saying, "Every Good Boy Does Fine", we discover the letter names of the lines from bottom to top.

3. **Names of the spaces** - By using the word face (F-A-C-E), we discover the names of the spaces from bottom to top.

4. **Exercises** - Have children make up words using the music alphabet by writing notes on the staff, the letter names of which spell a word.

### B. Introduction to Melody instruments.
- a. Resonator Bells
- b. Melody Bells
- c. Step Bells
- d. Xylophone
- e. Orff Instruments
- f. Flutophone
- g. Piano or pianet
- h. Glockenspiel

### C. Accompaniment to vocal music using the bells or Orff instruments. Select a song from "Instrumental Skills & Bells" from the classified index of the HRW, t.e., p. 292 or "With Parts for Instrument Bells" from the classified index of the Follett, t.e., p. 189. Example: "White Coral Bells"

After the children feel secure with the melody, sing the song as a two-part round. Then have some children play the melody on the bells while the class sings.
INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

2. a) Help the children to develop the scale concept by having them place "scrambled" resonator bells in order.
   b) Use bells descants for pentatonic songs. (A Good Day in Japan)
   c) Use bells to add appropriate introductions and codas to familiar songs.
   d) Play descants on xylophones to accompany songs.
   e) Help children develop an understanding of tonality by "figuring out" scales on the bells, thus discovering the placement of whole and half steps.
   f) Help the children learn chord construction by grouping the resonator bells in the correct order.

4.

C. Example: "White Coral Bells"

In this song, resonator bells or melody bells may be used. Resonator bells are preferred when a song has flat or sharps to make it easier for the children.

In order to have all children learning the bell parts at one time, the teacher should ditto a representation of the resonator bells or melody bells that are used in this song. Try to make these as close to the read size as possible using one piece of construction paper for each child with the above set of bells. Pencils (eraser end) may be used for mallets. Children should aim to get a free bouncing movement.

MATERIALS

HRW text, p. 60
Follett, t.e., p. 189
Orff Instrument Guide, pp. 18-20
HRW, p. 159
Mastercodo
White construction paper
To Develop Skills - melody instruments continued -

D. Introducing the flutophone
Step 1: Show the children how to hold the instruments.
Step 2: Explain that the relationship of a specific finger to a specific hole is constant, i.e., always use the same finger for the same hole.
Step 3: Instruct the children on how to blow the instrument. To make a tone correctly have the pupil say the word "too" and notice how the tongue moves. This movement is the same action needed for blowing the correct tone or tonguing each note. The lips should be stretched tightly against the teeth.
Step 4: Use a staff; show the note G and add A and B. Then demonstrate A and B fingerings.
Step 5: Use B, A and G in order and play it several times as the teacher points. "The Three Blind Mice" is the result as illustrated below. This usually is satisfactory as a beginning lesson culmination.

```
\[ \text{\textbf{Three blind mice, Three blind mice}} \]
```

Step 6: A diagram of a flutophone and its fingerings should be displayed in the room. See example.

1. Follow basic lessons plans for Flutophone lessons which are made available to every fourth grade teacher.
INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

Be sure all children have a flutophone. Sometimes it is helpful to have one child play the instrument who already knows a simple song. Use the tape recorder early in introducing the instrument saving the tape for future use to show improvement. Be sure children use left hand fingers for notes on the top half of the flutophone. Children should hold fingers flat rather than arched, so thicker part of fingers are over the openings.

The first pieces learned on the flutophones should be written on the chalkboard. The teacher should point to the notes while the children play. Gradually they should learn to read the music from the individual flutophone books. These can be checked out from the school office, resource center or music consultant, might vary somewhat in some buildings.

FINGERING CHART FOR THE FLUTOPHONE

All of the fingerings below except high D require the covering of the thumb opening with the thumb of the left hand.

B - Cover opening B with index finger of left hand.
A - Cover opening B and A with index and third finger of left hand.
G - Cover opening B, A and G with index, third and fourth fingers of left hand.
F - Cover openings B, A and G with index, third and fourth fingers of left hand and cover opening F with index finger of right hand.
E - Cover opening B, A and G with left hand and F and E with index and third finger of right hand.
D - Cover opening B, A and C with left hand and F, E, D and C with index, third and fourth fingers of the right hand.
C - (LOW) Cover openings B, A and C with left hand, and F, E, D and C with right hand.

MATERIALS

See Basic Lesson Plans for Flutophone, Lessons 1-12.

Music Time with Flutophone or Flutophones,
Classroom Method
Tagboard
Flutophone
### INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Develop Skills - melody instruments continued -</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

C - (HIGH) With thumb of left hand cover the back opening only on the flutophone.
D# - (HIGH) No fingers covering opening.
F# - (Key of G) Cover openings B, A and G with index, third and fourth fingers of left hand, cover opening E with third finger of right hand.
Bb - (Key of F) Cover opening B with index finger of left hand and F with index finger of the right hand.

Flutophones which are cracked will not play in tune. Ask the children to notice the position of the mouthpiece after it is in tune and try to always leave it in that position.

Be sure the children can sing the song well before adding the accompaniment. Select a small group to accompany the singing.

The basic flutophone text contains several two-part selections. The example found below might also be interesting.
Example: "Chop Sticks"

Flutophone text
Follett Flutophones
Lesson Plans for Flutophones
HRW, t.e., Classified Index "Instrumental Skills," p. 292
Follett, t.e., Classified Index, "Small Wind Instruments", page 189

Flutophone text
Music Time with Flutophones, Classroom Method
### INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Develop Skills - melody instruments continued -</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 5. Introducing three-part music for flutophones

Select three part song from pages 15 - 30 in "All Melody Pre-Instrument Method". Have whole class learn all parts before combining.

Play in various combinations of two parts, then add the third part.

#### E. Keyboard Experiences

Fourth graders are to be introduced to the keyboard in nine weeks. Tagboard keyboards available in each building should be used in the lessons. If they are made by the teachers, students or music consultant, the directions may be found in the Instrumental Resource Section of this guide. These directions indicate the marking of "middle C" on the appropriate key, no other keys should be marked.

1) Review Grade 3 work.
   - Review the notes C-C; be able to locate them throughout the keyboard.
   - Play three finger melodies.

2) Introducing Chords, Building Triads I-VII° in C Major, Discovering Names of Triads.
   - a) Have children make treble clef signs on staff paper. Explain "G" clef.
   - b) The notes of the scale may be numbered and are then referred to as degrees.
   - c) Establish definitions for chords (major, minor) triads, "root" and etc.
   - d) Build and construct chords.

3) Learning a Second Five-Finger Melody in C Major ("Lightly Row.")
INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

1) Review Lesson one in Keyboard Lesson Plans. Review Lessons two and three in Keyboard Lesson Plans

2) Refer to Lesson four in Keyboard detailed Lesson Plans

3) See Detailed Lesson Plans on Keyboard

MATERIALS

Be sure all children are counting because the rhythm is not the same in each part. Select small group (six children) to play song as a double trio.
**INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Develop Skills - melody instruments continued -</td>
<td>4. Harmonizing C Major Melodies with &quot;do&quot; and &quot;sol&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**III. To Develop Music Skills Through the Use of Simple Autoharp Accompaniments**

A. Playing two and three-chord accompaniments on the autoharp.

Make copies of individual autoharp charts for children using the chart. Review with children how to finger and strum the autoharp. Select songs from the list of two and three chord autoharp accompaniments in the Instrumental Resource or Songs for Autoharp. After the key of the song is determined, have the children locate on the autoharp the chords they will use. (These chords are labeled in the HRW and Follett books). The index finger goes on the I chord, the third finger on the V7 chord, and the fourth finger on the IV chord. While one child actually plays the autoharp, the others should pretend to be fingering and strumming at their desks.
INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

HELPs FOR THE TEACHER

4) See Detailed Lesson Plans on Keyboard

Refer to the glossary to see how the autoharp is played. The classroom teacher should use the autoharp frequently in accompaniments that are too difficult for children to play. This helps children to associate harmony with the songs they sing.

Children in the fourth grade should be able to play two- and three-chord accompaniments on the autoharp in the keys of C, F and G. The chords for each of these keys are indicated on the above chart in the following manner: - chords for key of G; - chords for key of C; - chords for key of F.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Keyboard Lesson Plans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMC kit - K-5030</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Keyboard Instruction&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autoharp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mastercodo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White construction paper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
B. Building chords on the staff

In vocal music in the fourth and fifth grades, children learn to find chord patterns (tonic and dominant) in their songs. In unison singing the notes of a chord are sung one at a time. On the autoharp, the chord notes are played simultaneously. The children should be able to build the I, IV and V7 chords in vertical fashion on the staff in the keys of C, F, and G.

The children should be told that the I chord is built on the first note of the scale, the IV chord on the fourth note of the scale and the V7 chord on the fifth note of the scale. The I and IV chords contain three notes. These notes are built of thirds above the root. The V7 chord contains four notes. These notes are also built of thirds above the root. The seventh of the V7 chord refers to the fact that the top tone of the chord is an interval of a seventh above the root of the chord. In order to hear the harmony of these chords, the children should sing them by syllables:

I chord - do-mi-sol
IV chord - fa-la-do
V7 chord - sol-ti-re-fa

The IV and V7 chords should be sung starting on low fa and sol, respectively, when the top notes are out of the children's range.
A breakdown of the chords in each key is as follows:

**Key of G**
- I chord (tonic) - G Major
- V7 chord (dominant seventh) - D Seventh
- IV chord (sub-dominant) - C Major

**Key of F**
- I chord (tonic) - F Major
- V chord (dominant seventh) - C Seventh
- IV chord (sub-dominant) - Bb Major

**Key of C**
- I chord (tonic) - C Major
- V chord (dominant-seventh) - G Seventh
- IV chord (sub-dominant) - F Major

On the autoharp each note of the chord is played in several octaves.
## INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| IV. To Develop Self-Expression and Imagination Through Creative Instrumental Activities | A. Orff Instruments  
Develop choral discrimination by experimenting to find tones that will fit with the melody and form harmonic progressions pleasing to the individual.  
Use the Orff Instruments, Melody or Resonator Bells. Refer to Bloomington Orff Instrument Guide pp. 18-42. |

B. Improvise Rhythm accompaniments  
1) Children can gain understanding of rhythm as they enjoy games of experimentation and improvisation. They may chant a word pattern and determine the notation of the rhythm. They may accompany the chants with percussion instruments and later play the patterns of rhythm without the chant.
INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

Follow suggestions for utilizing the Orff instruments that are listed in the Orff Instrument Guide.

Example:

RAIN STORM

Need: C, D, E, G, A

Violet Merchant

Starting with the glockenspiel, the other instruments may be added one by one, every four measures. You may wish to have a cymbal crash on the word "crash." It may sound best if all of the instruments and the singing stop together. The children may like to add another cymbal crash at the end.

Remember to let the children make up their own parts. You might tell them to choose two bars on their instrument and play an ostinato on them.

1) Example: 4/4

Go tell Aunt Rho - - die

Variations may vary, children may also add a counter-melody.

John Brown had a lit-tle In-dian

MATERIALS

Orff Instrumental Guide from IMC or Building or use Melody or Resonator Bells from Building.
## INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Develop Self-Expression and Imagination - cont.</td>
<td>2) A rhythm game might be a cumulative one. The first child plays a rhythm, the next child plays the first rhythm and adds a new one. The third child remembers and repeats the first two rhythms and adds a new one. The game continues until everyone playing has &quot;missed&quot; by being unable to repeat the entire set of rhythms.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                                                                      | 3) Improvisation activities could include:  
|                                                                      |   a) Developing a simple melodic accompaniment  
|                                                                      |   b) Composing a melody to fit a creative poem  
|                                                                      |   c) Writing and playing instrumental compositions  
|                                                                      |   d) Class project accompaniments for a Culmination Unit activity, class program or music festival. |
|                                                                      | 4) Songs based on the pentatonic scale are excellent for improvisation. This scale's structure allows any two tones sounded together to produce an acceptable harmonic sound.  
|                                                                      |   a) a child may improvise free accompaniment to familiar songs. Experiment with a two-tone accompaniment, then a three-tone, then the complete five-tone scale.  
|                                                                      |   b) Two children may improvise simultaneously on the piano's black keys. For best results, they should agree on rhythm patterns before beginning. One may move in quarter notes while the other move in eighth notes. |
|                                                                      | C. To Improvise Introductions and Codas  
|                                                                      |   Introductions and codas may be planned in a variety of ways.  
|                                                                      |   1) Discuss the mood of the song. Select instruments and rhythmic or melodic patterns that enhance the mood. Play them as an introduction.  
|                                                                      |   2) Sing an introduction by making a simple vocal call. For example, "All Aboard!" (could be an introduction to a train song.)  
|                                                                      |   3) Select the bells which form the scale of the song and create a melody using any of these tones. |
INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

2) Examples could be:

\[
\frac{3}{4} \begin{array}{cccc}
\wedge & \wedge & \wedge & \wedge \\
\wedge & \wedge & \wedge & \\
\wedge & \wedge & \wedge & \\
\end{array}
\]

HRW, t.e., p. 119

Orff Instruments
Melody instruments

Example: Pentatonic songs are "Song of Itsuki" and "A Good Day in Japan"

HRW text, p. 58
HRW, t.e., p. 60
HRW, t.e., p. xvi

Example: "Baseball Game" - Orff Instrument Guide

For further suggested activities see -

HRW, t.e., p. xvi
HRW, t.e., p. 22

Orff Instrumental Guide, pp. 18-42
HRW text, p. 92

Melody instruments
Orff instruments
Behavioral Objectives

I. To develop good listening habits.
   - The student will demonstrate good listening habits by:
     a. being attentive during performances.
     b. being respectful of performers.
     c. being considerate of other members of the audience.

II. To distinguish the elements and structure of music through listening.
   - The student will be able to identify the contrasting sections in the two- and three-part song forms.
   - The student will be able to differentiate aurally the tonality of a song as being major or minor.
   - The student will be able to determine the basic meter of a song through listening.

III. To recognize various mediums of performance.
   - Given a list of instruments of the orchestra, the student will be able to assign them to the proper family of instruments.
   - The student will be able to recognize by sound the instruments of the orchestra.

IV. To recognize characteristics of different forms of music.
   - On hearing a Rondo, the student will be able to symbolize its form by assigning letter names to the various sections.
   - The student will be able to identify the rhythmic, melodic or harmonic modifications of the variations in a Theme and Variations.
   - The student will be able to enumerate distinguishing characteristics of three dance forms: the waltz, minuet and gavotte.

V. To develop self-expression and imagination through creative listening activities.
   - The student will be able to respond to music with physical movements expressive of the tempo, meter, rhythm, melody, harmony and mood.
   - The student will be able to respond orally to music in terms of its rhythmic, melodic, harmonic and formal organization.
## LISTENING ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. To Develop Good Listening Habits</td>
<td>A. The children should have one listening experience a week.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| | B. Provide purposeful listening experiences.  
   1. Establish an atmosphere conducive to good listening by preparing and motivating students to be attentive, receptive and responsive.  
   2. Instill habits of courtesy and proper audience conduct.  
      a. Respect for performers  
      b. Appreciation shown through applause |
| II. To Distinguish the Elements and Structure of Music Through Listening | A. Each listening lesson should have a point of emphasis. When teaching a listening lesson, attention should be placed on particular features, such as melody (high-low), rhythm (even-jerky) or form (like-unlike).  
   1. Form - Organization of musical fragments in a composition. The sections may be repeated or in direct contrast which presents a new musical idea. Forms to be studied in 4th grade are:  
      a. folk song  
      b. chanty  
      c. gavotte  
      d. minuet  
      e. waltz  
      f. rondo  
      g. theme and variations  
      h. AB, ABA |
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR THE TEACHER</th>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Record series:</td>
<td>HRW records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRW records</td>
<td>Adventures in Music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adventures in Music</td>
<td>Listening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listening</td>
<td>Musical Sound Books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musical Sound Books</td>
<td>RCA Listening Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCA Listening Activities</td>
<td>Vox &quot;Music Masters&quot; Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vox &quot;Music Masters&quot; Series</td>
<td>Individual records.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Listen for something specific during each playing of a record; the rhythm, changes in tempo, dynamic contrasts, repeated phrases or sections, melodic.

Refer to section on "Exploring Music Through Listening"

1. When teaching a listening lesson, it is suggested that teacher follow detailed lesson plans listed in the HRW, t.e.

Suggested examples for teaching Form are:
- "Carillon from L' Arlesienne Suite No. 1" by G. Bizet
- "Trio in A Minor, Opus 114" by Brahms
- "Violin Concerto in D Major, Opus 61" by Beethoven

For Form listings from a through h, see detailed lesson plans from Grade 4 Appreciation Guide.

HRW, t.e.
HRW text, p. 68
HRW, p. 29
HRW, p. 72
4th Grade Appreciation Guide from Music Consultant
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Distinguish Elements and Structure - cont.</td>
<td>2. Melody - A succession of pitches in which the movement is rhythmically controlled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a. up - down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. high - low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c. step - skip - same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d. tonality (scales - major, minor, pentatonic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Rhythm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. Responding to various meters in music
Children should discover, by listening, what the basic meter of a song is, i.e., does the song move in groups of 2, 3 or 4 beats? In written music this would mean 2, 3 or 4 beats to a measure. This can be done in a variety of ways.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTION FOR PRINCIPAL OR ACCENTED BEATS</th>
<th>ACTION FOR SECONDARY BEATS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. clap</td>
<td>touch shoulders (as many times as there are beats)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. clap loudly (on palm of hand)</td>
<td>clap softly (on palm of hand)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. count &quot;one&quot;</td>
<td>count &quot;two&quot;; &quot;two, three&quot;; or &quot;two, three, four&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. some children play on tone blocks</td>
<td>other children play on sticks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. some children play on drum</td>
<td>other children play on triangle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. bounce ball</td>
<td>hold ball</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. toss ball in air and catch</td>
<td>hold ball</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LISTENING ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. Suggested examples for teaching Melody are:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variation on &quot;Sakura&quot; by Kimio Eto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Six Pieces for Orchestra, Opus 6, Third Piece by Anton Webern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Hary Janos Suite, Prelude&quot; by Zoltan Kodaly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HRW, p. 57</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HRW, p. 169</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HRW, p. 40</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **3. Rhythmic patterns may be classified as even or uneven. Rhythm is governed by a beat, some are heavy and some are light.** |
| Suggested examples for teaching Rhythm are: |
| "Ionization" by Edgar Varese |
| "String Quartet" No. 10 in C Major, K170, First Movement by Mozart |
| "Pictures At an Exhibition" by Mussorgsky |
| **HRW, p. 126** |
| **HRW, t.e., p. 111** |
| **HRW text, p. 114** |

### MATERIALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B. Choose pieces that are predominantly rhythmic.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examples of music to be used:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 &quot;Dance of the Chinese Dolls&quot; - Rebikoff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Caprice on &quot;Aires de Ballet&quot; - Gluck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 &quot;Dancê&quot; - Bartok</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>R.C.A. Listening Activities Album, Volume 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

To Distinguish Elements and Structure - cont.

1. Ball-bouncing activity
   Arrange children in groups of four.
   Bounce individually for four measures.
   Toss individually for four measures.
   Bounce to partner for four measures.
     (1 bounces to 2 and 2 to 1)
     (3 bounces to 4 and 4 to 3)
   Toss to partner for four measures.
   Bounce to corner for four measures.
     (1 bounces to 4 and 4 to 1)
     (3 bounces to 2 and 2 to 3)
   Toss to corner for four measures.
   Repeat entire pattern three times.

   Between the groups, others may be placed who keep bouncing and tossing individually through the entire pattern.

   Use balls that are from 2-1/2 to 3 inches in diameter. Try to have the groups of four use the same size balls so that when they bounce to each other, one ball does not bounce more easily than another.

III. To Recognize Various Mediums of Performance

A. Instruments of the Orchestra
   1. Review of the families of instruments.
      a. Show children pictures of the instruments in their families.
      b. Review how instruments are played or how sound is made.
      c. Notebooks - Use pictures of instruments found in the Appreciation Resource. Ditto copies of these pictures to be given to each child. After discussion each instrument or group of instruments, have the children write notes about them. Compile pictures and notes into a notebook.
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

HELP FOR THE TEACHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Count this way:</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bounce</td>
<td>Hold</td>
<td>Hold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toss</td>
<td>Hold</td>
<td>Hold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use the following families:

1. Woodwinds - a group of wind instruments usually or originally made of wood or uses a reed.
2. Brass - musical instruments of the horn type that are blown and usually made of metal.
3. Percussion - musical instruments that are struck to make sound or music.
4. String - group of instruments using strings that are usually played with a bow.

Additional Helps:
- The Brass Family - HRW, t.e., p. 171, 174c
- The Percussion Family - HRW, t.e., p. 173, 174d
- The String Family - HRW, t.e., p. 172, 174
- The Woodwind Family - HRW, t.e., p. 174, 174b

MATERIALS

- "Beautiful Ohio"
- Windsor record
- #7602A (If not available, use another waltz).
- Phonograph

Use the following materials:

Arrange to have children from the school band and string to demonstrate the different types of instruments.
Ask music consultant for pictures of instruments or collect them. See pictures in Instrumental Resource. Get the following items from the music consultant:
- clarinet reed
- brass mouthpiece
- violin string
- drum head and stick

Films available from IMC:
- F8055 - The Brass Choir
- F8028 - Percussion Group
- F8032 - The String Choir
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

2. Learning to distinguish the instruments by their sound
   a. See list of records demonstrating instruments suitable for grade four in Appreciation Resource section.
   b. Show movie, "Instruments of the Band and Orchestra: Introduction".
      This movie includes: difference between band and orchestra
      brass family
      woodwind family
      percussion family
      string family
      some individual instruments

3. Introduction to the symphony orchestra
   a. Listen to a selection played by a full symphony orchestra.
      Example: "Peter and the Wolf" - Prokofiev
   b. Make a chart showing the seating arrangement of a symphony orchestra.
   c. Discuss the Minneapolis Symphony Orchestra
      - when and where they perform
      - how often they rehearse
      - the Young People's Concert the children will attend when they are in fifth grade.
Teacher should have pictures of the instruments available so that she can point to them as they are heard on the record. It is suggested that the teacher divides each of these albums in several lessons. In "Notes for Teacher", which accompany the RCA Listening program, specific instruments are pointed out.

Books available in some school libraries:
- "Tune Up", Huntington;
- Musical Books for Young People - "Shining Brass;"
- "The Woodwinds;"
- "The Beat of the Drum;"
- "The Heart of the Orchestra;"

HRW, t.e., Classified Index, "Instruments Featured in Song Recordings" and "Supplementary Material" pp. 292-293.

IMC Kit - K5101
"Peter and the Wolf"


IMC Film - F8033 - "The Symphony Orchestra"

HRW, t.e., "Symphony Orchestra", p. 53

IMC Kit - K5026
"Heart of the Orchestra"

HRW, text, p. 53
## LISTENING ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Recognize Various Mediums of Performance - cont.</td>
<td>A. Development of a varied repertoire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. To Recognize Characteristics of Different Forms of Music</td>
<td>1. Children should have one listening experience a week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Review the following musical forms: lullaby, march, dance. Use definitions listed under &quot;Musical Forms&quot; in Appreciation Resource. Refer to specific examples of these Musical Forms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B. Introduce the following musical forms and learn to distinguish their unique characteristics. 1. Folk Songs and Ballads a. Refer to definition of &quot;folk song&quot; in &quot;Musical Forms&quot; of Appreciation Resource. b. See &quot;Folk Songs of the U.S.A.&quot; and &quot;Folk Songs from other Countries&quot; in the Classified Index. c. Teacher should notice the teacher's helps in the green pages of the teacher's manual. d. See &quot;Folk Songs&quot; in the Appreciation Resource under &quot;Specific Examples of Musical Forms.&quot; e. On a large outline map of the United States or Europe, put a simple drawing or cut-out figure for every song that is sung - in the appropriate geographical place.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### VOCAL ACTIVITIES

#### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B. 1. Ancient Musical Instruments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Latin American Instruments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Pipe Organ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Oriental Instruments</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### MATERIALS

- HRW; t.e., p. 89 a-d
- HRW, t.e., p. 17
- HRW, t.e., p. 185
- HRW, pp. 58, 60, 145

#### MUSICAL MATERIALS

- Young Keyboard Jr. magazine, school library.

#### MUSICAL GUIDES

- HRW, Classified Index, p. 290
- Follett, Classified Index, p. 190
- HRW, p. 148

#### Young Keyboard Jr. magazine

#### Music Curriculum Guide

#### Music Guides

#### Music Resources

1. Associate the folk songs learned with the geography and customs of the countries they represent.

Example: "Marching to Pretoria"

This song was originally sung by the Dutch who had come to South Africa to work in the diamond mines. Many of them had left their families in Holland and were very lonely. Thus they did eat, sing and live together, as the words of the song suggest. Some children may do research to discover where Pretoria is, how the Dutch came to be in South Africa, and so on.

Example: "Hiking Song"

This fine old Swedish melody is used as a processional at Midsummer Eve festivals in Scandinavian countries. We understand why these Northern peoples celebrate the longest day of summer when we realize that in Stockholm the length of day varied from five and one-half hours in winter to eighteen and one-half hours in late June.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Recognize Characteristics - cont.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Chantey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

Tell the children these songs were not originally accompanied on the piano but on instruments such as ukulele, mandolin, etc. Notice these appropriate accompaniments in listening to folk songs.

Reference books containing folk songs:
- Seeger, Ruth Crawford, *American Folk Songs for Children*
- Seeger, Ruth Crawford, *Animal Folk Songs for Children*
- Seeger, Ruth Crawford, *American Folk Songs for Christmas*
- Brand, Oscar, *Singing Holidays* (folk songs for all holidays of the year)
- The *Burl Ives Songbook* (paperback - folksongs of revolution and pioneers)
- Linscott, E. H., *Folk Songs of Old New England*
- White, Florence and Akiyama, *Children's Songs from Japan*
- The Cooperative Recreation Service puts out small paper folk song books for 25¢. These contain some unusual songs.

A good record of folk songs for children: Songs to Grow On (Nursery Days, Vol. 1) FC7005 33-1/3 rpm Folkways Record and Service Corp:
121 West 47th Street
New York City

Detailed Lesson plans for "Folk Songs" listed in Lesson 5 in Grade 4 Appreciation Guide.

2. a. Refer to "Songs of Work and Workers"
   b. Refer to definition of "chantey" in Musical Forms in Appreciation Resource of this Guide.
   c. See "Chanteys" listed under Folk Songs of U.S.A. in the Classified Index.
   e. Reference books containing chanteys:
      - Doerflinger, W. M., *Shantymen and Shantyboys*
      - *Burl Ives Sea Songs* - paper back

   Detailed lesson plans for "Sea Chanty, Lesson 6, listed Grade 4 Appreciation Guide.

MATERIALS

HRW, t.e., Classified Index, p. 291
Follett, Classified Index, p. 187
American Singer, pp. 113-119.
American Singer available from IMC or in some buildings.

ERIC

128
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

To Recognize Characteristics - cont.

3. Gavotte

Gavottes consist of two parts, each of which are repeated. The gavotte usually begins on the third beat. The Alpine mountaineers from France who were called "Gavots" gave the dance its name.

4. Minuet

a. Refer to definition in Musical Forms in Appreciation Resource.

b. See "minuet" in Specific Examples of Musical Forms in Appreciation Resource.

Example: "Minuet" by Boccherini

Step 1 - Tell the children about the origin of the minuet. Describe it as a graceful, dignified dance, very different from the type of dances we see today.

Step 2 - Ask them to imagine the women in full hoop skirts, men in silks, satins, lace ruffles and silver buckles; and both men and women wearing powdered wigs.

Play the minuet and have the children imagine this kind of people doing the dance with small steps and graceful bows.

Step 3 - Identify violins as the principal instrument. Talk about pizzicato. Identify the cello and the harp as other instruments playing this minuet.
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

HELPs FOR THE TEACHER

3. a. Refer to definition of "gavotte" in Musical Forms in Appreciation Resource.

b. See "gavotte" in Appreciation Resource under Specific Examples of Musical Forms.

Example: "Gavotte" by Gossec
Step 1 - Tell children about origin of the gavotte as a boisterous peasant dance.
Step 2 - Identify the violin and flute as solo instruments.
Step 3 - Identify the meter to be 4 (see Appreciation Activity #2).
See "Notes for Teachers" which accompany the R.C.A. Listening Album, Volume 4, page 6.

Detailed lesson plans for "Gavotte" Lessons 7 and 8, listed in Grade 4 Appreciation Guide.

4. For detailed lesson plans on the "Minuet" refer to Appreciation Guide for Grade 4

The minuet was originally a folk dance of the French common people. It became a court dance in the time of Louis XIV and became very popular in the English court and country life in the 17th and 18th Centuries. Later it became popular in Colonial America.

Display pictures of the violin, cello and harp. Pizzicato means plucking the strings rather than bowing them. Children like the sound this produces.

R.C.A. Volume 4


R.C.A. Volume 4
## LISTENING ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Recognize Characteristics - cont.</td>
<td>Step 4 - Discover A-B-A form through telling children that the minuet is in three sections, the first and last of which are the same (A). In playing the selection again, have the children identify the different middle section (B) by raising their hands when they hear it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5. Waltz</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Refer to definition in &quot;Musical Forms&quot; in Appreciation Resource.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. See &quot;Waltz&quot; on Specific Examples of &quot;Musical Forms&quot; in Appreciation Resource.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Discover the meter of a waltz (see Appreciation Activity #2).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Children may sway back and forth in time to the music or pretend to skate: example - &quot;Skaters Waltz&quot;.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6. Rondo</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Understanding the form of a Rondo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Refer to definition in &quot;Musical Forms&quot; in Appreciation Resource.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. See &quot;Rondo&quot; in Classified Index.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>7. Theme and Variations</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Develop understanding of the theme as a definite, complete musical subject, and that a variation is a modification of a theme.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8. Forms - AB, ABA</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Listen for the various phrases that comprise a song.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

Give the children a hint about the B section. Tell them that the melody sounds like it is going up the scale at first. When this section is heard, have the children move their hands up and down with the melody.

c. Kinds of Waltzes and examples of these:
   fast - "Minute Waltz" by Chopin
   lively and gay - "Waltzing Doll" by Poldini

For detailed lesson plans on the "Waltz" refer to Lessons 10 and 11 of Appreciation Guide for Grade 4.

6. Rondo - is a musical form resulting from alterations of a main theme with contrasting themes. Example: "Violin Concerto in D Major, Opus 61" by Beethoven

Review Lesson 2 on forms in Grade 4 Appreciation Guide.

7. Refer to detailed lesson plans, Lesson 3 "Insert Sheet" in Grade 4, Appreciation Guide.

8. Refer to Classified Index "Design" page 292 (Two-part and three-part design.)
### LISTENING ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| V. To Develop Self-Expression and Imagination Through Creative Listening Activities | A. Physical response  
1. Fundamental movements such as marching, walking, skipping, etc.  
2. Dance and creative movement  
3. Group interpretation  
4. Pantomime the story of the music  
5. Puppet show (act out music with puppets)  |
| | B. Oral or Written response |
| | C. Pictorial response |
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>A.</strong> Divide class into groups, assign a theme or new musical idea to each group and have them respond as music is played.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B.</strong> Do creative writing based on the music theme. Write a short poem to go with the main melody.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C.</strong> Listen to the music thoroughly before beginning. to draw. Draw an abstract design of musical idea. Paint a realistic picture of musical story.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VOCAL RESOURCE

The Moveable "Do" System of Music Reading

The system of note reading taught in the Bloomington Elementary Schools is the moveable "do" system and uses the syllables to describe the various tones. This system is based upon the chromatic scale of thirteen tones within the normal octave illustrated as follows:

One Octave Ascending

do di re ri mi fa ri sol si la li ti do

One Octave Descending

do ti te la le sol se fa mi me re ra do

The underlined syllables are those normally used to describe the eight tones used in the diatonic major scale. The steps between these tones are not all of equal size, some being whole steps, some half steps, as evidenced by the irregular pattern of notes underlined in the above illustration. However, a regular scale pattern is established as follows:

do re mi fa sol la ti do

step step 1/2 step step step step 1/2

Due to this irregularity of steps, it is of great importance to determine the position of a given note in the scale before determining if the next note is one whole step or one-half step higher or lower. For example, in the illustration below, to sing from "fa" to the note below it "mi", one-half step is taken. On the other hand, to sing from "fa" to the next note higher "sol", one whole step would be taken. Therefore, it is important to establish the tonality relationship, or the scale, for a song when determining the first or beginning note.
The ability to read music notation without direction, which is a basic objective in our music program, is facilitated through the use of this system in that the relationship between syllables is constant, regardless of the key in which the song is written.

To help identify the scale for a particular song, it is necessary to recognize the three basic rules for finding "do" or the beginning note of the scale. These rules are most simply stated in this manner:

1. When there are no sharps or flats, the key is "C" and "do" is on the "C" line or space.

2. When there are sharps in the key signature, the right hand sharp is "ti". Count up or down to "do".

3. When there are flats in the key signature, the right hand flat is "fa". Count up or down to "do".

In utilizing the information, the teacher and children can find the proper scale and identify the whole and half steps as they exist before beginning to sing the song.

In reading a song by note, the children just identify the syllables, then sing them using a pointing finger to progress from syllable to syllable. This can be done a variety of ways and reference should be made to the recommendations for note reading in the Guide.

Altered tones, that is notes that are changed by accidentals (sharps, flats, or natural signs) not in the key signature, occur in the music. These changes are used to effect tonal effects that are desired by the composer. (Common examples of these are: fa = fi; ti = te.) These and all other altered tones can be seen in the chromatic scale. They are all the tones which are not found in the diatonic major scale.

The four basic scales referred to in this Guide are explained on the following page.
Major scale - Eight tones forming the following pattern:

`do_re_mi_fa_sol_la_ti_do`

(Natural Minor Scale)

La, Ti, Do, Re, Mi, Fa, Sol, La

Harmonic minor scale - Eight tones forming the following pattern:

`la_ti_do_re_mi_fa_*si_*la`

(Melodic Minor Scale)

La, Ti, Do, Re, Mi, Fa, Si, La

* "si" is sol raised one-half step.

A note of historical interest which may be pointed out is that Guido of Arezzo, a Benedictine monk, planned a method of teaching the reading of music, improved the system of writing notes and established a six-tone scale. He noticed a hymn that went up one degree with each of the first six lines, so he used the first syllables of the first word in each line to name the tones of the scale.

Ut queant laxis Mira gestorum Solve polluti
Resonare fibris Famuli tuorum Labii reatum Sancte Joannes

Ut was changed to do, ti was added and from this our scale was evolved.
HAND SIGNALS

do - 8

la - 6

sol - 5

fa - 4

mi - 3

re - 2

do - 1
Songs from Exploring Music listed according to key.

These songs have been categorized by key in order to make choosing a song for note singing easier for the teacher.

**Songs in Key of E**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Lullaby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Donkey Riding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>De Bezem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Call John The Boatman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Vrenelli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Make New Friends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>The Butterfly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>The Galaway Piper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135</td>
<td>This Train (dd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139</td>
<td>Beautiful Savior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154</td>
<td>Weggis Dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164</td>
<td>The Wielewool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176</td>
<td>Waltzing Matilda</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Songs in Key of F**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>America (dd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>We Sing of Golden Mornings (dd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(four patterns found in song)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>All Beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Cherries So Ripe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Pretty Little Pony</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Man Merle (dd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Serranilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>The Bell Doth Toll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>Come, Ye Thankful People, Come (dd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>The Yodler's Carol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Joseph Deuest, Joseph Mild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>Cuebos Carol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>Follow Me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>Why Shouldn't My Goose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>Bound for the Rio Grande</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>Lovely Evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>Polly Wolly Doodle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>Gladness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118</td>
<td>Little Fox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>It's Quiet on the Moon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>A Timely Rhyme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132</td>
<td>Old Texas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158</td>
<td>Lo, The Winter Is Past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>The Crow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>178</td>
<td>San Sereni' (two part; harmony is thirds)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Songs in Key of G

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>The Railroad Corral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>The Cuckoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Blow the Wind Southerly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>The Blacksmith</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>The Happy Plowman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Swiss Roundelay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Echo Yodel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>Little Bells of Westminster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Sir Eglamore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Banana Boat Loaden's Song (pattern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132</td>
<td>Doney Gal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158</td>
<td>A New Created World</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>Nightingale's Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165</td>
<td>The Upward Trail (pattern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175</td>
<td>Au Clair de la lune</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Songs in Key of C

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Hiking, Laughing, Singing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Holla - Hi! Holla Ho!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Stodola Pumpa (pattern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>O Give Me a Cat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>As the Sun Goes Down (pattern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td>Troubadour Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>Sweet and Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>Old Folks at Home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144</td>
<td>How Does My Lady's Garden Grow?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>159</td>
<td>White Coral Bells</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Songs in Key of D

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>Sing a Merry Noel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128</td>
<td>Psalm 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136</td>
<td>My Lord, What a Morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148</td>
<td>Marching to Pretoria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>159</td>
<td>Lachend Sommer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Songs in Key of E

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>French Cathedral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>Weel May the Keel Row (pattern)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Songs in Key of A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>O Savior Sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>O Come, All Ye. Faithful</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Songs in Key of A

Page 39  Sponge Fishing (♩♩  pattern)
Page 64  Snug 'neath the Fir Trees (♩♩  repeated uneven pattern)
Page 85  We Wish You a Merry Christmas

Songs in Key of B

Page 100  The Young Voyager
Page 146  Sing For the Wide, Wide Fields
Page 184  American For Me (♩♩♩♩ pattern)

Songs in Key of D

Page 160  May Day Carol

Songs in Key of A Minor

Page 43  El Burro de Villarino (♩♩♩♩♩♩♩ ♩♩ ♩♩ ♩♩ ♩♩ pattern)
Page 74  Mister Urian

Songs in Key of D Minor

Page 5  The Shanty Boys In the Pine
Page 16  A La Nanita Nana
Page 42  Riding With the Cavalry
Page 92  The Wraggle-Taggle Gypsies
Page 110  Dakota Hymn

Songs in Key of E Minor

Page 134  Brethren in Peace Together

Songs in Key of F Minor

Page 129  Zum Gali Gali
Songs from *Exploring Music* - cont.

**Songs in Key of G Minor**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Yangtze Boatman's Chantey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138</td>
<td>Windy Nights</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pentatonic**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Song of Itsuki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Koto and Tsuzumi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>A Good Day in Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>The Riddle Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145</td>
<td>Gasmine Blossoms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dorian Mode**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>Jesus The Christ Is Born</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Songs from the Follett text listed according to key.

### Songs in Key of E

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>Why Shouldn't My Goose?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Where Is John? (01,01 pattern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Early to Bed (01,01,01 pattern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Christmas Lullaby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164</td>
<td>Easter Chimes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>Billy Boy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Songs in Key of F

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>The Lone Star Trail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>Thanks for Food (01,01,01,01 pattern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>The Old Gray Goose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>Four In a Boat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>Good Night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>All Through the Night (01,01,01,01 pattern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137</td>
<td>The Little Black Train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>San Sereni (two parts; harmony in thirds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>The Chaparral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165</td>
<td>For Our Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>The Mountain Shepherd Boy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Songs in Key of G

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>Going to Market (01,01,01,01,01,01,01,01 pattern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>Sleep, Little Treasure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>The Little Dustman (01,01,01,01,01,01,01,01,01 pattern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>171</td>
<td>Glad That I Live Am I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138</td>
<td>Rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>High, Betty Martin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>The Tractor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Songs in Key of C

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>145</td>
<td>Rocky Dan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>The Young Blacksmith (last half of song goes into key of F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Sarasponda (01,01,01,01,01,01,01,01,01,01,01,01 pattern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>My Pony and I (01,01,01,01,01,01,01,01,01,01,01,01,01 pattern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>White Coral Bells</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Songs in Key of D

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>On the Bridge of Prague</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Appeal to Sky God</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Lotus Blossoms (pentatonic scale)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUMENTAL RESOURCE

Songs for Autoharp (Keys of C, F and G)

One-Chord Songs:

Choral Grade

F F F F
For health and strength and daily food
F F F F
We give Thee thanks, O Lord.

ARE YOU SLEEPING?

F F F F
Are you sleeping, Are you sleeping?
F F F F
Brother John, Brother John?
F F F F
Morning bells are ringing, Morning bells are ringing.
F F F F
Ding ding dong, ding ding dong.

LITTLE TOM TINKER

C C C C
Little Tom Tinker got burned with a clinker
C C C C
And he began to cry,
C C C C
"Oh, Mamma! Oh, Mamma!
C C C C
What a poor fellow am I."

Two-Chord Songs:

MARY HAD A LITTLE LAMB

F F F F C7 C7 F F
Mary had a little lamb, little lamb, little lamb.
F F F F C7 C7 F
Mary had a little lamb, its fleece was white as snow.

MULBERRY BUSH

G G G G B D7 D7
Here we go round the mulberry bush, the mulberry bush,
D7 D7
the mulberry bush
G G G G G D7 D7 G G
Here we go round the mulberry bush so early in the morning.
TEN LITTLE INDIANS

G    G    G    G
One little, two little, three little Indians
D7   D7   D7   D7
Four little, five little, six little Indians
G    G    G    G
Seven little, eight little, nine little Indians
D7   D7   G
Ten little Indian boys!

SUSIE LITTLE SUSIE

F    F    C7    F
Susie, little Susie, now what is the news?
Susie, little Susie, some pennies I pray.

F    F    C7    F
The geese are going barefoot because they've no shoes.
To buy a little supper of sugar and whey.

C7   F    C    F
The cobbler has leather, but no last has he,
I'll sell my nice bed, and go sleep on the straw.

F    F    C7    F
So he cannot make them the shoes, don't you see?
Feathers will not tickle and mice will not gnaw.

ROW YOUR BOAT

C    C    C    C    C    C    C    C
Row, row, row your boat, gently down the stream,
C    C    C    C    G7   G7   C    C
Merrily, merrily, merrily, merrily, life is but a dream.

MISTER FINNEGAN (Tune: Ten Little Indians)

G    G    G    G
There was an old man named Mister Finnegan
There was an old man named Mister Finnegan.

D7   D7   D7   D7
He grew whiskers on his chin nog
He grew fat and then grew thin again.

G    G    G    G
Along came the wind and blew them in again
Then he died so we have to begin again.

D7   D7   G    G
Poor old Mister Finnegan!
Poor old Mister Finnegan!
**DOWN BY THE STATION**

F F C7 F
Down by the station so early in the morning
F F C7 F
See the little pufferbillies all in a row
F F C7 F
See the stationmaster turn a little handle,
F F C7 F
Puff! puff! toot! toot! Off we go!

**ITSY - BITSY SPIDER**

F F C7 F
Itsy - bitsy spider went up the waterspout,
F F C7 F
Down came the rain and washed the spider out,
F F C7 F
Out came the sun and dried up all the rain,
F F C7 F
And the itsy - bitsy spider went up the spout again.

**THIS OLD MAN**

F F F F
This old man, he played one,
F F C7 C7
He played nick-nack on my drum.
F F F F
Nick-nack, paddy wack, give a dog a bone,
C7 C7 C7 F
This old man came rolling home.

**WHERE HAS MY LITTLE DOG GONE?**

F F C7 C7
Oh where, oh, where has my little dog gone?
C7 C7 F F
Oh, where, oh, where can he be?
F F C7 C7
With his tail cut short and his ears cut long,
C7 C7 F F
Oh where, oh, where can he be?

**THE PAWPAW PATCH**

F F F F
Where oh where is dear little Mary?
C7 C7 C7 C7
Where oh where is dear little Mary?
F F F F
Where oh where is dear little Mary?
C7 C7 F F
Way down yonder in the pawpaw patch.
GO TELL AUNT RHODIE
G
Go tell Aunt Rhodie
D7
Go tell Aunt Rhodie
G
Go tell Aunt Rhodie
D7
The old gray goose is dead.

Three-Chord Songs:

TWINKLE, TWINKLE LITTLE STAR
F F B flat F C7 F C7 F
Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are!
F C7 F C7 F C7 F C7
Up above the world so high, Like a diamond in the sky,
F F B flat F C7 F C7 F C7
Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are!

YANKEE DOODLE
G G G D7 G G G D7
Yankee Doodle went to town, a-riding on a pony!
G G C C C D7 D7 G G
He stuck a feather in his cap, and called it macaroni.
C C C C G G G G
Yankee Doodle keep it up, Yankee Doodle dandy,
C C C C G D7 G G
Mind the music and the step and with the girls be handy!

MY BONNIE
C F C C C C G7 G7
My Bonnie lies over the ocean; My Bonnie lies over the sea;
C F C C F G7 C C
My Bonnie lies over the ocean; Oh, bring back my Bonnie to me.
C C F F G7 G7 C C
Bring back, bring back, oh bring back my Bonnie to me, to me
C C F F G7 G7 C C
Bring back, bring back, oh bring back my Bonnie to me!

GLORY, GLORY, HALLELUJAH
C C C C
Glory, glory, hallelujah!
F F C C
Glory, glory, hallelujah!
C C C C
Glory, glory, hallelujah!
F G7 C C
His truth is marching on.
AWAY IN A MANGER

G G C G
Away in a manger, no crib for a bed,
D7 D7 G G
The little Lord Jesus laid down his sweet head;
G G C G
The stars in the sky looked down where he lay,
D7 G D7 G
The little Lord Jesus asleep on the hay.

JINGLE BELLS

G G G G
Jingle bells! Jingle bells! Jingle all the way!
C G D7 D7
Oh what fun it is to ride in a one-horse open sleigh!
G G G G
Jingle bells! Jingle bells! Jingle all the way!
C G D7 G
Oh what fun it is to ride in a one-horse open sleigh!
Sample of Autoharp Chart

Gm Min
A7 Sev.
Dm Min.
E7 Sev.
Am Min.
D7 Sev.

Bb Maj.
C7 Sev.
F Maj.
G7 Sev.
C Maj.
G Maj.

Strum Here

149
Three-Chord Songs in the Keys of C, F and G for the autoharp.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Hiking, Laughing, Singing</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>The Speckled Bird</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Happy Plowman</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Hauling Water and Wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Holla-Hi! Holla-Ho!</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Hanging Out the Clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Stodola Pumpa</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Sandy Land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Swiss Roundelay</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>The Thread Follows the Needle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Make New Friends</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Grape Gathering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Serranilla</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>San Sereni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>As the Sun Goes Down</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>The White Dove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Joseph Dearest, Joseph Mild</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Texas Cowboy's Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Bound For the Rio Grande</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>The Lone Star Trail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Old Folks At Home</td>
<td>56-57</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Oh Give Me the Hills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Little Fox</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>The Mountain Shepherd Boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Doney Gal</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Hiking Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Old Texas</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Thanks for Food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Nightingale's Song</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Good Evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>79</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Going to Market</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>81</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Seven Steps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>83</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Sarasponda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>88</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Where, Oh Where?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>92-93</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Giddap Old Dobbin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>High, Betty Martin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>101</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Go In and Out the Window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>104</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Lucy Locket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>106</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>White Coral Bells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>108</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>The Old Gray Goose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>113</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>When the Bell Rings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>117</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>The Mill Wheel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>125</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Skip to My Lou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>134</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>I've Got a Robe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>140</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>The Mockingbird Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>142</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Oh, Susanna!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>143</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Some Folks Do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>160</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>The Little Dustman</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Keyboard Instruction

Each child should have a keyboard of tagboard or some other similar material which is 22 inches wide and 5-1/2 inches deep. Lines are drawn one inch apart to identify white keys and the black keys superimposed at intervals, as illustrated below. This results in 22 white keys or three octaves going from B to B. This takes one width of a piece of tagboard. Middle C should be indicated on the keyboard. No other keys should be marked. A master stencil of a keyboard may be utilized to make the keyboard more quickly.

The following illustrations will serve to further help the teacher understand the five-note fingering positions to be used by the children when playing the piano or keyboard at the desk.
A MUSICAL TALE

He was a farmer, too, when he grew up. He liked to help his father with the chores. He gathered the chickens, gathered eggs, and helped up the horses. He also helped load into the truck. When wasn't helping his mother, he liked to lie on his back and under the cherry tree.

With his toward the sky, he could the robins eating their fill of ripe cherries. He could hear their sweet of thanks when they had finished. When the sun began to in the west, would hurry into the house for dinner.

One evening after dinner, and his mother made fudge. His mother let him the sugar and milk and beat the batter till it was done. Then they sat and ate the fudge. When the clock struck eight was glad to go to bed, for he was tired.
ABE LINCOLN

Lincoln was an honest lad, who toiled from morn till night
He worked the farm to help his
and always did things right
His parents were of common clay, as plain as plain could

They watched him closely day by day, but let his thoughts run free
They
him on most wholesome fare, of
and bread
And helped him build
noble name, that never will

He always thought it
good

An honest plea to him was
In vain it did not

No or chain could fetter him, or from his
erase.

The warmth of twinkling eye, and grin that held thru darkest days

of honor his ideal,
noble heart to aid.

Is why the name of honest
will never, never
At home, Haydn's mother sang, and young Joseph played the harp by his parents to let Joseph leave home to study music. He wasn't always enough, but he learned a great deal. Soon he was a choir boy.

Joseph thought that (another choir boy) was and shipped the ends off 's wig.

This used young Haydn to expelled.

Later the great musician Porpora, me interested in Haydn and offered to him. This a lot to Haydn's knowledge and in developing the symphony.
FLUTE PHONES

A simple tonal instrument with seven holes on the front and one on the back. It is played using the fingers to cover and uncover the holes to change tones.

1. Holding the horn
   a. Left hand on the top with left thumb covering the back hole.
   b. Right hand on the bottom with right thumb resting in the back groove.
   c. The little finger on the left hand is not used. This could be called a "tea cup" finger.

2. Blowing
   a. Place the mouthpiece halfway into the mouth with the teeth touching the mouthpiece and the lips gripping the mouthpiece.
   b. Whisper the word "too" when playing each note.
   c. Do not overblow.
LISTENING RESOURCE

Records Demonstrating Instruments of the Orchestra

Suitable for Grade Four

Instruments of the Orchestra

Peter and the Wolf, Director - Mitch Miller
Happy Instruments
The King's Trumpet
The Wonderful Violin
Licorice Stick
First Chair - Philadelphia Orchestra
The Adventures of Piccolo, Saxie & Co.

Introduction to the Orchestra

RCA Victor LE 6000

Columbia

Columbia #CL 1026

Young Peoples' Records 311

Young Peoples' Records 420

Columbia ML 4629

Columbia CL 1233

Golden Record

Families of Instruments - (HRW pp. 170-174)

Woodwinds - a group of wind instruments usually or originally made of wood or used a reed.

Brass - musical instruments of the horn type that are blown and usually made of metal.

Percussion - musical instruments that are struck to make sound or music.

Strings - group of instruments using strings that are usually played with a bow.

Other - that miscellany of folk and homemade instruments that are rare or never used in formal music such as jews harp, harmonica, ukelele, rhythm band instruments, sweet potato, guitar, etc.

Instruments of Orchestra

Woodwinds
Clarinets
Saxophone
Oboe
Flute
Bassoon

Brass
Trumpet
Trombone
Baritone
Sousaphone
French horn

Percussion
Drums - snare, bass
Cymbals
Xylophone
Glockenspiel or orchestra bells
Triangle
Timpani or kettledrum

Strings
Violin
Viola
Cello
Bass

The Classified Index of HRW T.E. lists songs featuring the various instruments.
Instruments of the Orchestra: Woodwinds

(1) Name of instrument: saxophone

Family: woodwind and brass

- belongs to two families because it is made of brass and yet is played with a mouthpiece which has a reed
- sound is loud and brassy at times, smooth at times
- used mainly in dance bands or concert bands but not very often in orchestras
(2) Name of instrument: clarinet

Family: woodwind

- usually made of wood
- have mouthpiece with reed
- can play very high and quite low
- known as "singer" of woodwinds
- bass clarinet sound is deeper and more mellow

(3) Name of Instrument: bass clarinet
(4) Name of instrument __________ flute __________

(5) Name of instrument __________ piccolo __________

Family __________ woodwind __________

- made of silver
- play very high notes
- piccolo is smaller and plays higher than flutes
- sound is sweet, almost bird-like
- played by blowing into the hole much like blowing into a bottle
Instruments of the Orchestra: Brass

(1) Name of instrument: French horn
Family: brass

- developed by French king for hunting calls
- has three valves for making different notes
- sound is medium low, rich and mellow
(2) Name of instrument: sousaphone
Family: brass
- largest brass instrument
- has three valves for making different notes
- sound is very low
(3) Name of instrument: trumpet
Family: brass

- have three valves for producing different notes
- sound can be loud and brassy or soft and sweet
- cornet sound more mellow than trumpet
- sound is medium-high
(5) Name of instrument: trombone

Family: brass

- has slide which moves to make different notes
- sound is low, can be very loud or soft
Instruments of the Orchestra: Percussion

(1) Snare drum

(2) Bass drum

(3) Kettle drum or tympani

(4) Tambourine

(5) Cymbals

(6) Triangle

(7) Other percussion instruments:
    chimes
gong
xylophone
bells
Instruments of the Orchestra: Strings

(1) Name of instrument: violin
Family: string
- has four strings
- played by drawing bow across the strings
- bow is made of a thin narrow stick with horsehair
- different notes made by moving fingers up or down string
- sound is medium to high
- more violins in orchestra than any other instrument
(2) Name of instrument: **cello**

Family: **string**

- like the violin but much larger
- held between knees when played
- tone is low, mellow and rich sounding
(3) Name of instrument  

bass viol

Family  

string

- "father" of the string family
- sound is very low and gruff
- largest string instrument
Musical Forms

Review:

Song - a short metrical composition with words for singing.

Lullaby - a song intended to "lull" or soothe as with a baby, a baby song.

March - a piece of music, the rhythm of which is suited to marching.

Dance - a piece of music, the rhythm of which is suited to a particular song.

Introduce:

Folk song - a simple song handed down among "common" people. Usually not written and frequently having no established character.

Chantey - a song sung in rhythm to work -- a sailor's song.

Gavotte - a quick $\frac{4}{4}$ time dance which originated in France.

Rondo - a musical form resulting from alterations of a main theme with contrasting themes (ABACA, etc.)

Minuet - a stately dance in $\frac{3}{4}$ time, usually in ABA form.

Waltz - a ballroom dance in $\frac{3}{4}$ time.

Theme and Variations - the statement of a complete musical idea as the subject followed by melodic, rhythmic and harmonic modifications.

Specific Examples for Listening Activities and their Sources

Refer to: R.C.A. Listening Activities
Musical Sound Books - Tiny Masterpieces for Very Young Listeners
Adventures in Music - Grades 1-5

Lullaby

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lullaby</th>
<th>Brahms</th>
<th>R.C.A., Vol. 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lullaby</td>
<td>Rousseau</td>
<td>R.C.A., Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hush My Babe</td>
<td>Mozart</td>
<td>R.C.A., Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lullaby</td>
<td>Schubert</td>
<td>M.S.B., Tiny Masterpieces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cradle Song</td>
<td>Barnby</td>
<td>R.C.A., Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweet and Low</td>
<td>Bizet</td>
<td>Adv. in Music, Gr. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cradle Song</td>
<td>Brahms</td>
<td>R.C.A., Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little Sandman</td>
<td>Humperdinck</td>
<td>M.S.B., Tiny Masterpieces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evening Prayer</td>
<td>Traditional</td>
<td>M.S.B., Tiny Masterpieces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock-a-Bye Baby</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Marches
March of the Little Lead Soldiers
March from Petite Suite
March Little Soldier
March of the Gnomes from Christmas Tree Suite
March from Summer-Day Suite
March from Soirees Musicales
March from The Comedians
March Past of the Kitchen Utensils from The Wasps
March from Ballet Suite Thesee
Norwegian Rustic March from Lyric Suite
March (overture miniature) from Nutcracker Suite
March

Dances
Dance in Cottage from Hansel and Gretel
Dance of the Chinese Dolls from Christmas Tree Suite
Dance
Dance of the Little Swans from Swan Lake
Petite Ballerina from Ballet Suite #1
Fountain Dance from Wand of Youth Suite #2
Dagger Dance from Natoma
Shepherd's Dance from Amahl and the Night Visitors
Dancing Doll
Trepak from Nutcracker Suite
Arabian Dance
Chinese Dance
Dance of the Toy Flutes
Elfin Dance
Elfin Dance

Folk Songs
Susie, Little Susie from Hansel and Gretel
Oh, Vermeland, Thou Lovely
Oh, Vermeland
Londonderry Air

Pierne  R.C.A., Vol. 1
Bizet    R.C.A., Vol. 1
Rebikoff R.C.A., Vol. 3
Prokofiev Adv. in Music, Gr. 1
Rossini-Britten
Kabalevsky Adv. in Music, Gr. 3,
Vol. 1
Vaughan Adv. in Music, Gr. 3,
Vol. 1
Williams
Lully  Adv. in Music, Gr. 3,
Vol. 2
Grieg  Adv. in Music, Gr. 4,
Vol. 1
Tchaikovsky M.S.B., Crimson Section,
#78033
Hollaender M.S.B., Tiny Master-
pieces
Humperdinck R.C.A., Vol. 4
Rebikoff R.C.A., Vol. 4
Bartok  R.C.A., Vol. 4
Tchaikovsky Adv. in Music, Gr. 1
Shostakovich Adv. in Music, Gr. 2
Elgar   Adv. in Music, Gr. 2
Herbert Adv. in Music, Gr. 3,
Vol. 1
Menotti Adv. in Music, Gr. 4,
Vol. 2
Poldini M.S.B., Green Section,
#78016
Tchaikovsky M.S.B., Crimson Section,
#78034
Jensen  M.S.B., Tiny Master-
pieces, #78306
Grieg   M.S.B., Tiny Master-
pieces, #78315

Swedish Folk R.C.A., Vol. 5
Song
Swedish Folk M.S.B., Crimson Section,
Song #78023
Irish Folk Song
### Folk Songs (continued)

**To the Bridge at Avignon**

- **On the Bridge at Avignon**
- **There Was a Shepherd Lassie**
- **In the Shining Moonlight**

**Country Gardens**

- **Tailor and the Mouse**
- **Greensleeves**

- **The Ash Grove**

### Gavotte

- **Gavotte**
- **Gavotte**
- **Joyous Gavotte**
- **Graceful**
- **A Gavotte**
- **Gavottes 1 and 2 from Suite #3**
- **D Major**

### Minuet

- **Minuet**
- **Minuet**
- **Minuet**
- **Minuette from L'Arlesienne**
- **Suite #1**
- **Minuettto #1 from Divertimento #17**
- **Minuettto from Eine Kleine Nachtmusk**
- **Minuet from Don Giovanni**
- **Minuet from String Quintet in E Major**
- **Minuettto from Toy Symphony**

### Waltz

- **Waltz in A Flat**
- **Waltzing Doll**
- **Waltz in D Flat (Minute Waltz)**
- **Waltz of the Doll from Coppelia**
- **Waltz #1 from Faust Ballet Music**
- **Waltz on the Ice from Children's Suite**
- **Waltz from the Sleeping Beauty**
- **Waltz from Masquerade Suite**
- **Waltz in E Major**
- **Waltz in A Flat**
- **Liebeslieder Waltz #4**
- **Waltz in A Flat**
- **Waltz in A Major**

---

**French Folk Songs**

- M.S.B., Tiny Masterpieces, #78305

**English Folk Tunes**

- M.S.B., Tiny Masterpieces, #78311

**Welsh Folk Songs**

- M.S.B., Tiny Masterpieces, #78311

**Gavotte**

- Popper
- R.C.A., Vol. 1
- Gossec
- M.S.B., Vol. 4
- Mozart
- M.S.B., Green Section, #78003
- Ghys
- M.S.B., Green Section, #78005
- Bach
- M.S.B., Blue Section, #78040

**Minuet**

- Paderewski
- R.C.A., Vol. 1
- Beethoven
- R.C.A., Vol. 4
- Boccherini
- Adv. in Music, Gr. 4, Vol. 2
- Bizet
- Mozart
- Adv. in Music, Gr. 5, Vol. 2
- Mozart
- M.S.B., Green Section, #78004
- Mozart
- M.S.B., Green Section, #78003
- Boccherini
- M.S.B., Crimson Section, #78019
- Haydn
- M.S.B., Blue Section, #78044

**Waltz**

- Brahms
- R.C.A., Vol. 2
- Poldini
- R.C.A., Vol. 2
- Chopin
- R.C.A., Vol. 3
- Delibes
- Adv. in Music, Gr. 1
- Gounod
- Adv. in Music, Gr. 3, Vol. 1
- Prokofiev
- Adv. in Music, Gr. 3, Vol. 2
- Tchaikovsky
- Adv. in Music, Gr. 4, Vol. 1
- Khachaturian
- Adv. in Music, Gr. 4, Vol. 2
- Brahms
- M.S.B., Tiny Masterpieces #78308
- Brahms
- Schubert
- M.S.B., Tiny Masterpieces #78308
- Schubert
GLOSSARY OF COMMON TERMS AND SYMBOLS

This glossary contains definitions of terms used in this handbook and such additional terms as seem necessary for common understandings concerning procedures for music instruction.

Inasmuch as each program of music instruction establishes its own goals and uses somewhat unique materials, it is only reasonable to assume it makes unique demands on its teachers as to their knowledge of content. For this reason, the following information has been compiled to aid teachers to know and understand what content demands will be placed upon them. Few teachers will use all of this information in any year; however, it is well for them to be aware of it.

Accent: More than usual stress.

Accidentals: Cancel or natural sign cancels the flat or sharp previously indicated by the key signature or by an accidental (a sharp or flat not in the key signature, added to alter a scale tone).

\[
\text{\#} \quad \text{\flat}
\]

Sharp chromatic raises the tone 1/2 step from its pitch in the scale; or restores the regular scale pitch after previous change by a cancel.

\[
\text{\#} \quad \text{\flat}
\]

Flat chromatic lowers the tone 1/2 step; or restores the regular scale pitch after previous change by a cancel.

Ale breve, or cut time, means \(\frac{3}{4}\) meter moving fast enough to feel two pulses per measure. It is equal to \(\frac{2}{2}\) but with quick movement as in marching.

\[
\text{\#} \quad \text{\flat}
\]

Autoharp: A musical instrument designed to be used in chording in accompaniment with vocal music. It generally has twelve wooden bars marked with chord names, each of which produce a specific chord when depressed. The chord bars are lowered with the fingers of the left hand while the strings are strummed with the right hand. The instrument is held on the lap or placed on a table to be most readily played.

\[
\text{\#} \quad \text{\flat}
\]

Brace: A vertical line at left end of two or more staves, meaning that the music of both staves happens at the same time.
Chord: Three or more tones sounded together harmonically.

Chord, tonic: A triad (a three-note chord built of thirds) based on "do" (do-mi-sol). (Also referred to as the I chord.)

Chord, dominant: A triad based on "sol" (sol-ti-re); also referred to as V chord.

Chord, dominant seventh: A triad based on "sol" (sol-ti-re-fa); also referred to as V7 chord.

Chord, sub-dominant: A triad based on "fa" (fa-la-do); also referred to as IV chord.

Clef, treble, or G clef, gives pitch meaning to lines and spaces of the staff. It designates the second line the G above middle C.

Clef, bass, or F clef, designates the fourth line of the staff. The F below middle C.

Coda: A short tune added to a musical selection as a closing.

Common time: Means the same as 4/4 time.

D.C. or da capo: From the beginning. Repeat from the beginning to the end, or to the place marked line (means ending).

Directing procedures:

1. For music felt in twos, the arm movements are: /down, up/ down, up/ -- not just down like hitting the desk, but down with a little bounce or rebound curving outward. This gives lightness to the movement. The up movement is just the reverse, beginning with a slight down dip.

2. For music felt in threes, the arm movements: /down, out, up/ down, out, up/. (The out of count two is to the side, not to the front.)

3. When measures go with a feel of four, the arm movements are: /down, in, out, up/ down, in, out, up/.
Double bar: End of the piece.

D.S. (Dal Segno) or D.S. al Fine (pronounced fee-nay), from the sign. Go back to \( \text{\textit{G}} \) (the sign) and sing or play to the FINE ending.

Dynamic markings:
- Forte - loud \( f \)
- Fortissimo - very loud \( f^f \)
- Mezzo forte - medium loud \( \text{mf} \)
- Piano - soft \( p \)
- Pianissimo - very soft \( pp \)
- Mezzo piano - medium soft \( \text{mp} \)

Crescendo - gradually increasing in loudness \( \uparrow \)
Descrescendo or diminuendo - gradually decreasing in loudness \( \downarrow \)

Fermata or hold: Indicates longer duration than the note value. This is used for interpretive effect.

Fine: The end.

First and second endings: \( \text{\textit{I}} \) above the staff means to sing or play these notes the first time through, but when repeating, skip this part and go to the second ending marked \( \text{\textit{F}} \).

Grace note: An ornamental note, in small print, played or sung quickly and before the beat, but not counted in the note value of the measure.

Harmony: Two or more tones sounded together.

Intervals: The difference between any two notes, measured by degrees on the staff.

Key: A system of tone relationships following the pattern of a recognized scale, the keynote of which is "do", or the first tone of the scale.

Keyboard experiences: Making use of the piano keyboard as a visual aid to the teaching of music fundamentals.

Key signature: The number of sharps or flats, or absence of them, which occur on the staff immediately following the clef sign.

Leger (or ledger) line: Short lines written above or below the staff to extend the range of the staff.
Melody: A pleasing succession of tones, usually having a pleasing rhythm.

Melody bells: A graduated series of marked flat metal bars mounted on a frame in xylophone fashion which are struck with a wooden mallet to reproduce indicated tones. These are used to accompany vocal or instrumental music.

Meter: The number of "beats" per measure, determined by the regularity of accents.

Music appreciation: Active listening to all types of music to broaden musical interest and enjoyment.

Notes: Symbols used to describe tone and duration.

Note singing: Singing a song by reading music through the use of syllables.

Orff instruments: Mallet instruments designed to enrich the musical instruction of children.

Planet: An electronic keyboard instrument with earphone attachments allowing for "silent" practice.

Piano: A musical instrument usually having eighty-eight black and white keys used to reproduce basic tones and groups of tones or chords. The keys of the piano reproduce tones represented on the staff as described below.

Pitch pipe: A flat, circular, tonal instrument used to locate pitch. The teacher first blows the note "do" as indicated by the key signature of the song, then sings up or down by syllables to the starting note of the song.
Repeat sign: Sing or play again from the previous repeat \[\text{\#}\]; or if there is no previous repeat sign, go back to the beginning.

Resonator bells: A set of individual-tuned resonating bars made of plastic or wood, usually in sets of twenty.

Rests: Symbols used to describe duration of absence of tone.

Rhythm: The time relation among tones as expressed by strong and weak beats.

Rhythmic activities: Bodily movement to music through singing games and creative response.

Rhythm instruments: Cacophonous instruments used as an instrumental group and for special effects to songs and rhythmic activities.

Ritard: Gradually slower.

Rolled chord or arpeggio: Notes played one after another, starting with the lowest. An instrumental notation.

Rote singing: Singing songs by repetition and imitation utilizing the ability to listen and repeat.

Scalewise pattern or passage: Consecutive notes of a scale.

Select band: An instrumental group of pupils selected for musical aptitude and ability given special instruction who occasionally play as a school band.

Select chorus: A vocal group of pupils selected for good voices, given special instruction who occasionally sing at special performances.

Select strings: An instrumental group of pupils selected for musical aptitude and ability given special instruction and who occasionally play at special performances.

Slur: Singing two notes on one syllable of a word.

Staff: A series of alternate lines and spaces (5 lines and 4 spaces) on which notes are placed to show their pitch. The names are as indicated and are numbered from the bottom up. Each line and space is assigned a letter. The letter names are
arranged alphabetically from the bottom up in the treble clef beginning with "e" and in the bass clef beginning with "g".

Syncopation: A temporary replacement of the regular rhythmic pulse.

Tempo: The speed at which a piece of music moves.

Tempo marking: (arranged from slow to fast)
- Largo - slow, noble and broad
- Maestoso - with majesty; slower than andante
- Andante - a walking tempo
- Moderato - moderate tempo
- Allegro - quickly (literally, cheerful)
- Presto - fast, faster than allegro

Tie: A curved line connecting two notes of the same pitch. The notes are to be sung or played as one note, sustained as long as the two note values added together.

Time signature or meter: The two numbers or symbols, on the staff immediately following the key signature. The following illustration has a 2/4 time signature. The lower number tells the kind of notes used as the unit of time measurement, (or the kind of note getting one beat) in this case the quarter note. The upper number tells how many such units (or beats) there are per measure.

Triplet: A group of three even notes played in the usual time of two similar ones, for example, three eighth notes played in the usual time of two eighth notes.

Tuned water glasses: A series of glasses or bottles of similar design gilled with varying amounts of water producing tones of varying pitches to form a scale when they are struck. They are used to provide accompaniment to vocal or instrumental music.


General Music, (K-6). Rochester Public Schools, District #4. Rochester, Minn., 1966


Wolfe, Irving; Krone, Beatrice Perham; Fullerton, Margaret. *Together We Sing Series* (Grade 1-6). Chicago: Follett Publishing Company, 1959
THE GRADE FIVE PROGRAM

MATERIALS, EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES

Texts:

EXPLORING MUSIC 5
EXPLORING MUSIC - T.E.
Voices of America
Voices of America - T.E.

Records:

EXPLORING MUSIC - Grade 5
Voices of America #5
Adventures in Music
Musical Sound Books - records
RCA Listening Program
Vox Music Masters Series

Additional Materials:

Rhythm instruments
Orff instruments (IMC)
Orff instrument guide
Threshold to Music Chart and Teacher's Manual
Melody bells
Resonator bells
Autoharp
Record player
Tape recorder
Tapes
Piano (or pianet)
Pitch pipe
Chalkboard music staff liner

Teacher-made Materials:

Vertical syllable chart
Name tags for children for use during consultant demonstrations.
CLASSROOM VOCAL PROGRAM

Behavioral Objectives

I. To sing in tune.

- Given the starting pitch of D, the student will be able to sing "Red River Valley" (HRW, p. 109) in tune and with correct rhythm.
- The student will demonstrate proper voice production by singing with a light, pleasant tone quality.
- The student will be able to sing by memory twenty songs of varying types.

II. To develop rhythmically.

- The student will be able to select from a group of four rhythm patterns the one that is clapped or played.
- The student will be able to add bar lines to a sequence of notes to make measures appropriate to the meter signature (\( \frac{4}{4}, \frac{3}{4}, \frac{2}{4} \) or \( \frac{3}{8} \)).
- The student will be able to draw the rest equivalent to the following notes: \( \texttt{\textbf{F}}, \texttt{\textbf{G}}, \texttt{\textbf{B}}, \texttt{\textbf{C}}, \texttt{\textbf{F}} \), and \( \texttt{\textbf{C}} \).
- Given a list of 4 metric markings and their definition, the student will be able to match the metric marking with the correct definition.

III. To read music.

- Given any key signature, the student will be able to recite the name of the major key.
- Given the key signature with 3 flats (\( \texttt{Bb}, \texttt{Eb}, \texttt{Ab} \)), the student will be able to:
  a. build the major scale on the staff.
  b. build the relative minor scale on the staff.
- Given a list of six dynamic markings, the student will be able to arrange them in order from the softest to the loudest.
- The student will be able to sing "Old Farmer John" (p. 161, HRW) at sight using syllables.

IV. To sing in harmony.

- The student will be able to sing an independent part in rounds and canons.
- The student will be able to sing the alto part of a two-part song as the melody is being sung.
V. To create music.

- The student will be able to create a song containing 8 measures of $\frac{4}{4}$ time and ending on the tonic pitch.

- The student will be to write accompaniments using the rhythm instruments.

- The student will be able to write a harmony part to a song using "do", "fa" and "sol".
I. Recognition of Music Symbols.

(1) 1. dotted eighth note  
(2) 2. sixteenth note  
(A) 3. sixteenth rest  
(B) 4. half rest  
(C) 5. cancel or natural sign  
(J) 6. fermata or hold  
(F) 7. repeat sign  
(H) 8. crescendo sign  

II. Recognition of Music Terms.

(H) 1. moderato  
(E) 2. andante  
(F) 3. Dal Segno (D.S.)  
(B) 4. mezzo forte (mf)  
(A) 5. pianissimo (pp)  
(C) 6. maestoso  
(I) 7. allegro  
(G) 8. Da Capo (D.C.)  

III. Identifying Major Keys. Students place low "do" on each staff - using a whole note - and then fill in the name of the key.
IV. Identifying Minor Keys. Students place low "la" on each staff - using a whole note - and then fill in the name of the key.

Key of D Minor

Key of E Minor

V. Syllable Recognition by Ear. Teacher sings patterns on "loo" or plays the patterns on the piano or bells. The following notes are suggested: do=F re=G mi=A fa=Bb sol=C la=D ti=E do=F.

Sing or play each pattern twice very slowly. Then sign or play a third time, more fluently, so the children can check their answers. Students circle correct syllables. Mark only one syllable in each column.

A.  

1  2  3  4  5  6  7  

1  sol  sol  sol  sol  sol  sol  sol 

2  fa  fa  fa  fa  fa  fa  fa  

3  mi  mi  mi  mi  mi  mi  mi  

4  re  re  re  re  re  re  re  

5  do  do  do  do  do  do  do  

B.  

1  2  3  4  5  6  7  

1  fa  fa  fa  fa  fa  fa  fa  

2  mi  mi  mi  mi  mi  mi  mi  

3  re  re  re  re  re  re  re  

4  do  do  do  do  do  do  do  

5  ti  ti  ti  ti  ti  ti  ti  

C.  

1  2  3  4  5  6  7  

1  do  do  do  do  do  do  do  

2  ti  ti  ti  ti  ti  ti  ti  

3  la  la  la  la  la  la  la  

4  sol  sol  sol  sol  sol  sol  sol  

VI. Measure Building. Students draw a bar line at the end of each measure.

A.  

4  \( \frac{4}{4} \)

B.  

6 \( \frac{6}{8} \)

VII. Recognition of Rhythm Patterns. Teacher claps the rhythm patterns. Students place "1" in front of the pattern the teacher claps first, "2" in front of the pattern clapped second, etc.

Clap each pattern twice. After all have been clapped twice, clap each pattern once again so the students can check their answers.

Clap patterns in the following order:

1.  

2.  

3.  

4.  

182
VIII. Listen and Respond. Teacher will play "My Wagon" (Record 2, HRW) three times. Allow students to answer question between each playing.

1. The meter signature stays the same throughout the song.
   a. True      b. False

2. The melody of this song is based on a
   a. major scale    b. minor scale    c. pentatonic scale.

3. The form of this song is
   a. ABAB    b. AAB coda    c. AABB

4. The rhythm of this song begins with this pattern:
   a. dJ dJ dJ    b. \[\text{pattern}\]    c. \[\text{pattern}\]

5. The melody of this song begins with this pattern:
   a. \[\text{pattern}\]    b. \[\text{pattern}\]
   c. \[\text{pattern}\]
I. Recognition of Music Symbols. Matching

_____ 1. dotted eighth note
_____ 2. sixteenth note
_____ 3. sixteenth rest
_____ 4. half rest
_____ 5. cancel or natural sign
_____ 6. fermata or hold
_____ 7. repeat sign
_____ 8. crescendo sign

II. Recognition of Music Terms. Matching

_____ 1. moderato
_____ 2. andante
_____ 3. Dal Segno (D.S.)
_____ 4. mezzo forte (mf)
_____ 5. pianissimo (pp)
_____ 6. maestoso
_____ 7. allegro
_____ 8. Da Capo (D.C.)

A. very soft
B. medium loud
C. with majesty
D. gradually louder
E. walking tempo
F. repeat from the sign
G. repeat from the beginning
H. moderate tempo
I. quickly

III. Identifying Major Keys. Place low "do" on each staff - using a whole note - and then fill in the name of the key.

A. Key of ___ Major
B. Key of ___ Major
C. Key of ___ Major
D. Key of ___ Major
E. Key of ___ Major
F. Key of ___ Major
IV. Identifying Minor Keys. Place low "la" on each staff - using a whole note - and then fill in the name of the key.

Key of __ Minor

Key of __ Minor

V. Syllable Recognition by Ear. Listen to the melodic pattern, then circle the correct syllables. Mark only one syllable in each column. Each pattern starts on "do".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A</th>
<th></th>
<th>B</th>
<th></th>
<th>C</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VI. Measure Building. Draw a bar line at the end of each measure.

A. 4

B. 6

VII. Recognition of Rhythm Patterns. Place "1" in front of the rhythm pattern the teacher claps first, "2" in front of the pattern clapped second, etc.

VIII. Listen and Respond. You will hear a song played three times. Listen and then answer as many questions as you can between each playing.

1. The meter signature stays the same throughout the song.
   a. True       b. False
2. The melody of this song is based on a
   a. major scale   b. minor scale   c. pentatonic scale

3. The form of this song is
   a. ABAB     b. AAB coda     c. AABB

4. The rhythm of this song begins with this pattern:
   a. \( \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{x}}}}} \) \( \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{x}}}}} \) \( \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{x}}}}} \) \( \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{x}}}}} \)
   b. \( \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{x}}}} \) \( \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{x}}}} \) \( \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{x}}}} \)
   c. \( \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{x}}}} \) \( \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{x}}}} \) \( \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{x}}}} \) \( \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{x}}}} \)

5. The melody of this song begins with this pattern:
   a. \( \begin{array}{c} \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{x}}}} \end{array} \)
   b. \( \begin{array}{c} \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{x}}}} \end{array} \)
   c. \( \begin{array}{c} \underline{\underline{\underline{\underline{x}}}} \end{array} \)
GOALS

I. To sing in tune

ACTIVITIES

A. Tone Matching

1. Although we would expect all fifth grade children to be able to match tones, the following devices help them to become more aware of pitch. This is a way of tuning-up the children when you start to sing.

Carrying a tone in a basket: The teacher sings a tone in a middle range on "loo." A child in a front desk repeats it and passes it to the next child until all children have sung the tone. Check on pitch pipe to see if the last child has the same tone that was given. If the last tone is lower, it has "fallen out of the basket," if the tone is higher, it has "hopped out."

2. Teacher or child could play simple patterns on an instrument (melody bells). Have a child imitate the pattern either by singing or playing on the instrument. Example: sol mi sol mi.

3. Easy phrases within a song: Select very easy phrases of a song the children know and have various children sing "solos" on these parts.

II. To develop rhythmically

A. Speech and rhythmic Exercises

1. Group clapping

   a. Teacher begins clapping. Children imitate.
   b. As teacher changes patterns, children change with her.
   c. Add finger snaps
   d. Add stamps
   e. Add patchen (slapping the knee or thighs with the palm of the hand)
   f. Use combinations of the above; vary the tempo, dynamics and meter.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR THE CLASSROOM TEACHER</th>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| This should be done very quickly so that the child forgets himself. | Tapes  
Basic Musicianship Series  
IMC |
| Both teacher and student may feel more confident if an instrument is used. | |

Examples:
- "Ole Oleana"
  - "O-le O le-an-a"
- "Caissons Go Rolling Along" first phrase
  - "O-ver hill O-ver dale"
- "Shenandoah", first phrase
  - "Oh Shen-an-doah"

In clapping have the left palm upward, using the right hand to clap. A flexible right wrist will later be used playing instruments.  

| HRW p 43 | Follett, p 164 |
| HRW p 57 | Bloomington Orff Guide p 1 |
## GOALS

To develop rhythmically

### A. Speech and rhythmic patterns - cont.

### ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2. <strong>Echo clapping</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>a.</strong> Teacher claps a short rhythm pattern and children clap pattern in an echo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>b.</strong> Without losing any beats the teacher immediately claps a second short rhythm pattern and children clap pattern in echo, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>c.</strong> Any given series of patterns should be in the same meter - use series of 4/4, 3/4 and 6/8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>d.</strong> When starting, leave the last beat of a pattern as a rest.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3. <strong>Unison exercises</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>a.</strong> Teacher reads words of first two lines in rhythm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>b.</strong> Teacher reads words a second time while clapping on beat &quot;one&quot; and &quot;two,&quot; having the children clap with her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>c.</strong> Teacher repeats a third time while clapping and children &quot;whisper&quot; words in rhythm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>d.</strong> Children say words while teacher claps and &quot;whispers&quot; words.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>e.</strong> Divide the class into two groups having one group clap the beats, while the other group says the words.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>f. <strong>Additional exercises</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**VOCAL ACTIVITIES**

**HELPS FOR THE CLASSROOM TEACHER**

**Example A:** Teacher claps:  
\[\text{Children echo}\]  
\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c|c}
\hline
& \text{Teacher} & \text{Children echo} \\
\hline
\text{4/4} & \text{I I I I} & \text{d. I I I I} \\
\text{4/4} & \text{I I I I} & \text{d. I I I I} \\
\text{4/4} & \text{I I I I} & \text{d. I I I I} \\
\text{4/4} & \text{I I I I} & \text{d. I I I I} \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

**Example B:**  
\[\begin{array}{c|c|c}
\hline
& \text{Teacher} & \text{Children echo} \\
\hline
\text{3/4} & \text{I I I I} & \text{d. I I I I} \\
\text{1/4} & \text{I I I I} & \text{d. I I I I} \\
\hline
\end{array}\]

**Example A.** Above, the plain of gold and green  
A young boy's head is plainly seen.

**Example B.** "Soldier, Soldier"

**MATERIALS.**

- **Threshold to Music** p 107  
  (Teacher's Manual) Charts 69-71 (2nd yr.), 85-89 (3rd yr.), Chart 11 (1st yr.)

- **Bloomington Orff Guide** pp 1-2

- **HRW** p 18

- **Follett** p 49
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| II. To develop rhythmically | 4. Question and answer  
   A. Speech and rhythm patterns - cont.  
   - Leader claps a rhythm pattern  
   - Student answers with a different rhythm pattern consisting of the same number of beats  
   - Use other actions also.  
| 5. Canons and rounds (a simple form where one group starts and another follows)  
   - Learn in unison by rote  
   - May add actions  
   - Speak as a canon with a designated leader for each group  
   - Examples: "Ali Baba and the Forty Thieves" (Preparation for canon)  
   - Additional examples: See Orff Guide, pp 4-6  
| 6. Rhythmic rondo (Rondo, a form in which one musical thought or phrase reoccurs at regular intervals) Example: A B A C A D A  
   - Name exercise. Choose one child's name for the "A" part. Have each child say his name and use actions (snap, stamp, patchen) for each syllable. After each, return to the first child's name.  
   - Additional examples: See Orff Guide, pp. 9-10 and Threshold Chart #71  
| 7. Speech rhythms with ostinati (Ostinato, pattern repeated over and over)  
   - Introduce term ostinato  
   - Teach speech patterns and ostinati by rote separately to entire class.  
   - Divide class into groups and combine parts  
   - Add actions as desired  
   - Exercise  
   6/8 Group I: An apple a day keep the doc-tor a-way:  
     Group II: Keep the doc-tor a-way St St  
     Group III: Doc-tor St St  
   - Pat. Pat.  
   - Additional exercises: See Orff Guide, pp 6-9  

Children can keep 2 or more parts going at once.

Speak:

A-li Ba-ba and the for-ty thieves:

Directions: Repeat over and over, using different motions each time, progressing to more difficult action patterns.

Threshold Chart #71 (2nd yr.)

Start and eliminate one section at a time; use dynamic contrasts. You may want to end with one voice in group.
### GOALS

II. To develop rhythmically

A. Speech and rhythm patterns - cont.

### ACTIVITIES

8. Beat and accent

Children should learn to distinguish between beat and accent. Excellent using-lesson in HRW p 10-12 using "When Johnny Coming Marching Home" and "Yankee Doodle Boy"

II. To develop rhythmically

B. Reading Rhythm Patterns

1. Teaching note value

   a. Film: "Reading Music: Finding the Rhythm"
      
      This film includes:

      - Note values
      - Time signature
      - "Beat"
      - Dotted note
      - Bar
      - Tie
      - Measure
      - Rests (eighth, quarter, half and whole)

   b. Use threshold charts. See Vocal Resources of the guide for other symbols.

   c. 1) Write children's names in rhythmic notation on chalkboard. Examples:

      \[
      \begin{align*}
      \text{Thomas Peterson} & \quad \text{John Thompson} \\
      \text{Cynthia Miller} & \quad \text{Carol Cleveland}
      \end{align*}
      \]

2) After each child's name has been represented in rhythmic pattern, each child should copy his name and rhythm pattern onto a card.

3) Teacher could have all children with the same pattern respond to a direction. For example: she might clap the pattern and all children whose names are thus identified should stand and clap the pattern in an echo. They might also play the pattern on rhythm instruments.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR CLASSROOM TEACHERS</th>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>HRW - Teachers Edition p 8,9</strong></td>
<td><strong>HRW - Songs p 10, 12</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use recording of songs for lesson</td>
<td>Recording</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beat is the basic meter. Accent is the beat that is stressed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Materials</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Beat is the basic meter. Accent is the beat that is stressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **See Instructional Materials Center guide for requisitioning film** |
| **Film - F-1084** |
| "Reading Music: Finding the Rhythm" - IMC |

| **Choose charts appropriate for the needs of the class** |
| **Film - F-1279** |
| "What is Rhythm" |

| **Use middle names for variety** |
| **Threshold to Music Teachers Edition pp 13-26 Vocal Resource** |

| **For P.T.A. teacher could put up each child's musical name for parent identification and use it for labeling, displayed work, seats, etc.** |
| **Tagboard** |

| **Rhythm instruments** |
II. To Develop Rhythmically

B. Reading rhythm patterns - cont.

4) Use rhythm patterns in a round. Divide class into two or three groups. Choose a leader for each group. Each leader's name should represent a different rhythm pattern. The first group should start by chanting the leader's name. After the have chanted the name once, they continue and "group two" comes in, etc. The teacher should decide how many times to say each name. A variation of this could be the use of rhythm instruments or clapping or tapping.

d. Distinguishing rhythm patterns by ear:

1) Put three or four rhythm patterns on the board, one or two measures long, having the same number of beats. The teacher should clap or play on a rhythm instrument one of these patterns and the children should guess which one it is.

2) After all the patterns have been introduced, have one child play or clap one of the patterns while the other children guess which one it is. The child who guesses one correctly can come up and play another pattern.

3) Divide the class into four groups. Each group should be assigned to clap or play on rhythm instruments one of the four patterns. Each pattern should be represented by a different sound. Decide how many times the group should repeat the pattern. Group A should begin, after one measure Group B should begin, after two measures Group C should begin, and after three measures Group D would begin. This would represent a round in rhythm.
When using instruments or clapping or tapping, each group should be assigned one kind of instrument or sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR CLASSROOM TEACHER</th>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When using instruments or clapping or tapping, each group should be assigned one kind of instrument or sound.</td>
<td>Rhythm instruments</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each time a pattern has been identified, the children should clap out the pattern together with the teacher.

- **A**
  - [Diagram of rhythm pattern A]

- **B**
  - [Diagram of rhythm pattern B]

- **C**
  - [Diagram of rhythm pattern C]

- **D**
  - [Diagram of rhythm pattern D]

For additional rhythm patterns, see Threshold Charts #7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Threshold Charts</th>
<th>Threshold Charts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Threshold Charts</td>
<td>Threshold Charts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II. To Develop Rhythmically

B. Reading Rhythm Patterns - cont.

e. Recognizing a familiar song through rhythmic blank notation

Write the rhythm for familiar songs in blank notation on the chalkboard. Have the children clap the rhythm and then try to figure out the songs.

Because this is sometimes very difficult without the melody, give the children some hint. (See examples.)

f. Measure building.

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
2 & 3 & 4 & 6 \\
\end{array}
\]

Write music in 4, 4, 4, or 8 time, using only whole notes. Have the children change the whole notes into other kinds of notes so that each measure fits the time signature.

As a variation of this activity, have the children write above each number the note which would receive the number of beats indicated.

g. Reviewing dotted quarter-eighth note pattern:

Step 1 - Sing the song "America", having the children notice how the dotted quarter-eighth note pattern sounds.

\[\text{♩♩} \] They should notice that it sounds "jerky" rather than even.

Step 2 - "Walk" the rhythm of the song using the steps suggested in vocal activity No. 19b.

Step 3 - After singing the song, clap or play the rhythm of the song on rhythm instruments.

Example: "Yankee Doodle Boy"
e. Examples:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\boxed{3} \\
\boxed{4} \\
\boxed{2} \\
\boxed{4} \\
\boxed{6} \\
\boxed{8}
\end{array}
\]

Hint: Patriotic song  "America"

Hint: Winter song  "Jingle Bells"

Hint: Round  "Row, Row, Row Your Boat"

f. 

\[\begin{array}{c}
\text{Follett text, p 6}
\end{array}\]

The dotted quarter followed by an eighth note together forms a group of notes frequently used in 2, 3, and 4 music. It is important for the children to recognize this group of notes and its corresponding sound.

Rhythm instruments

HRW p 10
II. To Develop Rhythmically

B. Reading rhythm patterns - cont.

Step 4 - Teach the children that a dot after a note means that the note would get half again as much as it would get without the dot.

To test the children's understanding of this, set up some hypothetical notes. Tell them what each note would get without a dot and have them tell what the note would get with a dot.

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Without dot</th>
<th>With dot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1\textsuperscript{1/2}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Step 5 - Put the following rhythm pattern on the chalkboard:

\[ \frac{4}{4} . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . \]

Step 6 - Teach a note song incorporating the dotted quarter-eighth note pattern.

h. Introducing dotted eighth-sixteenth note pattern in \( \frac{2}{4}, \frac{3}{4}, \frac{4}{4} \)

Step 1 - Learn a song by rote which contains this rhythm pattern \( \frac{4}{4} \).

The children should notice this is a jerky rhythm rather than an even one.

Step 2 - After singing the song, clap or play the rhythm of the song on rhythm instruments.

Step 3 - Review with the children that a dot after a note means that the note would get half again as much as it would get without the dot.
Example: "Farewell My Own"
"Eternal Father Strong to Save"

Example: "Thanks For Food"
This would be a good song for the beginning of reading the dotted quarter-eighth note.

Example: "Battle Hymn of Republic"

Example: "La Fiesta"

An eighth note in 2 3 or 4 time gets one-half beat.

Therefore, a dotted eighth note would get one-half beat plus one-half of a half, or three-fourths of a beat.
II. To Develop Rhythmically

B. Reading rhythm patterns - cont.

Step 4 - Put the following rhythm pattern on the chalkboard:

\[
\frac{3}{4} \quad \text{16} \quad \text{ah} \quad \text{2} & \text{ah} \quad \text{3} & \text{ah} \quad \text{1} & \text{ah} \quad \text{2} & \text{ah} \quad \text{3} & \text{ah}
\]

Write the beats below the notes, having the children help you figure out where the beats would go. Explain to them that when we divide a beat in half we call the first half of the beat by its number and the second half of the beat "and". When we divide the "and" in half we call the second part of this beat "ah". Have the children clap the pattern from the board.

Step 5 - Teach a note song incorporating the dotted eighth-sixteenth note pattern.

i. Introducing patterns of consecutive sixteenth notes

Step 1 - Learn a song by rote using sixteenth notes. Have the children notice that sixteenth notes move faster than other notes.

Step 2 - After learning the song, clap or play the rhythm of the song on rhythm instruments.

Step 3 - Put the following rhythm pattern on the chalkboard:

\[
\frac{2}{4} \quad \text{dic-tion-ar-y} \quad \text{dic-tion-ar-y} \quad \text{dic-tion-ar-y} \quad \text{dic-tion-ar-y}
\]

Explain to the children that four consecutive sixteenth notes have the rhythm of the word "dic-tion-ar-y." Have them chant the notes using this word.
The children should clap only once for each note, while chanting the beats. That is, they should say the "and" while holding the hands together.

Example: "Skye Boat Song"
"The Deaf Woman's Courtship" (This is a good song for the beginning of reading this pattern by note because the children can notice the difference between this jerky pattern and the even eighth note patterns within the song.

i. Example: "Hey Ho Anybody Home"
"Hop Up My Ladies"
"Frog Went A-Courting"
### GOALS

#### II. To Develop Rhythmically

**B. Reading rhythm patterns - cont.**

---

### ACTIVITIES

**Step 4** - Teach the children that the sixteenth notes are only half as long as eighth notes. That is, in 2/3 or 4/4 time, sixteenth notes would get one-fourth beat, or four sixteenth notes would get one beat. Have the children figure out the beats for the following pattern:

```
\[ \text{1 ah and ah, 2 ah and ah} \]
```

**Explain to them that when we divide a beat in half we call the first half of the beat by its number and the second half of the beat "and." When we divide the "and" in half, we call the second part of this beat "ah". In other words, quarter-beat notes which do not fall at the beginning of the second half of the beat can be designated with "ah".**

### j. Introducing sixteenth-eighth note patterns

In the fifth grade text many songs contain the following rhythm patterns in 2/3 or 4/4 time:

```
\[ \text{4, 4, 4, 4} \]
```

The children should recognize these patterns and be able to sing them with the correct rhythm.

**a. Discover words that represent these rhythms:**

- **Example:** mer-ri-ment (short-short-long)
  
  \[ \text{short-short-long} \]

- New Jer-sey (long-short-short)
  
  \[ \text{long-short-short} \]

**b. Explain where the beats fall in these patterns:**

```
\[ \text{1 ah and, 2 ah and} \]
```

---

203
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELP FOR CLASSROOM TEACHER

Explain to the children that sometimes four consecutive sixteenth notes are joined with a line to indicate that all four are on one beat.

Example:

```
\fine
\time 4/4
\m \stem{\frac{\crotch \crotch} {\crotch \crotch}}
```

Example: "Sourwood Mountain"  
"Cindy"  
"DeGlendy Burk"

MATERIALS

HRW p 71  
Follett text p 63  
Follett text p 60
II. To Develop Rhythmically

B. Reading rhythm patterns - cont.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>k. Introducing 6 time $\frac{6}{8}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step 1 - Teach the children a rote song in 6 time. $\frac{6}{8}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step 2 - While half of the children sing the song the other half should clap on the strong beats of each measure. They will discover the song has two strong beats per measure. Since the time signature indicates there are six beats in each measure, each of these strong beats would be followed by two secondary beats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step 3 - Have half the class sing while the other half claps the beats, this time six beats in each measure with the strongest beats being &quot;one&quot; and &quot;four&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step 4 - The children should discover through clapping how many beats each kind of note gets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\frac{1}{4}$ beat $\quad \frac{3}{4}$ beats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\frac{1}{2}$ beat $\quad \frac{5}{4}$ beats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\frac{3}{4}$ beat $\quad \frac{6}{4}$ beats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Explain the significance of the bottom number of the time signature. Have the children notice that each kind of note in 6 time gets twice as many beats as it would get in $\frac{2}{4}, \frac{3}{4}, \frac{4}{4}$. Apply the above procedures to 3 time also, noticing that the strong beat in 3 is beat &quot;one&quot; only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Vocal Activities

#### Helps for Classroom Teacher

<p>| Example: How fresh and green are the woods today |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>&quot;1&quot;</strong></th>
<th><strong>&quot;2&quot;</strong></th>
<th><strong>&quot;1&quot;</strong></th>
<th><strong>&quot;2&quot;</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clap</td>
<td>1 2 3</td>
<td>4 5 6</td>
<td>1 2 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Strong beats are underlined)

#### Materials

| HRW p 28 |
| HRW p 12 |
| Follett text p 115 |
GOALS

II. To develop rhythmically

ACTIVITIES

C. Tempo

1. Maintaining a steady tempo

Children should be made aware that each song may have a different tempo. Some move very quickly and others very slowly, etc. HRW songs are not marked. Children should understand the text is important in setting the tempo.

Once a song has begun, its tempo should remain the same throughout except where a change is indicated in the music.

2. Introduction to metric markings

In the Follett text, grade 5, the following metric markings are used and should be learned by fifth grade children:

a. Maestoso - with majesty; slower than andante
b. Andante - a walking tempo
c. Moderato - moderate tempo
d. Allegro - quickly (literally, cheerful)

Chart of Metric Markings: Make a chart of metric markings and their meanings to display in the room.

Flash Cards: Make a set of flash cards with dynamic markings on it.

Changing English Markings to Italian: When singing songs that have metric markings in English, have children try to decide what these would be in Italian.

Metronome: If a metronome is available, use it to find metric markings and to discover how fast the music should go.
1. When teaching a new song, the teacher should have its tempo well in mind. If a song is introduced in the proper tempo, it is likely the children will always sing it at that tempo. It is very difficult to change a tempo once a song has been introduced.

In order that a song maintains the same tempo throughout, the teacher may use some of the following techniques, as needed:
   a. Clap the basic beat
   b. "Whisper" the words while directing with hand
   c. Nod head in rhythm

2. Tell the children these markings are in Italian and are used in music in all countries of the world. This is one way in which written music can be understandable to people in all parts of the world.

Examples:  
M: Maestoso
   "Star Spangled Banner"  HRW p 182
   Andante  "Springfield Mountain"  p 4
   Moderato  "Ifca's Castle"  p 18
   Allegro  "Yankee Doodle Boy"  p 10

"Jolly Wee Miner", "Lively", this would be the same as "allegro".
### VOCAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>III. To read music</td>
<td>A. Teaching Music Symbols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Review:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Teacher should make a chart for music symbols which will be added to as new symbols are learned by the children.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Teacher may make a set of flash cards of music symbols to be used in various ways for reinforcement of knowledge of music symbols.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MUSIC SYMBOLS

Tie

Slur

Sharp #

Flat b

Accent >

Dotted eighth note

Sixteenth note

Sixteenth rest

DA CAPO - Repeat from the beginning to the end, or to the place marked Fine

D.S. or D.S. Al Fine - Go back to the sign and sing or play to the Fine ending.
### GOALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>III. To Read Music</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### ACTIVITIES

**B. To Recognize Form and Structure in Music**

1. **To review the major scale**
   
   **a. Syllable chart:** Review singing the scale by memory ascending and descending. The teacher should make a vertical syllable chart which should be displayed somewhere in the room at all times so it can be referred to quickly.

   
   **b. Scale ladder:** Draw a scale ladder on the chalkboard. Children should discover that the ladder has eight steps (or rungs) some of which are spaced closer than others. They will discover that steps 3 and 4 (mi and fa) and 7 and 8 (ti and do) are the close steps. These are called half steps. The others are called whole steps. They should sing the ascending scale from the scale ladder, being especially careful to take big steps on the whole steps so they will not "flat".

   
   **c. To sing scale patterns:** Children should be able to sing scale patterns with syllables fluently. That is, they should be able to sing from any note in the scale to the next one up or down without difficulty.

   **Singing from syllables chart:** The teacher should establish "do" on the pitch pipe (D, E flat or E). Then by starting with "do", he should point to notes on the syllables chart moving up and down by step.

   **Scale patterns by hand levels:** Teacher should establish a given hand level for "do". He should then move his hand up and down in scale patterns while the children follow in singing.
## Vocal Activities

### Helps for Classroom Teacher

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syllable Chart:</th>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>Pitch in the keys of D, E flat or E. Check on pitch pipe to see if the top note is in tune.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa</td>
<td>Teacher should tell the children to sing big steps when going up and &quot;tiny&quot; steps when going down. &quot;Flattening&quot; occurs when ascending steps are not big enough and descending steps are too big.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Scale Ladder:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scale Ladder:</th>
<th>Teacher should use hand signals from Threshold to Music charts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>ti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>la</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>sol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>fa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>mi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples:

- do-re-do
- do-re-mi-fa-mi-re-do
- do-re-mi-fa-sol-la-sol-la-sol-fa-mi-re-do

### Materials:

- Tagboard
### GOALS

III. To Read Music  

B. To recognize form and structure in Music

### ACTIVITIES

d. Drill on sight-singing syllables in a right-to-left progression: Teacher could write syllable patterns on the chalkboard. Children should sing circled notes as teacher points to them.
Example 1 of scale pattern
mi mi mi mi mi mi mi mi mi
re re re re re re re re re
do do do do do do do do do

Example 2 of key-chord pattern: (Major)
sol sol sol sol sol sol
fa fa fa fa fa fa fa
mi mi mi mi mi mi mi
re re re re re re re re
do do do do do do do do
ti ti ti ti ti ti ti ti ti
la la la la la la la
sol sol sol sol sol sol

Example 3 of pattern of thirds outside of the key-chord:
fa fa fa fa fa fa fa
mi mi mi mi mi mi mi
re re re re re re re re
do do do do do do do do
ti ti ti ti ti ti ti ti
la la la la la la la la
sol sol sol sol sol sol

Example 4 including interval of a fourth outside of the key-chord:
sol sol sol sol sol sol sol
da da da da da da da da da da
mi mi mi mi mi mi mi
re re re re re re re re
do do do do do do do do
ti ti ti ti ti ti ti ti ti ti
ti ti ti ti ti ti ti ti
la la la la la la la la
sol sol sol sol sol sol sol

Example 5 of dominant 7th chord:
fa fa fa fa fa fa fa
mi mi mi mi mi mi mi
re re re re re re re re
do do do do do do do do
ti ti ti ti ti ti ti ti ti ti
la la la la la la la
sol sol sol sol sol sol sol

Example 6 of key-chord pattern minor:
mi mi mi mi mi mi mi
re re re re re re re re
do do do do do do do do
ti ti ti ti ti ti ti ti ti
la la la la la la la

Example 7 intervals of a fifth outside of the key-chord:
la la la la la la
sol sol sol sol sol sol
fa fa fa fa fa fa fa fa
mi mi mi mi mi mi mi
re re re re re re re re
do do do do do do do do
III. To Read Music

B. To recognize form and structure in music - cont.

e. To build on the staff and sing the following intervals:
   Second (step)
   Third
   Fourth
   Fifth
   Octave

f. To review the tonic and dominant chord patterns and introduce the dominant seventh (V7) chord pattern:

   Step 1 - Review the singing of the key-chord pattern (do-mi-sol-do). Explain to the children that if we put these notes together and sang them or played them simultaneously, we would produce a chord. This is called the tonic or I chord. This chord is sometimes outlined in melodies where we sing only one note at a time.
Example 8 intervals of an octave outside the key-chord:

mi mi mi \textcolor{red}{mi} mi mi mi
re re re re re re re re
do do do do do do do
ti ti ti ti ti ti ti
la la la la la la la
sol sol sol sol sol sol sol
fa fa fa fa fa fa fa
mi mi \textcolor{red}{mi} mi mi mi mi
re re re re re re re re
do do do do do do do do
III. To Read Music

B. To recognize form and structure in music - cont.

Example: "The Deaf Woman's Courtship"

Have children sing this pattern from syllables chart. Divide the class into three groups and sing chord.

Have three children simultaneously play chord on resonator bells.

Step 2 - Review with the children that the notes sol-ti-re form the dominant or V chord. When the seventh (or fa) is added to the chord, it is called the dominant seventh chord. This chord is sometimes outlined in melodies.

Example: "La Fiesta"

Phrase 3

Have children sing this pattern from syllables chart. Divide the class into three groups and sing chord.

Have three children simultaneously play the chord notes on the resonator bells.

g. To review how to find "do" - Review the concept that "do" can be on any line or in any space in a given song. The position of "do" is determined by the key signature.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR CLASSROOM TEACHERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Fa&quot; is called the seventh of the chord because it is an interval of a seventh above &quot;sol&quot; (the bottom note of the chord.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Follett Text, p 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follett text, p 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMC Film - F-1085 / &quot;Learning About Notes&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### III. To Read Music

#### B. To recognize form and structure in music - cont.

Review with the children the three basic rules for finding "do":

1. The sharp farthest to the right is always "ti." Go up or down to "do."
2. The flat farthest to the right is always "fa." Go down to "do."
3. When there are no sharps or flats in the key signature, "do" is always on the added ledger line below the staff or in the third space. (Key of C)

Determining whether a sharp or flat is on a line or space:

1. When a sharp is on a line, the line cuts through the center of the "box" of the sharp.
2. When a sharp is in a space, the "box" of the sharp fills the space.
3. When the flat is on a line, the line cuts through the center of the round part of the flat.
4. When the flat is in the space, the round part of the flat fills the space.

#### h. To review names of lines and spaces.

![Diagram of musical lines and spaces]

#### i. To find key song is written in. Children should identify key name by position of "do" or "1" in major key.
Use melody bells to build major scale in C, D, E, F, and G, using the pattern 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 (whole and half steps). It will be necessary to raise (#) or lower (b) a note to fit the pattern. Develop the need of a key signature.

Key of C Major

Key of D Major

Key of F
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>III. To Read Music</td>
<td>j. Have the children build intervals on the staff using the tagboard staffs and notes or the chalkboard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. To recognize form and structure in music - cont.</td>
<td>k. Exercise for singing intervals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Have the children sing the following syllable patterns as you point to the notes. Use either the syllable ladder or a scale of the staff on the board. Any &quot;do&quot; which is underlined is low &quot;do&quot;; any &quot;do&quot; which is not underlined is high &quot;do&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Have the children identify the above intervals after they have sung the above exercise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HELPS FOR CLASSROOM TEACHERS</td>
<td>MATERIALS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example:</strong></td>
<td>Get tagboard staffs, staff notes, sharps and flats from school office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decide on a key signature. Place the sharps or flats on the proper lines and spaces at teacher's direction. Have children place a note on the second space of the staff. Have them place another note a fifth higher. Have children place a note in the first space of the staff. Have them place another note in the second space. Ask them to identify the interval (a third).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOALS</td>
<td>ACTIVITIES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>III. To Read Music</strong></td>
<td><strong>2. Minor Scale</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B. To recognize form and structure in music - cont.</strong></td>
<td><strong>a. To build the natural minor scale on the staff</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step 1 - Pass out to each child a tagboard staff, notes, sharps and flats on the staff for a given key signature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step 2 - Have the children find &quot;do&quot; and place it on the staff about three inches to the right of the G clef sign.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step 3 - Count down to &quot;la&quot; and place &quot;la and low ti&quot; on the staff to the left of &quot;do.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step 4 - Complete the scale by placing the remaining notes up to &quot;high la.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step 5 - Sing the minor scale from the staff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>b. To build a natural minor scale with the resonator bells</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ask eight children to come to the front of the room. Give one of the notes d-e-f-g-a-b'-c'-d of the resonator bells to each child. Do not have the notes in order. Through experimenting, the children should arrange the notes in the proper sequence. Then they should play the scale, each child playing one note. The class could sing the scale with them as they play it a second time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Songs written in minor key end on &quot;la&quot; or &quot;6.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>c. To build other minor scales.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The minor scale has its peculiar sound through having the whole and half steps in a different sequence from that of the major scale.

Drawing a scale ladder of the minor scale for the children might make this easier for them to understand.

```
la \la
sol \sol
fa \fa
mi \fa\flat
re \re
do \do
ti \ti\flat
la \la
```

Vary this activity by using smaller groups. It might be fun to divide the class into four or more groups - giving each group a chance to get the jumbled notes into their proper sequence. Time each group to see which one is the quickest. This could be done with the major scale also.

The natural minor scale with the sixth and seventh steps raised a half step ascending and unaltered descending.
### VOCAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>III. To Read Music</td>
<td>d. To build the pentatonic scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. To recognize form and structure in music - cont.</td>
<td>A scale of five tones, the most common form being the major scale with the fourth and seventh steps omitted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e. To build a chromatic scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f. To name syllables for the chromatic scale</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chromatic scale: Twelve tones all one half step apart

Sharps are used in the ascending scale.

Flats are used in the descending scale.

do di re ri mi fa fi sol si la li ti do

Ascending

do ti te la le so se fa mi me re rah do

Descending
III. To Read Music

C. To recognize dynamic markings

The following activities will help the children to remember the meanings of dynamic markings:

1. Dynamics Chart - The teacher should make a chart for dynamic markings to be displayed in the room, adding to it as each new marking is encountered in songs.

2. Flash Cards - The teacher may make a set of flash cards of dynamic markings to be used in various ways.

3. Dynamics in Poetry - Select a poem to be dramatized through the use of dynamics. Write the poem on the board. Add appropriate dynamic markings, accents, etc., for each line, having the children decide. Chant the poem incorporating the dynamics. Add rhythm instruments or other sound effects if they fit.

4. Introducing Crescendo and Diminuendo - Have the children clap very softly with one finger on the palm of the hand four even beats. Without losing any beats, clap four more beats a little louder, using two fingers. Increase this by one finger every four beats until all fingers are used in a loud clap. This should sound like a crescendo. Reverse the procedure to achieve a diminuendo.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR CLASSROOM TEACHER</th>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Children in the fifth grade should be able to use the following dynamic markings:  
1. p (piano) - soft  
2. f (forte) - loud  
3. crescendo - gradually louder  
4. decrescendo or diminuendo - gradually softer  
5. pp (pianissimo) - very soft  
6. mp (mezzo piano) - medium soft  
7. mf (mezzo forte) - medium loud  
8. ff (fortissimo) - very loud  
The children should be told that these words (piano, forte, mezzo, etc.) are Italian and mean "soft," "loud," "medium," etc., in that language. The children should observe these markings when they appear in music. | Follett, Voices of America  
Songs are marked  
HRW  
Children decide from text content, which dynamics to use. |
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

III. To Read Music

D. Standards to reach for

1. To learn one new note song each week.

HRW text is arranged in a sequential order. Songs from Follett text listed in the Vocal Resource section are arranged in order of difficulty. Use suggested procedure for music reading, modifying these to fit specific songs in one key before moving on to another key.

2. To learn two new rote songs each week.

Choose a song in a key which children are using in note songs using syllables for common tonal patterns. It should be noted that in teaching a rote song, the following music reading skills should be incorporated:

a. Singing syllables on common tonal groups.

b. Time signatures of $2, 3, 4, 6$ and $3, \frac{4,4,4,8}{8}$.

c. Key signature and how to find "do."

d. Notes and rests and their values in $2, 3, 4, 3$ and $6$ time. $\frac{4,4,4,8}{8}$

e. Tie

f. Fermata

g. Accent

h. First and second endings.

i. Repeat mark

j. Da Capo

k. D.S. or D.S. Al Fine
Example: "Awake You Lazy Sleepers"

1. Discuss origin of the words.
2. Read words together and discuss.
3. Discuss the meaning of time signature and clap the rhythm for the first two phrases.
4. Write in the beats for the notes of phrase three on the chalkboard and clap this rhythm.

5. Find "do" and name of beginning note.
6. Read syllables in rhythm (not singing.)
8. Sing syllables of whole song from book.
9. Sing words to song. After song is learned well, sing as a round.

Example: "Morning Song"

1. Read and discuss the words.
2. Have the children find "do."
3. Ask them to study the song to see how many times they discover the pattern, sol-mi-do.
4. Establish the tonality by singing the scale in the key of F. Sing, sol-mi-do.
5. Sing the song through having the children singing syllables on every sol-mi-do pattern and the teacher singing "loo" on the other notes of the song.
Many folk tunes are written in the Pentatonic scale. These scale steps are easy to sing and harmonize.

The teacher can sing or play the major and relative minor song for the children.

Use the pitch pipe to establish the key the song is written in. If the teacher must use lower keys when he sings, he should be sure to pitch song correctly for the children. Teacher should sing with a light, buoyant tone quality.
III. To Read Music

D. Standards to reach for - cont.

5. To discover whether a song is in major or minor through looking at the music.

It should be brought to the children's attention that usually when the songs end on "do," it is in major, and when it ends on "la," it is in minor. To make this more clear to the children, divide the class into groups. Each group should be assigned a certain number of pages in the HRW or Follett texts in which to find songs in the minor key.

6. To sing syllables using the altered tones "fi" (♯fa) and "te" (♭ti.)

There are many songs in the Follett grade five text which contain these altered tones. Any of these songs which are suitable for note singing are indicated in "Songs Recommended for Note Singing" in the Vocal Resource section. Altered tones are tones which are not normally found in a scale. Teach the children that when we raise "fa" a half step, it is called "fi." (The raising of a tone may occur through a sharp on a natural note or a natural sign on a note which is a flat.) When "ti" is lowered a half step we call it "te." (This can be done through a flat on a natural note or a natural sign on a note which is a sharp.)

7. To develop a wide and varied singing repertoire.

Use the tape recorder so individuals can hear how they sound.

Play records of children's choral groups.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR THE CLASSROOM TEACHER</th>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tape recorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Records:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vienna Boys' Choir</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obernkirchen Children's Choir</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from Germany</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willmar Boys Choir</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GOALS

#### III. To Read Music - cont.

#### E. To Make Singing a Satisfying Experience

1. Correct interpretation of the song
   - a. Understand the text
   - b. Understand the background or culture from which it came
   - c. Use correct pitch, tempo and dynamics
   - d. Have an interesting accompaniment whether rhythmic or harmonic

2. Quality of the singing
   - a. Good posture whether sitting or standing
   - b. Good tone
     1) Clear tone-sometimes full tone, sometimes a restrained tone.
     2) Tone has vitality
     3) Enunciation of clear vowel sounds, crisp consonants
   - c. Correct phrasing
     1) Where does phrase begin?
     2) Where does phrase end?
     3) Is there a climax phrase?
     4) Does the phrase recede?

3. Begin and end together as of one voice.

### ACTIVITIES

#### IV. To Sing in Harmony

#### A. To Review rounds, canons, descants

1. Combination rounds
   The following rounds can be sung together: "Make New Friends"
   "Sing Together"
   "Three Blind Mice"
   "Are You Sleeping?"
   "Row, Row, Row Your Boat"
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPs FOR CLASSROOM TEACHER

See "Rounds, Canons and songs with descants" in classified index.

"Make New Friends"

Make new friends, but keep the old,

One is silver and the other gold.

MATERIALS

HRW Teachers Edition p IV

Follett Teachers Edition p 220
### GOALS

IV. To Sing in Harmony - cont.

### ACTIVITIES

2. Partner Songs

These are a combination of two different songs which can be sung together:

- "Solomon Levi"
- "Spanish Cavalier"
- "Swing Low, Sweet Chariot"
- "All Day, All Night"

B. To prepare for two-part singing

1. Divide the class into three parts. Sing and hold the following chords:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chord #</th>
<th>Group 1</th>
<th>Group 2</th>
<th>Group 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#1</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>sol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#2</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>la</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#3</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>ti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#4</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
"Sing Together"

Sing, sing, to-geth-er, Mer-ri-ly, mer-ri-ly sing;

Sing, sing, to-geth-er, Mer-ri-ly, mer-ri-ly sing,

Sing, Sing, Sing, Sing.
IV. To Sing in Harmony - cont.

2. Divide class into two parts. One half sing do-re-do-re-mi-fa-sol-la while the other half sings on ascending scale.

3. Divide the class into two parts. One half thinks "do-re" then starts on "mi" and sings the scale up to "mi." The other half sings the scale from "do" to "do."

4. Write on the board: do-re-mi-fa-sol-la-sol
   Sing once or twice
   Write under it: do-re-do-re-mi-fa-mi
   Sing once or twice
   Divide the class into two parts and sing them together. (Parts should not be sung separately often enough so they are memorized.)

5. Write the exercises found in "4" in notation (key of F.) Have the children sing from the notes, and have them notice the harmony is in thirds and sounds nice together.

6. Sing other two-part exercises in syllables from the staff. Use intervals of a step or key-chord patterns.
Some other easy exercises of the same type:

1. do-re-mi-fa-mi-fa-sol
do-re-do-re-do-re-mi

2. do-re-mi-mi-fa-fa-sol
do-re-do-do-re-re-mi

3. do-mi-sol-la-sol
do-do-mi-fa-mi

4. mi-fa-sol-la-sol
do-re-mi-fa-mi

5. sol-la-ti-do-ti-la
   mi-fa-sol-la-sol-fa

6. do-re-mi-fa-sol
do-ti-do-re-mi

Vary the key for these, so children learn to read in many keys.

Examples:
### GOALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IV. To Sing in Harmony - cont.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>7. Harmonize in thirds by ear on a simple song.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8. Adding a lower part to a simple melody, basing the harmony on indicated chords.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1 - Choose a song based on two or three chords. (See &quot;Two or Three Chord Songs for Autoharp&quot; in Instrumental Resource.) It should be in the key of F or G.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 - Write a lower part made up of long notes. The pitch of the note should be the root (bottom note) of the chord which is indicated. (Other chord notes will also work.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 - Have all the children sing through the new part on syllables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 - Divide the class into two groups. Have one group sing the melody and the other group sing the lower part - first with syllables or the syllable &quot;loo,&quot; then with words which fit the song.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example: "I See the Moon"

I see the moon, the moon sees me,
Down through the leaves of the old oak tree,
Please let the light that shines on me,
Shine on the one I love.

Refrain:
Over the mountain, over the sea,
Back where my heart is longing to be,
Please let the light that shines on me,
Shine on the one I love.

I hear the lark, the lark hears me,
Singing a song with memory,
Please let the lark that sings to me,
Sing to the one I love. (Refrain)

Pitch this song in the key of F. It starts on low sol (middle C). Harmonize in thirds on the refrain. (The melody starts on "mi"; the harmony on "sol").

Example: "Good Night, Ladies"

Words: Good night, good night, good night,

Syllables: do do do sol do fa

Example: "I See the Moon"

I see the moon, the moon sees me,
Down through the leaves of the old oak tree,
Please let the light that shines on me,
Shine on the one I love.

Refrain:
Over the mountain, over the sea,
Back where my heart is longing to be,
Please let the light that shines on me,
Shine on the one I love.

I hear the lark, the lark hears me,
Singing a song with memory,
Please let the lark that sings to me,
Sing to the one I love. (Refrain)

Pitch this song in the key of F. It starts on low sol (middle C). Harmonize in thirds on the refrain. (The melody starts on "mi"; the harmony on "sol").
C. To Introduce Two-Part Singing

1. Procedure

Step 1 - Introduce the alto part before teaching the melody. Before the children see the music, write the syllables for the alto part for one or more phrases on the board. Have the children sing the syllables as though they were all quarter notes.

Step 2 - Open books and learn whole alto part, following "Suggested Procedures for Music Reading."

Step 3 - Write one or more phrases on the board in two parts in syllables. Have the children help to name the syllables for you using the books. Have all children sing the notes for the soprano part. Then divide the class into two groups and sing the phrase slowly in two parts, listen to the harmony.

Step 4 - Learn the whole soprano part from the books, observing the correct rhythm. (Do as in Step 2.)

Step 5 - Divide the class into two groups (altos and sopranos,) making sure there are strong singers in both groups. Practice the parts separately, then put together.

Step 6 - Sing the song in two parts with words.

2. Recognizing like-phrases

When teaching a new song by rote, have the children listen for like-phrases. While the teacher sings the song on the syllable "loo," a phrase at a time, the phrases should be labeled by the children by letter, each like-phrase having the same letter. The letters should be written on the board. Some children will discover that some phrases are alike (by looking at the music) even before the teacher sings the song.
This helps children to stay on the alto part.
Example: "Down In the Valley"

**First phrase** Alto part:

sol-la-ti-do-do-ti-do-ti-la-ti

Example:

**First phrase**
Soprano part: sol-do-re-mi-mi-mi-mi-sol-sol-re

In selecting two-part songs refer to "Other Two-Part Songs" in the Classified Index.

In beginning two-part singing, it is wise to select songs that have equal note values for both parts. After children know their own part well, have the groups change parts. Children should have experience on both parts and should not get the idea that some of them are "altos" and some are "sopranos."

Refer to "Part Singing"

Example: "Skye Boat Song"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Part</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
<td>A₁</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four</td>
<td>B₁</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>six</td>
<td>A₁</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MATERIALS**

Follett text p 45

HRW p. 365
Two-part songs

Follett teachers manual p 213

HRW p 28
IV. To Sing in Harmony - cont.

In singing songs by note, the children should get into the habit of looking for like-phrases before they start to sing the song.

V. To Create Music

A. To write a song

1. Select a favorite poem or use an original one.
2. Read the poem together to decide the:
   a. Beat
   b. Stresses (accent)
   c. Mood
   d. Climax - if there is one
3. Discuss type of music to interpret words
   a. Tempo (fast, slow, etc.)
   b. Movement of notes (smoothly, jerkily; steps, skips)
4. Teacher can suggest key and starting pitch. Able students can do this.
5. Volunteers sing first phrase. Teacher or able student write all responses on blackboard staff. Children choose favorite one.
7. Edit, rewrite and make mimeograph copies for the class.
HELFs FOR CLASSROOM TEACHER

Example: "The Spanish Guitar"

Phrase one A
Phrase two B
Phrase three A
Phrase four B
Phrase five C (Ends at letter "B")
Phrase six D

Example: "The Praties They Grow Small"

Phrase one A
Phrase two B
Phrase three A

Example: "The Farmer is the Man"

Two like phrase.

In many songs in the Follett text each new phrase is indicated by a dot or a diamond.

Correlating music with social studies and creative writing, students can create songs in the patterns and moods that the people of various cultures of America could have written or would write.

Examples: Puritans
Indians
Negroes (slaves, militants)
soldiers (Revolutionary, Civil War, Viet Nam)
cowboys

Create movements to accompany original music or favorite songs:
- Move freely using the entire body
- Movements should reflect musical line such as rhythm pattern, melodic direction, etc.
- Make up dances utilizing walking, sliding, jumping, stamping, etc.
- Discuss various ways of doing above movements such as forward, backward, sideways, big steps, little steps, on tiptoes, on heels, prancing, shuffling, hopping, etc.
- Use combinations of above to interpret a particular meter or rhythm.

MATERIALS

Follett text, p 32
HRW, p 116
HRW, p 108
V. To Create Music - cont.

B. Further Enrichment
1. Write an accompaniment using rhythm instruments.
2. Write a second part in the form of a descant, ostinato or an alto part using the "do," "fa," and "sol" notes to harmonize or let children improvise "by ear."
3. Write an autoharp accompaniment using the I, IV, and V7 chords.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR CLASSROOM TEACHER</th>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rhythm instruments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Autoharp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bells, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Behavioral Objectives

I. To develop music skills through the use of rhythm instruments.
   - The student will be able to play rhythm instruments to accompany songs reading rhythm patterns that include \( \frac{1}{4} \) and \( \frac{1}{8} \).

II. To develop skills through use of melody instruments.
   - The student will be able to read the letter names of the notes in the treble clef.
   - The student will be able to play melodic patterns on the bells by note to accompany songs.
   - The student will be able to play a major or a natural minor scale on the bells or keyboard from any given tone through knowledge of the series of steps and half-steps in these scales.
   - The student will be able to play the I, IV and V\(^7\) chords on the keyboard in the key of C by reading the chord symbols or numerals.

III. To develop skills through the use of the autoharp.
   - The student will be able to play the autoharp in two and three chord accompaniments in the keys of C, F and G by reading the chord symbols or numerals.
   - The students will be able to build on the treble clef the I, IV and V\(^7\) chords in the keys of C, F and G.

IV. To develop self-expression and imagination through creative instrumental activities.
   - The student will be able to select rhythm instruments appropriate to the song and improvise accompaniments including an introduction and a coda.
   - The student will be able to write and then play on the bells a melodic accompaniment to a song in the pentatonic scale.
# Instrumental Activities

## Goals

### I. To Develop Music Skills Through the Use of Rhythm Instruments

**Activities**

**A. Identification of non-pitched rhythm instruments**

1. Claves
2. Cowbell
3. Maracas
4. Congo Drum
5. Bongo Drums
6. Tambourines
7. Castanets
8. Wood Block

**B. Use of non-pitched instruments**

1. Continue expanding the students' ability to use the above instruments to accompany songs with increasing accuracy and complex rhythm patterns.
   a. Make word patterns. Ex. "This Old Man"
   b. Adding introductions, interludes and codas based on repetitious patterns to establish the beat and accent.
   c. Select instruments with appropriate sound effect. Ex. clockticking, horse galloping, etc.
   d. Use instruments to tell a story - using a different instrument for each character. Ex. Recording of "Peter and the Wolf".

### II. To Develop Skills Through Use of Melody Instruments

**Activities**

**A. Identification of melody instruments**

1. Melody Bells
2. Resonator Bells
3. Xylophone
4. Step Bells
5. Autoharp
6. Glockenspiel
7. Metallophone
8. Piano
9. Pianet
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR CLASSROOM TEACHER</th>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Correlate music with social studies in the syncopated rhythms of Latin American countries.</td>
<td>HRW Teachers Edition pp IX-XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orff Instruments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bloomington Orff Guide, p 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glockenspiel and Metallophone from Orff Instruments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Glockenspiel and Metallophone from Orff Instruments | |

Orff Instruments
### II. To Develop Skills Through Use of Melody Instruments

#### GOALS

- **B. Uses of melody instruments**
  1. Develop the aural concepts of high-low up-down and step-skip.
  2. Help children develop scale concept by having them place "scrambled" resonator bells in order.
  3. Improvise bell descants for pentatonic songs.
  4. Use bells to add appropriate introductions and codas to familiar songs.
  5. Play by ear familiar melodies
  6. Improvise simple ostinato accompaniment
  7. Add harmonic accompaniments, each child with a single resonator bell.
  8. Build scales using patterns of half & whole steps.
  9. Build chords to use as an accompaniment.

#### ACTIVITIES

- **C. Beginning to play**
  1. Reviewing the letter names of the notes for the treble clef of the staff

   In order to play the bells by notes, fifth grade children should know the letter names of the treble clef.

   a. **Music alphabet** - Review the music alphabet, A, B, C, D, E, F, G. The children should know that when all the letters have been used, we start over again with A. When we go by step on the staff, the names of the notes represent the music alphabet going forward. When we go down by step, the names of the notes are the music alphabet going backwards.

   b. **Names of the lines** - Review the treble clef as the G clef, having the children notice that the curved loop of the clef sign goes around the G line. By using the first letters of the saying, "Every Good Boy Does Fine", we discover the letter names of the lines from bottom to top.

   c. **Names of the spaces** - By using the word face (F-A-C-E), we discover the names of the spaces from bottom to top.
### HELPS FOR CLASSROOM TEACHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Step-bells especially valuable in visual concept.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Orff instrument or resonator bells leaving out &quot;fa&quot; and &quot;ti.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Do-sol makes a simple accompaniment. Use ear to guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Major $11\frac{1}{2}11\frac{1}{2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural Minor $1\frac{1}{2}1\frac{1}{2}1\frac{1}{2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. I, IV, V$_7$ based on tonic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HRW, T.E., Index, p 365
II. To Develop Skills
Through Use of
Melody Instruments

C. Reviewing the
letter names of the
notes for the tre-
ble clef of the
staff

d. Exercises - Have the children make up
words using the music alphabet by writing
notes on the staff, the letter names of
which spell a word. (See Instrumental
Resource for specific examples of stories
using words written with notes).

2. Accompaniment to vocal music using the bells

Select a song from "With Parts for Instruments -
Bells" from the classified index of the Follett
text; Teacher's Manual, page 220.
Example: "The Marine's Hymn"
In order to have all children learning
the bell parts at one time, the teach-
er should ditto a representation
of the resonator bells or melody
bells that are used in this song.
After the children have learned the
song, teach them the bell part. Have
half the class singing while the
other half practices playing the bell
part on the dittoed copies.

The teacher should accompany on bells.
When they are practicing, this should
be sung slower. When the entire class
has had time to practice on their
dittoed copy, select one child to
play it on the bells while the class
sings.

D. Keyboard Activities
1. Review physical layout of the keyboard
   a. Number of white keys - 52
   b. Number of Black keys - 36
   c. Total = 88
   d. Pattern of black & white keys.
      Review two black followed by three black.
2. Identify key - letter names. Middle C
   White keys - are natural keys
   Black keys - are the sharps and flats
3. Play C Major scale
   Write the scale on a staff
4. Review playing a Five-Finger Melody in C Major -
   1. Correct hand position
   2. Play the melody an octave higher
In this song, resonator bells or melody bells may be used. Resonator bells are preferred when a song has flats or sharps to make it easier for the children.

Try to make these as close to the real size as possible, using one piece of construction paper for each child with the above set of bells. Pencils (eraser end) may be used for mallets. Children should aim to get a free bouncing movement.
II. To develop skills through the use of melody instruments

D. Keyboard Activities - cont.

5. Review chords - Building Triads I - VIIº
   a. Make treble clef sign on staff paper
   b. Write the C Major scale.
   c. Define Chord - 3 tones, arranged as thirds, identify C major chord.
   d. Build chord on D
      1. Discuss root of the chord
      2. Interval of 5th
      3. Interval of third
   e. What finger to use
   f. Play a chord as a triad
   g. Use of Roman numerals
   h. Identify by sound major or minor
   i. Review VIIº chord (a diminished chord)

6. Review Harmonizing C major melodies with "Do" and "Sol."

7. Introduce major chords I, IV, V
   Harmonizing C major melodies with I and V chord in Root Position.
      1. Have children play
      2. Write patterns on board
      3. Build and identify IV chord
      4. Play on bells -

8. Introduce Seventh Chord
   1. Make triads I through VIIº in C major on staff including proper numeral and chord letter below each chord.
   2. Now add a fourth tone to each chord - 3rd above the 5th.
   3. Examine books to see which seventh chord is used most frequently. (V7)

   1. First inversion
## HELPS FOR CLASSROOM TEACHER

5. Use resonator bells and autoharp

6. See lesson plan 8, p 122 N

7. See Lesson Plan 9

   See lesson plans 10. Go back to page 122i for explanation of VII° (diminished chord)

9. See lesson plan 11 and 12
   1. See note to teacher on first inversion page 122t

---

## MATERIALS

- Keyboard Lesson Plans 3 & 4

i. See lesson plans 4-5-6

Follett, p 193

"Prayer for Peace"
Follett, p 193
III. To develop skills through the use of the autoharp

A. Playing two-and-three chord accompaniments on the autoharp

Make copies of individual autoharp charts for children using the chart. Review with children how to finger and strum the autoharp.

Select songs from the list of two and three chord autoharp accompaniments in the Instrumental Resource Section or Songs for Autoharp.

After the key of the song is determined, have the children locate on the autoharp the chords they will use. (These chords are labeled at the bottom of the page in the Follett text).

The index finger goes on the I chord, the third finger on the V chord and the fourth finger on the IV chord. While one child actually plays the autoharp, the others should pretend to be fingering and strumming at their desks.
Refer to the glossary to see how the autoharp is played. The classroom teacher should use the autoharp frequently in accompaniments that are too difficult for children to play. This helps children to associate harmony with the songs they sing.

Children in the fifth grade should be able to play two and three chord accompaniments on the autoharp in the keys of C, F and G. The chords for each of these keys are indicated on the above chart in the following manner: ( ) chords for key of G; ( ) chords for key of C; ( ) chords for key of F.
### ACTIVITIES

#### III. To develop skills through the use of the autoharp

A. Playing two-and-three chord accompaniments on the autoharp - cont.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chord</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I chord</td>
<td>do-mi-sol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV chord</td>
<td>fa-la-ti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V7 chord</td>
<td>sol-ti-re-fa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The IV and V7 chords should be sung starting on low fa and sol, respectively, when the top notes are out of the children's range.

**B. Building chords on the staff**

In vocal music in the fourth and fifth grades, children learn to find chord patterns (tonic and dominant) in their songs. In unison singing the notes of a chord are sung one at a time. On the autoharp, the chord notes are played simultaneously. The children should be able to build the I, IV and V7 chords in vertical fashion on the staff in the keys of C, F, and G.

The children should be told that the I chord is built on the first note of the scale, the IV chord on the fourth note of the scale and the V7 chord on the fifth note of the scale. The I and IV chords contain three notes. These notes are built of thirds above the root. The V7 chord contains four notes. These notes are also built of thirds above the root. The seventh of the V7 chord refers to the fact that the top tone of the chord is an interval of a seventh above the root of the chord. In order to hear the harmony of these chords, the children should sing them by syllables:

- I chord - do-mi-sol
- IV chord - fa-la-ti
- V7 chord - sol-ti-re-fa

C. Songs for the Autoharp
A breakdown of the chords in each key is as follows:

**Key of G**
- I chord (tonic) - G Major
- V7 chord (dominant-seventh) - D Seventh
- IV chord (sub-dominant) - C Major

**Key of F**
- I chord (tonic) - F Major
- V7 chord (dominant-seventh) - C Seventh
- IV chord (sub-dominant) - B Flat Major

**Key of C**
- I chord (tonic) - C Major
- V7 chord (dominant-seventh) - G Seventh
- IV chord (sub-dominant) - F Major

On the autoharp each note of the chord is played in several octaves.
IV. To develop self-expression and imagination through creative instrumental activities

A. Encourage every child to become involved in the creative process of making music.

1. To choose instruments to enhance the music for an
   a. introduction
   b. accompaniment
   c. coda
   d. descant

2. To improvise an introduction, accompaniment, coda, or descant of their own.
1. Rhythm instruments should be available for children to select and to add an accompaniment, descant, introduction or coda to the song.

2. Children will become selective in choosing an appropriate instrument to best interpret or add color to the song.
   a. Paper cups clapped together to represent a pony trotting.
   b. High notes on the melody bells can be used to represent a bird call.
   c. Melody bells, xylophone, etc. to play as an ostinato, a repeated phrase of the song.
   d. A pentatonic scale (do, re, mi, sol, la) set up on resonator bells or the Orff instrument will provide a harmonic accompaniment for a song built on the pentatonic scale. The child can play any note at will and will find it in harmony.

MATERIALS

Building Instruments
Orff Instruments, T.E., p. 18-42.

Songs and examples of the uses of rhythm instruments for introductions, codas, descants and accompaniments.

Resonator bells
or Orff Instruments
CLASSROOM LISTENING PROGRAM

Behavioral Objectives

I. To develop good listening habits.

- The student will demonstrate good listening habits by:
  a. being attentive during performances
  b. being respectful of performers
  c. being considerate of other members of the audience
  d. showing appreciation through applause.

II. To distinguish the elements and structure of music through listening.

- On hearing the recordings of two songs, one in major and one in minor, the student will be able to identify the tonality of each.

- The student will be able to symbolize the form of a given selection by assigning letter names to repeated and contrasting themes or sections.

- The student will be able to identify by written or oral response the expressive qualities of listening selections.

III. To become acquainted with the music of various composers.

- The student will be able to recognize aurally one composition of each of the following composers:
  
  | Bach     | Foster     |
  | Chopin   | Sousa      |
  | Debussy  | Handel     |
  | Dvorak   | Copland    |

- The student will be able to enumerate specific contributions of the afore mentioned composers that makes their music important and remembered today.

IV. To develop self-expression and imagination through creative listening activities.

- The student will be able to respond to music with physical movements expressive of the tempo, meter, rhythm, melody, harmony and mood.

- The student will be able to respond orally to music in terms of the organization of the basic elements.
## LISTENING ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. To develop good listening habits</td>
<td>A. The children should have one listening experience a week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B. Provide purposeful listening experiences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Establish an atmosphere conducive to good listening by preparing and motivating students to be attentive, receptive and responsive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Instill habits of courtesy and proper audience conduct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a. Respect for performers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. Appreciation shown through applause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. To distinguish the elements and structure of music through listening</td>
<td>A. Melody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Does the melody move in chord line or scale line melodic patterns?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. On what tone does the melody start and finish?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Is the melody written in the major, minor or pentatonic scale?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B. Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Observe the patterns of repetition and contrast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Do the patterns fit familiar forms?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a. Rondo ABACADAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. Theme and variation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c. Canon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. Rhythm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Distinguish beat, accent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Rhythmic patterns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a. Complex patterns based on 2-1, 3-1 relationship in various meters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Record series:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRW records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adventures in Music Listening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musical Sound Books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCA Listening Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vox &quot;Music Masters&quot; Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Individual records</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR THE TEACHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B. Listen for something specific during each playing of a record; the rhythm, changes in tempo, dynamic contrasts, repeated phrases or sections, melody.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Refer to section on &quot;Exploring Music Through Listening&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HRW Teachers Edition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR THE TEACHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B. Records and lessons from HRW TE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concerts for Orchestra, p 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mississippi Suite, p 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fugue in D Major, p 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canon for String Quartet, p 167</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HRW TE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR THE TEACHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Let's Explore Rhythm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HRW TE, pp 8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRW TE, pp 8-9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GOALS

II. To distinguish the elements and structure of music through listening - cont.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. Syncopated patterns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Combination of rhythmic patterns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Overall effect of the music through a selection of or combination of the above.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. Harmony

1. Establish tonality
2. Identify I, V, IV chords (tonic, dominant and sub-dominant)
3. Identify major, minor or pentatonic scale
4. Identify dissonances used for special effect (producing tension, etc.)
5. Identify any interesting arrangement the composer uses to produce a certain effect.

E. Expression

1. Aware of the way tempo, and dynamics are used.
2. Aware of the choice of instruments used to interpret or add color to the composition.

III. To become acquainted with the music of various composers
**LISTENING ACTIVITIES**

**HELPS FOR CLASSROOM TEACHER**

3. "Mary Ann" - or Calypso song
   "Yankee Doodle Boy"

5. "Surprise Symphony" - sharp chord
   "On the Trail" - donkey clop
   "Dance Macabre" - xylophone for bones rattling
   "Carnival of Animals" - turtle plodding along
to the slowed down "Can Can" dance.

1. Listen for sudden changes in tempo, dynamics
   or meter.
2. Review tone qualities of the instruments used.

See summaries of these composers in the Appreciation
Resource Section.

Obtain books about composers in the school library.

Select excerpts by famous composers from "Specific Examples
of Listening Activities and Their Sources" in the Instrumental
Resource Section. These sources represent four
basic series:

- R.C.A. Listening Activities
- Adventures in Music Listening
- Musical Sound Books
- Vox "Music Masters" Series

Refer to lesson plans accompanying R.C.A. Listening Activi-
ties albums and Adventures in Music Listening.

Refer to library books, Music for Young Listeners, accom-
pangiing Musical Sound Book records.

No additional information is necessary in the Vox "Music
Masters" series. The teacher should, however, have
listened to the record in advance.

**MATERIALS**

HRW, TE, p. 189

HRW, TE

String Family, p 68
Brass Family, p 138
Woodwind Family, p 1
Percussion Family, p
III. To become acquainted with the music of various composers - cont.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A. Bach, Johann Sebastian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B. Chopin, Frederic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. Debussy, Claude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D. Dvorak, Antonin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>E. Foster, Stephen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F. Sousa, John Philip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HELPS FOR THE TEACHER</td>
<td>MATERIALS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bach</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. IMC - K-5071 Filmstrip - Record</td>
<td>A.M. Grade 3, Vol. I MSB 78039 Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Suite #2 - Bodinere</td>
<td>MSB 78040 Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The Cats Fugue</td>
<td>MSB 78041 Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Air</td>
<td>Vox MM 3500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Bourree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Oh Dearest Jesus Holy Child</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bach - His Story and His Music</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chopin</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. IMC - K-5069 Filmstrip and record</td>
<td>MSB 78044 Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. RCA, Vol. 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Etude in G Flat Major</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Chopin - His Story and His Music</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Debussy</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. IMC - K-5048 Children's Corner Suite - Filmstrip and record</td>
<td>R.C.A. Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Golliwogg's Cake Walk &quot;Children's Corner&quot;</td>
<td>R.C.A. Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The Little Shepherd &quot;Children's Corner&quot;</td>
<td>R.C.A. Vol. 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Clair de lune - Excerpt</td>
<td>A.M. Grade 6, Vol. 2 MSB 78036 Crimson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. La Mer - Play of the Waves</td>
<td>MSB 78037 Crimson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Doctor Gradus Ad Parnassum Serenada For the Doll Jumbo's Lullaby - &quot;Children's Corner&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The Snow is Dancing The Little Shepherd - &quot;Children's Corner&quot; Golliwogg's Cakewalk - &quot;Children's Corner&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dvorak</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. IMC - K-5010 New World Symphony</td>
<td>R.C.A. Volume 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Humoresque</td>
<td>A.M. Grade 4, Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Slavonic Dance #7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Foster</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Songs of Stephen Foster sung by the Robert Shaw Chorale (in building)</td>
<td>Vox MM 3620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Foster and Sousa, His Story</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sousa</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Stars and Stripes Forever Listening Lesson</td>
<td>HRW, TE, p. 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Stars and Stripes Forever</td>
<td>A.M. Grade 4, Vol. 2 Vox MM 3620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Foster and Sousa - His Story and His Music</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Semper Fedelis</td>
<td>A.M. Grade 3, Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GOALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>III. To become acquainted with the Music of Various composers - cont.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. Handel, George Frideric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H. Copland, Aaron</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IV. To develop self-expression and Imaginative through Creative Listening Activities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Physical Response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. marching, skipping, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dance and creative movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. group interpretation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Pantomime the story of the music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Oral or Written Response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Pictorial Response</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Materials</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MSB, Yellow label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRW, TE p 201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRW, TE p 25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### G. Handel
1. IMC - K-5053 "Handel's Messiah"
2. "Awake My Soul"
3. Excerpts from Messiah
4. Concerto, No. 25

### H. Copland
1. Hoe Down Listening Lesson
2. IMC - K-5007 Billy the Kid
3. IMC - K-5076 American Composers
   - "Buckaroo Holiday"
   - "Appalachian Spring"
4. The Red Pony
5. "Street in a Frontier Town"
6. "Hoe Down"

#### 3. Divide class into groups. Assign a theme or new musical idea to each group and have them respond as music is played.

#### 4. Add puppets and marionettes for interest.

#### B. This may be a good idea for creative writing.

#### C. Children should listen first then draw or paint figures, designs or colors to interpret the music.
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

A LESSON PLAN FOR LISTENING

A. Listening to "Grand Canyon Suite" - Ferde Grofe

This is an appropriate suite to be listened to in fifth grade because it represents a part of our country. It could be done by listening to one or two movements in one lesson as it has five separate movements, "The Sunrise," "The Painted Desert," "On the Trail," "Sunset," and "Cloudburst."

Step 1 - Locate the Grand Canyon on the map, discuss its size, etc. Show pictures if available.

Step 2 - Discuss the first movement, "Sunrise." Listen for the muffled roll of the timpani (kettle drums) as the dawn breaks over the rim of the Canyon. This is followed by the woodwinds as the light catches the vivid colors of the Canyon. Music grows brighter as dawn increases. The flute announces the birds.

Step 3 - Discuss the second movement, "The Painted Desert." This melody opens and ends in mystery painting a picture of the desolate landscape, broken only by cacti and scrub.

Step 4 - Discuss the third movement, "On the Trail." Picture yourself riding burros in the heart of the Grand Canyon. Listen for the burros announcement of departure with their "hee haws" and their hoof beats which form the rhythm for the time. You stop to view the canyon and then proceed passing a little waterfall (celesta). It is nightfall when you finally arrive at the inn. This is the most famous movement.

Step 5 - Discuss the fourth movement, "Sunset." Trombones announce the ending of the day. The whole orchestra plays a good night song. The celesta reminds us of a waterfall in the distance.
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

MATERIALS

"Grand Canyon Suite,"
Grofe

Sunrise
Ferde' Grofe'

The Painted Desert
Ferde' Grofe'

On the Trail (Theme one)
Ferde' Grofe'

On the Trail (Theme two)
Ferde' Grofe'

Ferde' Grofe'
GOALS

LISTENING ACTIVITIES

Step 6 - Discuss the fifth movement, "Cloudburst." The theme of "On the Trail" is repeated. We hear thunder in the background. The rain falls in torrents. Quickly the storm disappears and the Canyon lies tranquil.

PREPARATION FOR THE YOUNG PEOPLE'S CONCERT

A. Listen to a selection played by a full symphony orchestra.
   Example: "Peter and the Wolf" - Prokofiev

B. Make a chart showing the seating arrangement of a symphony orchestra.

C. Discuss the Minnesota Symphony Orchestra:
   - When and where they perform
   - How often they rehearse
   - Prepare for concert by studying program notes on the works to be performed (see Music Consultant)
   - Review instruments of the orchestra
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

The sections of the orchestra

- tympani
- tenor & bass trombones
- tuba
- horns
- bass clarinet
- clarinets
- bassoons
- double bassoon
- piccolo
- oboes
- English horn
- flutes
- violas
- cellos
- harp
- conductor

MATERIALS

- Pictures in building and IMC
- Books available in some school libraries:
  - "Tune Up," Huntington
  - "Musical Books for Young People"
  - "Shining Brass"
  - "The Woodwinds"
  - "The Heart of the Orchestra"
VOCAL RESOURCE

The Moveable "Do" System of Music Reading

The system of note reading taught in the Bloomington Elementary Schools is the moveable "do" system and uses the syllables to describe the various tones. This system is based upon the chromatic scale of thirteen tones within the normal octave illustrated as follows:

One Octave Ascending

One Octave Descending

The underlined syllables are those normally used to describe the eight tones used in the diatonic major scale. The steps between these tones are not all of equal size, some being whole steps, some half steps, as evidenced by the irregular pattern of notes underlined in the above illustration. However, a regular scale pattern is established as follows:

Due to this irregularity of steps, it is of great importance to determine the position of a given note in the scale before determining if the next note is one whole step or one-half step higher or lower. For example, in the illustration below, to sing from "fa" to the note below it "mi", one-half step is taken. On the other hand, to sing from "fa" to the next note higher "sol", one whole step would be taken. Therefore, it is important to establish the tonality relationship, or the scale, for a song when determining the first or beginning note.

---
The ability to read music notation without direction, which is a basic objective in our music program, is facilitated through the use of this system in that the relationship between syllables is constant, regardless of the key in which the song is written.

To help identify the scale for a particular song, it is necessary to recognize the three basic rules for finding "do" or the beginning note of the scale. These rules are most simply stated in this manner:

1. When there are no sharps or flats, the key is "C" and "do" is on the "C" line or space.

2. When there are sharps in the key signature, the right hand sharp is "ti". Count up or down to "do".

3. When there are flats in the key signature, the right hand flat is "fa". Count up or down to "do".

In utilizing the information, the teacher and children can find the proper scale and identify the whole and half steps as they exist before beginning to sing the song.

In reading a song by note, the children just identify the syllables, then sing them using a pointing finger to progress from syllable to syllable. This can be done a variety of ways and reference should be made to the recommendations for note reading in the Guide.

Altered tones, that is notes that are changed by accidentals (sharps, flats, or natural signs) not in the key signature, occur in the music. These changes are used to effect tonal effects that are desired by the composer. (Common examples of these are: fa = fi; ti = te.) These and all other altered tones can be seen in the chromatic scale. They are all the tones which are not found in the diatonic major scale.

The four basic scales referred to in this Guide are explained on the following page.
Natural minor scale - Eight tones forming -
the following pattern: (Natural Minor Scale)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>la</th>
<th>ti</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>re</th>
<th>mi</th>
<th>fa</th>
<th>sol</th>
<th>la</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Harmonic minor scale - Eight tones forming
the following pattern: (Harmonic Minor Scale)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>la</th>
<th>ti</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>re</th>
<th>mi</th>
<th>fa</th>
<th><em>si</em></th>
<th>la</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Melodic minor scale - Eight tones forming
the following pattern: (Melodic Minor Scale)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>la</th>
<th>ti</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>re</th>
<th>mi</th>
<th>fi</th>
<th><em>si</em></th>
<th>la</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* "si" is sol raised one-half step.

A note of historical interest which may be pointed out is that
Guido of Arezzo, a Benedictine monk, planned a method of teaching the
reading of music, improved the system of writing notes and established
a six-tone scale. He noticed a hymn that went up one degree with each
of the first six lines, so he used the first syllables of the first word
in each line to name the tones of the scale.

Ut queant laxis
Mira gestorum
Solve polluti
Resonare fibris
Famuli tuorum
Labii reatum Sancte Joannes

Ut was changed to do, ti was added and from this our scale was
evolved.
HAND SIGNALS

doi 8

ti 7

ta 6
	sol 5

fa 4

mi 3

re 2

do 1
Songs from *Exploring Music* listed according to key.

These songs have been categorized by key in order to make choosing a song for note singing easier for the teacher.

**Songs in the key of F**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Down in the Valley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Ifca's Castle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Himmel and Erde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>My Wagon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Oleana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Simple Gifts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>A-Roving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Erie Canal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>Old Joe Clark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>Good Morning Blues (me mi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Sweet Potatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>Jeanie with the Light Brown Hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>The Little Old Sad Shanty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>No Wood-Fire and No-Coal Flame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124</td>
<td>Es Tonen die Lieder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>Dogie Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145</td>
<td>The Railroad.Cars Are Coming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147</td>
<td>Pretty Peña</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>152</td>
<td>Deep in the Heart of Texas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158</td>
<td>Come, Come Ye Saints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>Old Farmer John</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175</td>
<td>Let a Smile Be Your Umbrella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>179</td>
<td>Praise O Praise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189</td>
<td>Mary Ann</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td>Finnish Shepherd Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205</td>
<td>In the Bleak Mid-Winter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Songs in D Minor**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Shalom, Chaverim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Come to the Land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Riddles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Farewell, My Own True Love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>The Shanty - Man's Life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196</td>
<td>O Hanukkah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Songs in key of G**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Yankee Doodle Boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Il était un avocat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Skye Boat Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Hey, Ho! Anybody Home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Columbia the Gem of the Ocean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Old Hundredth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Boston Come-All-Ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>The Derby Ram</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Songs in key of G - cont'd.

82  Swing Low Sweet Chariot
88  Lonesome Valley (Pentatonic Scale)
100  The Bugle Song
108  The Farmer is the Man
109  Red River Valley
122  Valleys Green, You are My Joy
165  Aboline
168  Na lei o Hawaii (?)
178  Sing Your Way Home
180  For All the Love
193  Now Thank We All Our God
195  Good Bless America

Songs in E Minor

48  The Coasts of High Barbary
112  Bound for the Promised Land
116  The Praties They Grow Small

Songs in keys of E♭ or E

13  Give Me Your Tired, Your Poor
45  In Joyful Hymns of Praise
57  Shenandoah
66  Coorie Doon
71  Sourwood Mountain
84  Somebody's Knocking at Your Door
86  Two Wings
114  Hans Skal Leve
154  Jingle, Jangle, Jingle
164  Alaska's Flag
181  Rock of Ages
186  Leron, Leron
197  Here We Come A Wassailing
206  Watt's Nativity Carol

Songs in key of C

38  Who is the Man?

Songs in key of A, A♭, B♭, D, and D♭

5  The Rattle Sna-wa-wake
106  Schuckin of the Corn (D)
125  Song of the Raftmen (D)
130  Over the Meadow (B♭)
182  The Stars Spangled Banner (B♭)
Songs in key of A, A, B, D, and D - cont'd.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>188</td>
<td>How Chun Koh (D&lt;sup&gt;♭&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>198</td>
<td>March of the Kings (A&lt;sup&gt;♭&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Joy to the World (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208</td>
<td>Duermete, Niño Lindo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Songs in F Minor**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Song of the Sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>172</td>
<td>Spring Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>198</td>
<td>March of the Kings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>How Far is Bethlehem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Songs in C Minor**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>Sad Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>Charlie is My Darlin'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Songs in the Pentatonic Scale**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>Sourwood Mountain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>Swing Low Sweet Chariot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>Lonesome Valley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>The Sunrise Call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>The Colorado Trail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188</td>
<td>How Chun Koh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Songs in key of F

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Follow On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Lovely Evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147</td>
<td>Let Now the Harp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>The Wakeful Brook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>Tramp an' (#fa = &quot;fi&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Clementine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>De Glendy Burk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Sourwood Mountain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128</td>
<td>My Wagon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Cotton-Eyed Joe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>Will You Dance?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>The Three Pirates (#)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151</td>
<td>Git Along Little Dogies (#)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Bluebonnets of Texas (#)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Little Turtle Dove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>Roll on, Columbia (#fa = &quot;fi&quot;; vte - &quot;te&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>God of Our Fathers (#fa = &quot;fi&quot;; vte - &quot;te&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td>Good Christian Men, Rejoice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>This Loveliness</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Songs in D Minor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Canoe Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>Down the Stream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Two Thousand Miles to Go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>170</td>
<td>Land of the Silver Birch (#)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Happy are They (#)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Songs in key of G

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Soldier, Soldier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Springfield Mountain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Down in the Valley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Frog Music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165</td>
<td>Reveille</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>On a Long Summer Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>Captain Jinks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176</td>
<td>Alouette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>171</td>
<td>Lukey's Boat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Doney Gal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Cornstalk Fiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>Just Whistle A Bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129</td>
<td>The Four Weavers (#)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>The Boston Come-All-Ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Whippoorwill</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What Does Echo Say
Jolly Wee Miner (#fa = "fi")
Dinah (#fa = "fi")
Frog Went A-Courting' (#ti = "te")

Song in E Minor

Birds' Courtin' Song

Songs in keys of E, V, or E

Awake, You Lazy Sleepers
Lotte Walked
Rise Up, Shepherd, and Foller!
St. Patrick's Shore (♯)
Rock of Ages
Away for Rio
Let's Keep American Beautiful (#ti = "te")
The Swing (♯) (#fa = "fi")

Songs in key of C

The Deaf Woman's Courtship
In the King's Garden
The Herdsman
The Oregon Grape (♯)
Come, Let Us Be Joyful (♯)
There Was a Young Lady from Niger (♯)
There Was An Old Lady of Steen (♯) (#fa = "fi")
Eternal Father (#fa = "fi")
Ode to America (#fa = "fi")
Goin' to Boston (#ti = "te")

Songs in keys of A, B, and D

I Wonder When I Shall Be Married (♯) (#fa = "fi")
Snug 'Neath the Fir Trees (#fa = "fi")
The Spanish Guitar (♯)
Calling Me Back Home

Song in C Minor

Rise Up, O Flame

Song in A Minor

Sunset Song
INSTRUMENTAL RESOURCE

Songs for Autoharp (Keys of C, F and G)

One-Chord Songs:

Choral Grade
F F F F F
For health and strength and daily food
F F F F F
We give Thee thanks, O Lord.

ARE YOU SLEEPING?
F F F F F
Are you sleeping, Are you sleeping?
F F F F F
Brother John, Brother John?
F F F F F
Morning bells are ringing, Morning bells are ringing.
F F F F F
Ding ding dong, ding ding dong.

LITTLE TOM TINKER
C C C C
Little Tom Tinker got burned with a clinker
C C C C
And he began to cry,
C C C C
"Oh, Mamma! Oh, Mamma!
C C C C
What a poor fellow am I."

Two-Chord Songs:

MARY HAD A LITTLE LAMB
F F F F F C7 C7 F F
Mary had a little lamb, little lamb, little lamb.
F F F F F C7 C7 F
Mary had a little lamb, its fleece was white as snow.

MULBERRY BUSH
G G G B D7 D7
Here we go round the mulberry bush, the mulberry bush,
D7 D7
the mulberry bush
G G G G D7 D7 G G
Here we go round the mulberry bush so early in the morning.
TEN LITTLE INDIANS
G G G G
One little, two little, three little Indians
D7 D7 D7 D7
Four little, five little, six little Indians
G G G G
Seven little, eight little, nine little Indians
D7 D7 G
Ten little Indian boys!

SUSIE LITTLE SUSIE
F F C7 F
Susie, little Susie, now what is the news?
Susie, little Susie, some pennies I pray.

F F C7 F
The geese are going barefoot because they've no shoes.
To buy a little supper of sugar and whey.

C7 F C F
The cobbler has leather, but no last has he,
I'll sell my nice bed, and go sleep on the straw.

F F C7 F
So he cannot make them the shoes, don't you see?
Feathers will not tickle and mice will not gnaw.

ROW YOUR BOAT
C C C C C C C C
Row, row, row your boat, gently down the stream,
C C C C C C G7 G7 C C
Merrily, merrily, merrily, merrily, life is but a dream.

MISTER FINNEGAN (Tune: Ten Little Indians)
G G G G
There was an old man named Mister Finnegan
There was an old man named Mister Finnegan.

D7 D7 D7 D7
He grew whiskers on his chin negan
He grew fat and then grew thin again.

G G G G
Along came the wind and blew them in again
Then he died so we have to begin again.

D7 D7 G G
Poor old Mister Finnegan!
Poor old Mister Finnegan!
DOWN BY THE STATION
F F C7 F
Down by the station so early in the morning
F F C7 F
See the little pufferbillies all in a row
F F C7 F
See the stationmaster turn a little handle,
F F C7 F
Puff! puff! toot! toot! Off we go!

ITSY - BITSY SPIDER
F F C7 F
Itsy - bitsy spider went up the waterspout,
F F C7 F
Down came the rain and washed the spider out,
F F C7 F
Out came the sun and dried up all the rain,
F F C7 F
And the itsy - bitsy spider went up the spout again.

THIS OLD MAN
F F F F F
This old man, he played one,
F F C7 C7
He played nick-nack on my drum.
F F F F
Nick-nack, paddy wack, give a dog a bone,
C7 C7 C7 F
This old man came rolling home.

WHERE HAS MY LITTLE DOG GONE?
F F C7 C7
Oh where, oh, where has my little dog gone?
C7 C7 F F
Oh, where, oh, where can he be?
F F C7 C7
With his tail cut short and his ears cut long,
C7 C7 F F
Oh where, oh, where can he be?

THE PAWPAW PATCH
F F F F F
Where oh where is dear little Mary?
C7 C7 C7 C7
Where oh where is dear little Mary?
F F F F
Where oh where is dear little Mary?
C7 C7 F F
Way down yonder in the pawpaw patch.
GO TELL AUNT RHODIE
G G
Go tell Aunt Rhodie
D7 G
Go tell Aunt Rhodie
G G
Go tell Aunt Rhodie
D7 G
The old gray goose is dead.

Three-Chord Songs:

TWINKLE, TWINKLE LITTLE STAR
F F B flat F C7 F C7 F
Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are!
F C7 F C7 F C7 F C7
Up above the world so high, Like a diamond in the sky,
F F B flat F C7 F C7 F
Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are!

YANKEE DOODLE
G G G D7 G G G D7
Yankee Doodle went to town, a-riding on a pony!
G G C C D7 D7 G G
He stuck a feather in his cap, and called it macaroni.
C C C G G G
Yankee Doodle keep it up, Yankee Doodle dandy,
C C C G G D7 G G
Mind the music and the step and with the girls be handy!

MY BONNIE
C F C C C C G7 G7
My Bonnie lies over the ocean; My Bonnie lies over the sea;
C F C F G7 C C
My Bonnie lies over the ocean; Oh, bring back my Bonnie to me.
C C F F G7 G7 C C
Bring back, bring back, oh bring back my Bonnie to me, to me
C C F F G7 G7 C C
Bring back, bring back, oh bring back my Bonnie to me!

GLORY, GLORY, HALLELUJAH
C C C C
Glory, glory, hallelujah!
F F C C
Glory, glory, hallelujah!
C C C C
Glory, glory, hallelujah!
F G7 C C
His truth is marching on.
AWAY IN A MANGER

G G C G
Away in a manger, no crib for a bed,
D7 D7 G G
The little Lord Jesus laid down his sweet head;
G G C G
The stars in the sky looked down where he lay,
D7 G D7 G
The little Lord Jesus asleep on the hay.

JINGLE BELLS

G G G G
Jingle bells! Jingle bells! Jingle all the way!
C G D7 D7 G
Oh what fun it is to ride in a one-horse open sleigh!
G G G G
Jingle bells! Jingle bells! Jingle all the way!
C G D7 G
Oh what fun it is to ride in a one-horse open sleigh!
Sample of Autoharp Chart

Strum Here

Gm Min

A7 Sev.

Dm Min.

E7 Sev.

Am Min.

D7 Sev.

Gb Maj.

C7 Sev.

F Maj.

G7 Sev.

C Maj.

G Maj.
Two and Three-Chord Songs for Autoharp
from the Follett text in the keys of C, F and G

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Frog Music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>There Was A Young Lady From Niger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Good night, Ladies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>The Deaf Woman's Courtship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Down in the Valley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Springfield Mountain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>On a Long Summer Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Cindy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Captain Jinks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Come, Let Us Be Joyful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>What Does Echo Say?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Cuckoo Fallera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>In the King's Garden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>My Wagon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>139</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Crystal Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Doney Gal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>The Marines' Hymn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>169</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Kohala's Breezes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>168</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>At the Gate of Heaven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>171</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Alouette</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A MUSICAL TALE

A farmer's son wanted to be a farmer, too, when he grew up. He liked to help his father with the chores. He gathered the chickens, gathered eggs, and helped load up the horses. He also helped load the horses into the truck. When wasn't helping his father, he liked to lie on his back and under the cherry tree.

With his toward the sky, he could the robins eating their fill of ripe cherries. He could hear their sweet of thanks when they had finished. When the sun began to set in the west, would hurry into the house for dinner.

One evening after dinner, and his mother made fudge. His mother let him the sugar and milk and beat the batter till it was done. Then they sat and ate the fudge. When the clock struck eight was glad to go to bed, for he was tired.
ABE LINCOLN

Lincoln was an honest lad, who toiled from morn till night

He worked the farm to help his and always did things right

His parents were of common clay, as plain as plain could

They watched him closely day by day, but let his thoughts run free

They him on most wholesome fare, of and bread

And helped him build noble name, that never will

He always thought it good to shatter

An honest plea to him was . In vain it did not

No or chain could fetter him, or from his

The warmth of twinkling eye, and grin that held thru darkest days

of honor his ideal, noble heart to aid.

Is why the name of honest will never, never
FRANZ JOSEPH HAYDN 1732 - 1809

At home, Haydn's ♫ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♩ ♪ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩ ♪ ♩
LISTENING RESOURCE

Composers

*Johann Sebastian Bach (yō'han sa ba'ti an' bach)
Born: Eisenach, Germany, March 21, 1685
Died: Leipzig, Germany, July 28, 1750

Johann Sebastian Bach was born in a family of musicians. Seven generations of Bachs were professional musicians and two of his own sons, Karl Philipp Emanuel Bach and Johann Christian Bach were considered to be far greater musicians than their father.

He was a very poorly educated man. His handwriting was almost illegible, he read very little except religious books and his speech was ungrammatical. But one hundred years after his death the world began to realize his greatness as a musician.

In 1850, the Bach Gesellschaft was formed for the purpose of gathering and publishing all his work. It took fifty years to complete this task. While Bach lived and composed all this music, he also served as an organist, conductor, musical director of church services and even a teacher of a class of boys.

His father and mother died when he was only ten years old and he was taken into the home of his older brother, Johann Cristoph. He soon learned all his brother could teach him about the clavier, a small keyboard instrument which was the forerunner of the piano as we know it.

When he was eighteen years old, he became organist at a new church at Arnstadt. From there, he went to Mühlhausen and later returned to Weimar as court organist and chamber musician for the Duke. By this time, he was famous as an organist and composer in Germany and he was called to the court of King Ferdinand Augustus to compete in a harpsichord contest. The other player who heard him warming up his fingers before the contest refused to play. The last twenty-seven years of his life were spent as the cantor of the St. Thomasschule in Leipzig.

His first wife died in 1720 and a year later he married again. He was the father of twenty children, seven by his first wife and thirteen by his second, but many of these children died as infants and in early childhood.

He was a deeply religious man and his life revolved around the church and his music. It is easy to see why most of his music has religious themes. "The Passion According to St. John," "The Passion According to St. Matthew," the "Mass in B Minor" are considered to be among the greatest epical musical works ever written.
He was also the first composer to write concertos for the piano, or strictly speaking, the clavier and harpsichord.

The piano, as we know it, was unknown. However, one of the reasons he is called the "father of our modern music" is because he began the system of accurate keyboard tuning which we use today. Today we take our piano scales for granted but Johann Sebastian Bach was the man who made it possible to express music on the keyboard as we are able to do it.

Listening Suggestions for Bach:

1. Suite #2 - Bodinerie
2. The Cats Fugue
   Pastorale in D Minor
   Scarlotti Minuet in G
   March in D
3. Air
   Gavottes I and III
   Suite #3 in D Major
4. Bourree
   Gigue "Suite #3 in D Major"
   How Shall I Fitly Meet Thee?
   Oh Dearest Jesus Holy Child
5. Suite #3 - Gigue
6. Suite #3 - Air
7. Bach - His Story and His Music
Frederic Chopin (shō'pan)
Born: Aelazowa Wola, Poland
Died: Paris, October 17, 1849

Frederic Chopin was one of the first composers of nationalistic music.

Chopin's father, a Frenchman, had emigrated to Poland, married a
Polish wife, and taught his native language at the University. His
mother taught Frederic the tragic story of Poland and how it had been
divided among the greedy countries around it. The for studied com-
position and other subjects at the Warsaw University where his father
taught French. When he was seventeen, he left school to devote his life
to music.

When Chopin was twenty, he left home and Poland with a goblet of
Polish soil never to return. He was already a full-fledged pianist
and composer. When he reached Paris, the home of his father, he stayed
there the rest of his life.

Chopin was the first composer to devote his life to a sing
instrument. He has been called the "poet of the Piano." He composed
practically nothing for any other instrument or for the voice.

The rhythmic patterns Chopin used for his music were often such
traditional ones as the mazurka, the waltz or the polonaise. The melody
was always in simple A-B-A tenary song from. It was a music with sweet
and sad tone pictures.

With his second published composition, a set of variations from
Mozart's "Don Giovanni," he became widely known as a composer.

All of Chopin's compositions are little tone pictures of his feelings.
Some are taken from his own life--the dreamy nocturnes, the little preludes
and the D flat waltz, written when he was visiting George Sand, the
novelist, on the Island of Majorca.

His great sonata in B flat minor was founded on a poem of old
Poland. His four "Ballades" tell in tones the stories of four works by
Poland's greatest poet. His "Etudes" or studies were not mere exercises
but musical sketches. His great "Military Polonaise" contains majesty
and grandeur with the roll of drums and the beat of horses' hoofs in
the accompaniment.

His finest works include four ballades, four scherzos, about forty
mazurkas, more than twenty-five etudes, more than twenty nocturnes,
about eighteen polonaises, eighteen waltzes, a barcarolle, a berceuse,
a bolero, a fantasie, a fantasia impromptu, three impromptus, a tarantelle
and a rondo.

Listening Suggestions for Chopin:
1. Etude in G Flat Major
   Prelude in D Flat #15
3. Chopin - His Story and His Music
*Aaron Copland* (ar'en köp' lend)
Born: Brooklyn, New York, November 14, 1900

Aaron Copland is one of America's favorite contemporary composers. He was born in Brooklyn, New York. His parents were born in Lithuania. The original family name was "Kaplan," but when Aaron Copland's father immigrated from Lithuania to England, he pronounced his name so that the officials spelled it "Copland" and it has been spelled that way ever since.

Copland studied piano as a boy. After he graduated from high school, he continued to study piano and had harmony and composition lessons from Rubin Goldmark. Goldmark was also George Gershwin's teacher. After four years of study and composing, Copland went to France to study with the great teacher, Nadia Boulanger of Fontainebleau. Continuing his composing after he returned home, he was the first composer to receive the Guggenheim Fellowship. His "Dance Symphony" won him a five thousand dollar prize. Hollywood paid him to write the music for such well known films as "Our Town," "Of Mice and Men," and "The Red Pony."

In 1910, Copland composed the music for the ballet, "Rodeo." The famous Agnes de Mille created the dances to go with the music. The work was first performed by the American Ballet in this country. Later it was taken on the Ballet's European tour and enthusiastically acclaimed as a great American ballet. This music for the ballet is so composed that even though you have not seen it danced you can imagine just what is happening.

Listening Suggestions for Copland:

1. *Billy the Kid Ballet Suite* - Street in a Frontier Town
   A.M. Grade 6, Volume 1
2. *The Red Pony Suite* - Circus Music
   A.M. Grade 3, Volume 1
3. *Rodeo* - Hoe-Down
   A.M. Grade 5, Volume 2
Claude Debussy (clod de bu še')
Born: St. Germain-en-Laye, France, August 22, 1862
Died: Paris, March 25, 1918

Claude Achille Debussy did so well as a child with his piano lessons that by the time he was eleven years old, he had passed the examination for the Paris Conservatory. He finished his conservatory course by winning the Prix de Rome for his composition "Prodigal Son." This stroke of luck enabled him to study in Rome.

The music that Debussy composed was not like that of other musicians. He seldom used the major and minor scales as they were used in most great music. He was very much interested in the strange scales found in the folk music of wild Eastern tribes. Sometimes he went back to the quaint old modes of the early church music. More often he used a whole tone scale. The scale Debussy liked best had six notes and no half tones at all (C, D, E, F sharp, G sharp and A sharp). So his tones and harmonies were different from any ever heard before.

Perhaps one reason Debussy did so many daring things with music was because no musician before had ever had such a sensitive ear. Whenever he heard a note struck, he often heard another note five tones above sound with it. Then he realized that what he was actually hearing was the first overtone.

From these tones that people did not even know they heard, Debussy built his weird, unearthly music. In his orchestra he used different combinations of instruments to give soft, shimmering effects.

Sometimes the kind of music Debussy wrote is called impressionistic. There was a school of painters and poets in France called impressionists and he tried to get the same effects in music that they did with paintings. As a painter discovered a whole new set of "color notes" by stippling their canvasses with separate dots of color, so did Debussy make use of new tonal effects that formerly gave offense to the agreeable sound of harmony. In his use of new harmonies and tone color, Debussy was the pioneer of modern music.

Highly strewn with flecks of instrumental color are such works as "Prelude to the Afternoon of a Faun" (1894), "The Sea" (1905), and "Images" (1909).

In "Suite Bergamasque" (1905) for piano, which contains the beautiful "Clair de Lune," Debussy used new harmonic effects that he described as "experiments in musical chemistry." He colored works such as "Pellea's and Melisande" (1902) and "Prelude for Piano" (1910 and 1913) with the sensations of touch, tast, sight and sound.
All of Debussy's works are not impressionistic. Other works such as "The Children's Corner" and "Minstrels" show the influence of American Negro musicians and foreshadow the influence of jazz on latter composers.

Listening Suggestions for Debussy:

1. Golliwogg's Cake Walk "Children's Corner"  
2. The Little Shepherd "Children's Corner"  
3. Clair de lune - Excerpt  
4. La Mer - Play of the Waves  
5. Doctor Gradus Ad Parnassum  
   Serenada For the Doll  
   Jumbo's Lullaby - "Children's Corner"  
6. The Snow is Dancing  
   The Little Shepherd - "Children's Corner"  
   Golliwogg's Cakewalk - "Children's Corner"
Antonin Dvorak (an'ton dvor'zhak)
Born: Muhlhausen, near Prague, Bohemia, September 8, 1841
Died: Prague, Bohemia, May 1, 1904

Dvorak grew up surrounded by music at home and at school. He learned to sing and play the organ, violin and piano. At the age of sixteen, he went to Prague to study music seriously. Here he played the viola in a theater orchestra and the organ in church on Sundays. He was always writing music and now and then one of his compositions would be played or an opera of his would be given.

Brahms helped Dvorak get a government scholarship grant, helped him with money and persuaded his own publisher to take him on. One of his operas succeeded and he became famous for his "Slavonic Dances." He was decorated by the American government and received an honorary degree from the University of Cambridge in England.

Now a famous composer, Dvorak came to the United States in 1892 to serve as director of the National Conservatory of Music in New York. He gave America his richest musical gifts.

The high point of his two years in America was a visit to the small, almost completely Czech community of Spillville in Iowa. Here the Dvoraks and their six children spent a happy summer. The people in the street spoke Czech, but the occasional Iroquois Indians and the wide free plains were American. Dvorak played the organ in the church every morning. Five days after his arrival in Spillville, he had written a string quartette.

Dvorak loved the folk music of the New World, the Negro and Indian music, and the simple songs of Stephen Foster. The "Humoresque," which was composed in the United States, is based on the same chords as Foster's "Old Folks At Home".

The "New World Symphony" is one of the greatest of all symphonies. Dvorak did not simply copy Negro and Indian themes. He made them his own, inspired by the music of the Negro and the Indian, and the barn dances and husking bees of the American settlers. The beautiful "Largo" is perhaps the best known of all symphonic music. It is in the spirit of the Negro spiritual and is often sung like a spiritual to the words, "Goin' Home." In the "New World Symphony," Dvorak composed his masterpiece and also the greatest pieces of music ever inspired by our country.

Some of Dvorak's best known songs are the ten Biblical songs and the seven gypsy songs, including the famous "Songs My Mother Taught Me."

The exciting "Carnival Overture" was composed on one of his many trips to England.

Listening Suggestions for Dvorak:
1. Humoresque R.C.A. Volume 1
2. Slavonic Dance #7 A.M. Grade 4, Volume 2
Stephen Foster
Born: July 4, 1826
Died: January 13, 1864

The American song-composer Stephen C. Foster was the ninth child of William Barclay Foster, a man active in the business and political life of Pittsburgh. Although Stephen showed musical talent from earliest childhood, little was done to encourage it and no effort was made to give the lad musical training. In his youth and early manhood he may have had a few rudimentary lessons from Henry Kleber, a German musician resident in Pittsburgh, but otherwise the little knowledge of musical theory that he gained was entirely self-acquired. It was in the Spring of 1841 that his first known musical composition was performed--"Tioga Waltz". In 1841 he entered Jefferson College, but remained there less than a week.

For the next five years he was at home with his family, living principally in Allegheny, Pa., where his father served several terms as Mayor. Family correspondence in these years shows much concern over Stephen's future. Few seemed to understand his "idle, dreaming ways," and his "strange talent for music." An attempt was made in 1846 to obtain a West Point appointment for him, but it was not successful. He was, however, beginning his career as a song writer, and in 1844 his first published song, "Open Thy Lattice, Love," appeared. For a social organization called the "Knights of the S.T." he wrote and composed several songs which he introduced to minstrel performers who visited Pittsburgh. Among them were "Old Uncle Ned," "Louisiana Belle," and probably the famous "Oh! Susanna."

"Oh! Susanna," first issued in 1848, became highly popular with the "forty-niners" who joined the gold-rush to California, and the vogue of the song quickly established Foster's reputation.

He was married in 1850 and it was in the early years of his marriage that his best songs were published--"Old Folks at Home" (1851), "Camptown Races" (1850), "My Old Kentucky Home" (1853), "Massa's in de Cold, Cold Ground" (1852), "Come Where My Love Lies Dreaming" (1855), and others.

Altogether Foster published 200 songs and instrumental compositions. The latter are negligible, but the best of the songs form the most important group of people's songs that have ever come from the pen of any composer. At least 25 are still constantly sung, and not less than 50 are worthy of preservation. They are probably the most typically American expression that any composer has yet achieved.

Listening Suggestions for Foster:

1. Foster and Sousa - His Story and His Music
   Vox MM 3590
Stephen Collins Foster
*George Frederic Handel
Born: February 23, 1685
Died: April 14, 1759

Unlike Bach, who was born in the same year, Handel did not come from a musical family. His father allowed him to study music as age nine with the local organist, but refused the further musical education offered by the court of Berlin where Handel played at eleven. At his family's insistence Handel began the study of law, but lasted only one year and left to seek wider musical experience as violinist in the opera house in Hamburg.

After successfully producing his first two operas in Hamburg, Handel went to Italy and his visits to Florence, Rome, Venice and Naples between 1706-10 gained him a reputation as a composer.

Learning of England's appetite for Italian opera, he visited London in 1710, returning the following year for a short visit that turned into a life-long stay. Handel enjoyed great favor with the royal family and had a number of other very influential patrons.

After recovering from a severe stroke in 1737, Handel turned to composing instrumental works and oratorios. "The Messiah" was first performed in 1741 and was immediately successful.

In spite of deteriorating health he continued to appear as soloist in his organ concertos, but due to increasing blindness it became necessary for Handel to dictate his compositions the last six years of his life. He never married.

Listening Suggestions for Handel:

1. Royal Fireworks Music - Bourree, Menuetto No. 2
   A.M. Grade 3, Volume 2
2. Water Music - Hornpipe
   A.M. Grade 2
John Philip Sousa (soo'za)
Born: Washington, D.C., 1854
Died: 1932

Sousa was America's most famous composer of band music. He was also a noted bandmaster. He became a conductor of an orchestra at the age of seventeen. He led the United States Marine Corps Band from 1880 to 1897 when he founded his own band. Between 1900 and 1906, Sousa and his band made four tours of Europe and later toured the world.

Sousa served as musical director for the United States Army during the Spanish-American War. In World War I, he organized bands at the Great Lakes Naval Training Center.

His compositions include the marches, "Semper Fidelis," "Stars and Stripes Forever," "El Capitan," and "High School Cadets." He wrote several comic operas. Sousa left his collection of band music to the University of Illinois concert band.

Listening Suggestions for Sousa:

1. Stars and Stripes Forever A.M. Grade 4, Volume 2
2. Foster and Sousa - His Story and His Music Vox MM 3620
This glossary contains definitions of terms used in this handbook and such additional terms as seem necessary for common understandings concerning procedures for music instruction.

Inasmuch as each program of music instruction establishes its own goals and uses somewhat unique materials, it is only reasonable to assume it makes unique demands on its teachers as to their knowledge of content. For this reason, the following information has been compiled to aid teachers to know and understand what content demands will be placed upon them. Few teachers will use all of this information in any year; however, it is well for them to be aware of it.

Accent: More than usual stress.

Accidentals: Cancel or natural sign cancels the flat or sharp previously indicated by the key signature or by an accidental (a sharp or flat not in the key signature, added to alter a scale tone).

- **Sharp chromatic** raises the tone 1/2 step from its pitch in the scale; or restores the regular scale pitch after previous change by a cancel.

- **Flat chromatic** lowers the tone 1/2 step; or restores the regular scale pitch after previous change by a cancel.

Alle breve, or cut time, means 4 meter moving fast enough to feel two pulses per measure. It is equal to 2 but with quick movement as in marching.

Autoharp: A musical instrument designed to be used in chording in accompaniment with vocal music. It generally has twelve wooden bars marked with chord names, each of which produce a specific chord when depressed. The chord bars are lowered with the fingers of the left hand while the strings are strummed with the right hand. The instrument is held on the lap or placed on a table to be most readily played.

Brace: A vertical line at left end of two or more staves, meaning that the music of both staves happens at the same time.
Chord: Three or more tones sounded together harmonically.

Chord, tonic: A triad (a three-note chord built of thirds) based on "do" (do-mi-sol). (Also referred to as the I chord.)

Chord, dominant: A triad based on "sol" (sol-ti-re); also referred to as V chord.

Chord, dominant seventh: A triad based on "sol" (sol-ti-re-fa); also referred to as V7 chord.

Chord, sub-dominant: A triad based on "fa" (fa-la-do); also referred to as the IV chord.

Clef, treble, or G clef, gives pitch meaning to lines and spaces of the staff. It designates the second line the G above middle C.

Clef, bass, or F clef, designates the fourth line of the staff. The F below middle C.

Coda: A short tune added to a musical selection as a closing.

Common time: Means the same as 4/4 time.

D.C. or da capo: From the beginning. Repeat from the beginning to the end, or to the place marked Fine (means ending).

Directing procedures:

1. For music felt in twos, the arm movements are: up/down, up/down, up/ -- not just down like hitting the desk, but down with a little bounce or rebound curving outward. This gives lightness to the movement. The up movement is just the reverse, beginning with a slight down dip.

2. For music felt in threes, the arm movements: down/out, up/down, out/up/. (The out of count two is to the side, not to the front.)

3. When measures go with a feel of four, the arm movements are: down/in, out/up/down, in, out, up/.
Double bar: End of the piece.

D.S. (Dal Segno) or D.S. al Fine (pronounced fee-nay), from the sign. Go back to \( \frac{G}{S} \) (the sign) and sing or play to the FINE ending.

Dynamic markings:  
- Forte - loud  
- Fortissimo - very loud  
- Mezzo forte - medium loud  
- Piano - soft  
- Pianissimo - very soft  
- Mezzo piano - medium soft  
- Crescendo - gradually increasing in loudness  
- Descrescendo or diminuendo - gradually decreasing in loudness

Fermata or hold: Indicates longer duration than the note value. This is used for interpretive effect.

Fine: The end.

First and second endings: \( \text{\textsuperscript{1}} \) above the staff means to sing or play these notes the first time through, but when repeating, skip this part and go to the second ending marked \( \text{\textsuperscript{2}} \).

Grace note: An ornamental note, in small print, played or sung quickly and before the beat, but not counted in the note value of the measure.

Harmony: Two or more tones sounded together.

Intervals: The difference between any two notes, measured by degrees on the staff.

Key: A system of tone relationships following the pattern of a recognized scale, the keynote of which is "do", or the first tone of the scale.

Keyboard experiences: Making use of the piano keyboard as a visual aid to the teaching of music fundamentals.

Key signature: The number of sharps or flats, or absence of them, which occur on the staff immediately following the clef sign.

Leger (or ledger) line: Short lines written above or below the staff to extend the range of the staff.
Light double bar: End of the section; for example, end of introduction.

Melody: A pleasing succession of tones, usually having a pleasing rhythm.

Melody bells: A graduated series of marked flat metal bars mounted on a frame in xylophone fashion which are struck with a wooden mallet to reproduce indicated tones. These are used to accompany vocal or instrumental music.

Meter: The number of "beats" per measure, determined by the regularity of accents.

Music appreciation: Active listening to all types of music to broaden musical interest and enjoyment.

Notes: Symbols used to describe tone and duration. \[ \text{Whole} \quad \text{Half} \quad \text{Quarter} \quad \text{Eighth} \]

Note singing: Singing a song by reading music through the use of syllables.

Orff instruments: Mallet instruments designed to enrich the musical instruction of children.

Pianet: An electronic keyboard instrument with earphone attachments allowing for "silent" practice.

Piano: A musical instrument usually having eighty-eight black and white keys used to reproduce basic tones and groups of tones or chords. The keys of the piano reproduce tones represented on the staff as described below.

Pitch pipe: A flat, circular, tonal instrument used to locate pitch. The teacher first blows the note "do" as indicated by the key signature of the song, then sings up or down by syllables to the starting note of the song.
Repeat sign: Sing or play again from the previous repeat; or if there is no previous repeat sign, go back to the beginning.

Resonator bells: A set of individual tuned resonating bars made of plastic or wood, usually in sets of twenty.

Rests: Symbols used to describe duration of absence of tone.

Rhythm: The time relation among tones as expressed by strong and weak beats.

Rhythmic activities: Bodily movement to music through singing games and creative response.

Rhythm instruments: Cacophonous instruments used as an instrumental group and for special effects to songs and rhythmic activities.

Ritard: Gradually slower.

Rolled chord or arpeggio: Notes played one after another, starting with the lowest. An instrumental notation.

Rote singing: Singing songs by repetition and imitation utilizing the ability to listen and repeat.

Scalewise pattern or passage: Consecutive notes of a scale.

Select band: An instrumental group of pupils selected for musical aptitude and ability given special instruction who occasionally play as a school band.

Select chorus: A vocal group of pupils selected for good voices, given special instruction who occasionally sing at special performances.

Select strings: An instrumental group of pupils selected for musical aptitude and ability given special instruction and who occasionally play at special performances.

Slur: Singing two notes on one syllable of a word.

Staff: A series of alternate lines and spaces (5 lines and 4 spaces) on which notes are placed to show their pitch. The names are as indicated and are numbered from the bottom up. Each line and space is assigned a letter. The letter names are...
arranged alphabetically from the bottom up in the treble clef beginning with "e" and in the bass clef beginning with "g".

Syncopation: A temporary replacement of the regular rhythmic pulse.

Tempo: The speed at which a piece of music moves.

Tempo marking: (arranged from slow to fast)
- Largo - slow, noble and broad
- Maestoso - with majesty; slower than andante
- Andante - a walking tempo
- Moderato - moderate tempo
- Allegro - quickly (literally, cheerful)
- Presto - fast, faster than allegro

Tie: A curved line connecting two notes of the same pitch. The notes are to be sung or played as one note, sustained as long as the two note values added together.

Time signature or meter: The two numbers or symbols, on the staff immediately following the key signature. The following illustration has a 4 time signature. The lower number tells the kind of notes used as the unit of time measurement, (or the kind of note getting one beat) in this case the quarter note. The upper number tells how many such units (or beats) there are per measure.

Triplet: A group of three even notes played in the usual time of two similar ones, for example, three eighth notes played in the usual time of two eighth notes.

Tuned water glasses: A series of glasses or bottles of similar design gilled with varying amounts of water producing tones of varying pitches to form a scale when they are struck. They are used to provide accompaniment to vocal or instrumental music.
BIBLIOGRAPHY


General Music, (K-6). Rochester Public Schools, District #4. Rochester, Minn., 1966


Wolfe, Irving; Krone, Beatrice Perham; Fullerton, Margaret. Together We Sing Series (Grade 1-6). Chicago: Follett Publishing Company, 1959
MATERIALS, EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES

Texts:

EXPLORING MUSIC 6
EXPLORING MUSIC - T.E.
Voices of the World
Voices of the World - T.E.

Records:

EXPLORING MUSIC - Grade 6
Voices of the World #6
Adventures in Music Listening,
Grade 1-6
Musical Sound Books - records
RCA Listening Program, Albums 1-6

Additional Materials:

Tagboard staffs, sharps, flats, and notes
Chalkboard music staff liner
Pitch pipe
Music paper
Tape recorder
Tapes
Rhythm instruments
Autoharp
Threshold to Music Charts and Teacher's Manual
Melody bells
Resonator bells
Orff instruments (IMC)
Orff instrument guide
Piano (or pianet)
Record player

Teacher-made Materials:

Vertical syllable chart
Master copy of keyboard
Name tags for children for use during consultant demonstrations.
Flash cards for music symbols
Behavioral Objectives.

I. To sing in tune.

- Given the starting pitch, the student will be able to sing memorized songs in tune and with correct rhythm.

- The student will demonstrate proper voice production by singing with a light, pleasant tone quality.

- The student will be able to sing by memory twenty songs of varying types.

II. To develop rhythmically.

- The student will be able to write two measures of original rhythm for a given meter signature using at least one rest in each example.

- Given a list of rhythm patterns, some of which contain syncopations, the student will be able to select the syncopated patterns.

- Given the meter signature, the student will be able to write simple rhythm patterns from dictation.

- Given aural examples containing changing meters, the student will be able to identify when the music changes from one meter to another.

- Given a list of terms which describe various tempos, the student will define them verbally.

III. To read music.

- The student will be able to identify by letter names the lines and the spaces of the treble and bass clefs.

- Given the home tone, the student will be able to write the major scale on the staff and determine the key signature.

- Given the Italian words for 8 dynamic markings, the student will be able to write their definitions and abbreviations as used in music.

- The student will be able to read at sight songs in which the melody moves scalewise or incorporates intervals of a third, fourth, fifth and octave.

- The student will be able to build on the staff the natural
minor scale from a given key signature.
- The student will be able to identify by sight like-phrases, sequence and repetition in a song.

IV. To sing in harmony.
- The student will be able to sing an independent part in two and three-part homophonic and polyphonic songs.
- The student will be able to identify aurally the tonality of a song as being major or minor.
- The student will be able to identify major and minor chords by sound.

V. To create music.
- The student will be able to write simple descants or harmony parts for songs.
- Given a simple poem, the student will be able to put it to music with appropriate meter and a sense of unity.
I. Recognition of Music Symbols (Matching)

1. sixteenth rest
2. quarter note
3. eighth rest
4. natural or cancel sign
5. sixteenth note
6. decrescendo or diminuendo sign
7. accent
8. bass clef sign
9. dotted eighth note

II. Recognition of Music Terms (Matching)

1. DaCapo (D.C.)
2. maestoso
3. allegro
4. Dal Segno (D.S.)
5. largo
6. piano (p)
7. presto
8. moderato
9. fortissimo (ff)

A. with majesty
B. quickly
C. slow, noble, and broad
D. moderate tempo
E. very loud
F. repeat from the beginning
G. medium loud
H. slowly
I. soft
J. repeat from the sign
K. fast, faster than allegro
III. Building Major Scales. Students find "do" and then write the major scale using whole notes.

IV. Building Minor Scales. Students find "la" and then write the natural minor scale.

V. Syllable recognition by ear.

Teacher sings patterns on "loo" or plays the patterns on the piano or bells. If the piano or bells are used, the following notes are suggested:

\[
\begin{align*}
do &= F \\
re &= G \\
mi &= A \\
fa + B^b &= C \\
sol &= D \\
la &= E \\
do &= F
\end{align*}
\]

Sing or play each pattern twice very slowly. Then sing or play a third time, more fluently, so the children can check their answers. Children circle correct syllables. Mark only one syllable in each column. (Second note in column two, third note in column three, etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>ti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>la</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>la</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>sol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>fa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>mi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>re</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VI. Measure Building. Students draw a bar line at the end of each measure.

A. 4

B. 6

C. 3

VII. Identification of Chord Numerals. Students write the chord numerals in the blanks using Roman Numerals.

A.  

B.  

C.  

VIII. Listen and Respond. Teacher will play "Water Come A Me Eye" (Record 5, HRW) three times. Allow students to answer questions between each playing.

1. The melody of this song is based on a:

   a. minor scale  
   b. major scale  
   c. pentatonic scale
2. The rhythm of this song contains syncopations.
   a. True   b. False

3. The melody of this song is very simple; it moves in:
   a. only scale-line patterns   b. only in chord-line patterns
      c. both scale and chord-line patterns.

4. The same rhythm is always used for the words "Water come a me eye." It is this pattern:
   a. \[ \text{\underline{d}d\underline{d}d\underline{d}d\underline{d}/\underline{d}} \]
   b. \[ \text{\underline{b}d\underline{d}d\underline{b}d\underline{d}/\underline{d}} \]
   c. \[ \text{\underline{c}c\underline{d}d\underline{d}d\underline{d}/\underline{d}} \]

5. This song starts on "do."
   a. True   b. False
I. Recognition of Music Symbols (Matching)

1. sixteenth rest
2. quarter note
3. eighth rest
4. natural or cancel sign
5. sixteenth note
6. decrescendo or diminuendo sign
7. accent
8. bass clef sign
9. dotted eighth note

II. Recognition of Music Terms (Matching)

1. DaCapo (D.C.)
2. maestoso
3. allegro
4. Dal Segno (D.S.)
5. largo
6. piano (p)
7. presto
8. moderato
9. fortissimo (ff)
III. Building Major Scales. Find "do" and write the major scale using whole notes.

IV. Building Minor Scales. Find "la" and write the natural minor scale.

V. Syllable recognition by ear. Listen to the melodic pattern, then circle the correct syllables. Mark only one syllable in each column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>la</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>sol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>fa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>mi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
V. Continued

C.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ti</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>la</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>sol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VI. Measure Building. Draw a bar line at the end of each measure.

A.  

B.  

C.  

VI. Identification of Chord Numerals. Write the chord numerals in the blanks using Roman Numerals.

A.  

B.  

C.  

VIII. Listen and Respond. You will hear a song played three times. Listen and then answer as many questions as you can between each playing.

1. The melody of this song is based on a:
   a. minor scale  
   b. major scale  
   c. pentatonic scale

2. The rhythm of this song contains syncopations.
   a. True  
   b. False

3. The melody of this song is very simple; it moves in:
   a. only scale-line patterns  
   b. only in chord-line patterns  
   c. both scale and chord-line patterns.
4. The same rhythm is always used for the words "Water come a me eye." It is this pattern:
   a. $\text{dddd} \mid d$
   b. $\text{dd} \text{dd} \text{dd} \mid d$
   c. $\text{d} \text{d} \text{d} \text{d} \mid d$

5. This song starts on "do."
   a. True
   b. False
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| I. To Sing in Tune | A. Tone matching  
1. Teacher plays on rhythm instrument a simple pattern 2 note melody as: ex.  
\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{sol} \\
\text{mi} \\
\text{sol} \\
\text{mi} \\
\text{mi} \\
\end{array}
\]  
2. As children become accustomed to listening try singing simple 2 note patterns to be imitated by the children either playing or singing.  
3. Add other notes in the following order: do, re, la, fa, ti  
ex:  
a. do - mi - sol - sol - do  
b. do - re - mi - do - sol - sol - do  
c. do - re - mi - sol - la - sol  
4. Use the piano to help children find themselves. Let each child sing any note and then try to find that note on the piano. Then let him move up or down one or two notes on the keyboard and try to match the piano.  

B. Tone Quality and Range  
1. Point out examples in recordings of good, clear tone (not breathy), tone which has vitality and tone color which is appropriate to the song (sometimes "dark"; other times a "light" tone; sometimes a full voice; and other times a restrained voice.) Have children become aware of their own voice quality.  

2. Proper breathing will probably occur when the children have a good understanding of phrasing. They should sit erect with books up.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

1. Both children and teacher will feel more confident if the tone matching activities begin with instruments as ORFF instruments or bells rather than vocally.

   In singing the patterns, use a neutral syllable as "loo."

4. You may substitute the bells or Orff Instruments for the piano.

B. 1. The teacher should sing with a light buoyant tone quality.

   The records of HRW songs will be of great help. Try using a tape recorder so that they can hear their own voices. Have the children cup one hand behind their ear and they will be able to hear their voices magnified.

   Inhaling, breath should be taken in through both mouth and nose.

2. In order to teach diaphragm breathing have children hold one hand on their diaphragm (just above waist) and hold the index finger of the other hand up in front of them. Have them pretend to "blow out the candle," let them discover what happens to their diaphragms. When inhaling, breath should be taken in through both mouth and nose.

MATERIALS

Orff Guide
page 19, 20

HRW, T.E., p.v.
Pitchpipe
IMC, records -
Vienna Choir Boys
R1053, R1052, R1077, R1022
Budapest Children's Choir - R1076
Korean Children's Choir - R1081
Tokyo Little Singers
R1080
Yugoslav Children's Choir - R1079
Tape Recorder
### GOALS

**I. To Sing in Tune - cont.**

3. Vowels should be clear. Children might vocalize singing scales or a familiar melody using the syllables "ah," "oh," "ee," or "loo."

4. Consonants should be sung crisply.

5. Children should maintain a flexible voice with a considerable range. Most will be able to sing from G to G. Harmony and melody parts should be assigned to children alternately so that they do not become limited to one voice part or range.

6. Some boy's voices begin to change during the later part of the year.

### VOCAL ACTIVITIES

**II. To Develop Rhythmically**

A. Rhythmic Activities

1. Group Clapping
   a. Teacher begins clapping - children join in imitating the teacher.
   b. As teacher changes the patterns, the children change with her. There is no need to keep a basic meter as 4/4, rather interchange 3/4, 4/4, 6/8, etc.
   c. Add finger snaps, stamps, and patschen (slapping knees or thighs with hands)
   d. Children can take turns being the leader.
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. Sing with the mouth open, trying not to change the mouth formation between the syllables &quot;ah&quot; and &quot;ee&quot; (try not to get a &quot;pinched&quot; tone on &quot;ee&quot;)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Singing is done on the vowels; the consonants should not be sustained unless a special effect is needed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Group children in two or three sections. One day group two may sing the harmony part and the next day group one might sing it.</td>
<td>HRW, t.e., pp. 114-115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. For help on this change - use the HRW text.</td>
<td>HRW, t.e., p. 115</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:** 5 claps, 4 patschen, 7 snaps, 5 claps, 3 stamps, 5 claps, etc. The action should be continuous with no stopping.

**Materials:**

<p>| |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HRW, t.e., pp. 114-115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orff Guide, p. 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II. To Develop Rhythmically - cont.

2. Echo clapping
   a. Teacher claps or plays on a rhythm instrument a short rhythm pattern of one or two measures in basic 3/4, 4/4 or 6/8 time, and children clap pattern in an echo. In beginning, it is good to leave the last beat as a rest.
   b. Without losing any beats, the teacher immediately claps a second short rhythm pattern and children clap pattern in echo, etc.
   c. Without losing any beats, class members may take turns leading the group.
   d. Add finger snaps, patschen, and stamps for more variety.
   e. For variety, use echo clapping records from IMC or examples from Threshold to Music charts.

3. Unison Speech Exercises (chants)
   a. Learn simple chants by rote.
      Ex. 2/4. Bluebird | Bluebird
          Bobolink | bobolink
          Blackbird | blackbird
          Whipoorwill | whipoorwill
          Kingfisher kingfisher
          Duck

   b. Let children improvise chants and rhythms by writing their own chants or poems or using favorite poems.
## HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example A: Teacher claps:</th>
<th>Children echo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>(echo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>(echo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>(echo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>(echo)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example B: Teacher claps:</th>
<th>Children echo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>(echo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>(echo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>(echo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>(echo)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Vary the dynamics and speed of the chants.

## MATERIALS

- **Orff Guide, p. 1-2**
- **Threshold to Music**
  - Charts 11, 69-70
  - (Teacher's Manual, pp. 87, 107)
- **IMC - Records**
  - Echo Songs & Rhythms, R-1086
  - Orff's Music For Children, R-1018
- **HRW**
  - "Talkin' Blues" p. 31
  - "A Calypso Game"
  - T.E., p. 132
  - Orff's Music For Children - R-1018 R-1019
- **b. Follett Text - p. 35**
  - I Wish I Were a Leprechaun
    - p. 163 Ambition
    - p. 175 Trees
  - T.E.p. 24a Robin Hood
    - p. 36a My Spouse Nancy
    - p. 48b The Swapping Song
  - p. 52a Fatherland Song
  - p. 147a Chinese Lullaby
  - See T.E. p. 331(index)
### VOCAL ACTIVITIES

#### II. To Develop Rhythmically - cont.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c. Chant words to familiar songs in rhythm.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Chant words to new song in rhythm.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. Use a chant to accompany a song.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. Add rhythm accompaniment to chants.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 4. Question and answer clapping

- **a.** Teacher claps a rhythm pattern and child answers with a different pattern but with same number of beats.

  **Ex:**
  - Teacher - \[\begin{array}{c}
  \frac{\ \frac{\ 2}{4}}{2}/
  \end{array}\]
  - Child - \[\begin{array}{c}
  \frac{\ \frac{\ 2}{4}}{2}/
  \end{array}\]

#### 5. Canons and Rounds

- **a.** Clap the rhythm of a familiar song or round, making it a rhythmic round.

  **Ex:** Three Blind Mice

  - \[\begin{array}{c}
  \frac{\ \frac{\ 2}{4}}{2}/
  \end{array}\]

- **b.** Use additional examples from the Orff guide

#### 6. Rhythmic Rondos

- **a.** Clap the following simple rondo -

  - \[\begin{array}{c}
  \frac{\ \frac{\ 2}{4}}{2}/
  \end{array}\]

- **b.** Encourage the children to improvise their own rondos.

- **c.** Use additional examples from Orff Guide.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

c. Vary the meter of the chant.

MATERIALS

c. HRW
   "Inch Worm" T.E., p. 182
   "Old Abram Brown"
   T.E., p. 55 (also Follett p. 40)

d. HRW - "Migildi, Migildi" p. 44

e. HRW
   "Hosanna" T.E., p. 130
   "Streets of Loredo"
   T.E., p. 16
   Orff Guide, pp. 6-9
   Threshold to Music,
   Chart 9, Teacher's Manual, p. 23

f. Follett Text
   "Song of the Gurkha Boys" p. 145

5. "Canon" - a simple form where one group starts and another follows.
   a. For contrast clap quarter notes (♩) waistlevel, half notes (♩♩) on knees, and eighth notes (♩♩♩) above heads.

a. Orff Guide, pp. 4-6
   Threshold To Music, charta 44, 45, 85, teacher's Manual pp. 56, 64, 68, 69, 88, 94, 107-109

b. Try standing, stretching tall and kneeling as you clap the different parts.

6. "Rondo" - a form in which one Musical thought or phrase keeps reoccurring.
   a. Have different groups within the room do the different parts of the rondo.

   b. Try standing, stretching tall and kneeling as you clap the different parts.

a. Orff Guide, pp. 9-10
   Threshold To Music, chart 71
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

II. To Develop Rhythmically - cont.

7. Rhythmic Ostinati
   a. Clap or play on rhythm instruments a short repeated pattern as an accompaniment to a song.

B. Reading Rhythms
   1. Teaching Rhythm Patterns
      a. Review "Reading the Rhythm," HRW text, p. 9 and p. 138
         1) A steady pulse or beat is the basis of rhythm.
         2) Some beats are accented
         3) Beats are divided into groups of twos or threes or in a combination of the two. Patterns made up of tones of varying length are woven around this grouping of beats. These tones are organized in relationship to each other (and to the beat).

         \[
         \begin{align*}
         \frac{2}{4} & \quad \frac{\in\in | \in }{4} \\
         \frac{4}{4} & \quad \frac{\in\in\in\in | \in\in\in\in \in }{4} \\
         \frac{3}{8} & \quad \frac{\in | \in | \in | \in }{4} \\
         \frac{6}{8} & \quad \frac{\in\in\in | \in\in\in | \in\in\in }{4} \\
         \end{align*}
         \]

      b. Review the names and relative duration of the following notes and their corresponding rests. 

7. "Ostinato" - repeated rhythmic Pattern

1. HRW
   "Everybody Loves Saturday Night,"
   T.E. p. 27 (also Follett p. 140)
   "Ghost of Tom,"
   T.E., p. 29
   Threshold To Music,
   chart 104
   Follett text
   With Sound Of Pipe-p. 70
   Ma Bela Bimba - T.E. p. 103
   The Man From Krakow -
   T.E., p. 114a
   Sleigh Bells - p. 122
   Summer Has Come - p. 127
   Congo Lullaby - T.E.,
   p. 137a
   Zulu Warrior - p. 139

1. a. HRW, pp. 9, 138
    HRW, "Inch Worm,"
    T.E., p. 182
    Threshold to Music,
    charts 61-63
    teacher's manual,
    pp. 82-83
    IMC
    Film - Reading
    Music: Finding
    the Rhythm F-1084
    Chart - Music
    Instruction Chart
    Ch-1040
    Kit - Rhythm,
    K-5079

b. HRW, Elements of
   Music Theory:
   Rhythm, T.E. p. XIV
   IMC
   Kit - Rhythm, the
   Quarter Note,
   Half Note, K5015
   Kit - Measures,
   Whole Notes and
   Eighth Notes, 
   K5016
**GOALS**

To Develop Rhythmically- cont.

**ACTIVITIES**

Reading Rhythms, Cont'd.

1. Teaching Rhythm Patterns, Cont'd
   c. Review the meaning of beat, meter, measure, bar line and the following meter signatures: 4/4, 2/4, 3/4, 3/8, 6/8

   d. Building Measures
   1) Write music in time signatures the children have studied using only whole notes. Have the children change the whole notes into other kinds of notes so that each measure fits the time signature.

   2) Have the children write 4 measures of 2/4, 4/4, 3/4 or 6/8 time. The notes need not be placed on the staff.

   3) As a variation of this activity, have the children write the notes which would receive the number of beats indicated.

   4) As another example, have the children put the beat numbers down for music already written.

   5) Write a series of notes and have the children put in the bar lines.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPs FOR THE TEACHER

MATERIALS

c. Use Threshold to Music Charts, suggestions in HRW t.e., and IMC materials

HRW, T.E. p. xiv
"Elements of Music Theory & Rhythm"

Threshold to Music Charts 51-59, (teacher's manual pp. 71-88)

IMC - Kit
"Time Signatures and the Accent" K-5018

d. Examples:

1)  \[ \begin{array}{cccc}
    & \cdot & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
\end{array} \]

2)  \[ \begin{array}{cccc}
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
\end{array} \]

3)  \[ \begin{array}{cccc}
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
\end{array} \]

4)  \[ \begin{array}{cccc}
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
\end{array} \]

Children will write: 1 2 and 1 2 1 2 and 1 2

5)  \[ \begin{array}{cccc}
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
    \cdot & - & - & - \\
\end{array} \]
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

GOALS

To Develop
Rhythmically - cont...

Reading Rhythms, cont.

e. Distinguishing Rhythm Patterns by Ear
   1) Put three or four rhythm patterns on
      the board - one or two measures long,
      having the same number of beats. The
      teacher should clap or play on a rhythm
      instrument one of these patterns and the
      children should guess which one it is.

2) After all the patterns have been introduced,
   have one child play or clap one of the pat-
   terns while the other children guess which
   one it is. The child who guesses one
   correctly can come up and play another
   pattern.

3) Divide the class into four groups. Each
   group should be assigned to clap or play
   on rhythm instruments one of the four
   patterns. Each pattern should be repre-
   sented by a different sound. Decide how
   many times the group should repeat the
   pattern. Group A should begin, after
   one measure Group B should begin, after
   two measures Group C should begin, and
   after three measures Group D would begin.
   This would represent a round in rhythm.

4) Put the rhythm of the first line of
   several familiar songs on the board. Let
   the children try to identify the song
   by its notation.

f. Dictation of Rhythm Patterns
   1) The teacher should clap or play a rhythm
      pattern on a rhythm instrument after
      telling the children what meter the rhythm
      will be in and what the tempo will be.
      The children write the rhythm pattern.

2) For additional dictation, use the Basic
   Musicianship Series (IMC) and Threshold
   to Music (Teacher's Manual, p. 90)
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

1) Each time a pattern has been identified, the children should clap out the pattern together with the teacher.

![Pattern Example](image)

In addition, use *Threshold to Music, Chart 7*

### MATERIALS

*Threshold to Music, Chart 7*

1) If the first measure of any pattern has one note per beat, that will make it easier for the children.

Examples:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Pattern Example" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Pattern Example" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Pattern Example" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Pattern Example" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Basic Musicianship Series (IMC: K5035 (G-N))

*Threshold to Music Teacher's Manual, p. 90*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Develop Rhythmically- cont'd.</td>
<td>Reading Rhythms, cont.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>g. Reviewing Patterns of Consecutive Sixteenth Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1) Learn a song by rote using sixteenth notes. Have the children notice that sixteenth notes move faster than other notes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) After learning the song, clap or play the rhythm of the song on rhythm instruments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3) Put the following rhythm pattern on the chalkboard:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| | \[
| \begin{align*}
| \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} & \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} \\
| \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} & \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} \\
| \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} & \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} \\
| \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} & \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} \\
| \end{align*}
| \text{dic-tion-ar-y} \text{dic-tion-ar-y} \\
| \text{"ti-di-ti-di"} \text{"ti-di-ti-di"} \\
| \text{dic-tion-ar-y} \text{dic-tion-ar-y} \\
| \text{"ti-di-ti-di"} \text{"ti-di-ti-di"} \\
| \]
| Explain to the children that four consecutive sixteenth notes have the rhythm of the word "dic-tion-ar-y". Have them chant the notes using this word. Or use "ti-di-ti-di" as introduced in Threshold to Music, Charts 72-74 (Teacher's Manual pp. 88-90) |
| | 4) Teach the children that sixteenth notes are only half as long as eighth notes. |
| | That is in \(\text{\textfrac{2}{4}, \text{\textfrac{3}{4}} or \text{\textfrac{4}{4}}}\) time, sixteenth notes would get one-fourth beat, or four sixteenth notes would get one beat. Have the children figure out the beats for the following pattern: |
| | \[
| \begin{align*}
| \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} & \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} \\
| \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} & \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} \\
| \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} & \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} \\
| \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} & \text{\textfrac{2}{4}} \\
| \end{align*}
| \text{1 ah and} \text{ah} \text{2 ah and ah} \text{1 ah and} \text{ah} \text{2 ah and ah} \\
| \text{ah} \text{2 ah and ah} \\
| \]
| | 


VOCAL ACTIVITIES

3) Explain to the children that sometimes four consecutive sixteenth notes are joined with a line to indicate that all four are on one beat.

Example: \( \text{♩♩♩♩} \)

Threshold To Music, Charts 72-74 (Teacher's Manual pp. 88-90)
**VOCAL ACTIVITIES**

### GOALS

To Develop Rhythmically-

### ACTIVITIES

#### Reading Rhythms, cont.

Explain to them that when we divide a beat in half we call the first half of the beat by its number and the second half of the beat "and." When we divide the "and" in half, we call the second part of this beat "ah." In other words, quarter-note notes which do not fall at the beginning of a whole beat or at the beginning of the second half of the beat can be designated with "ah."

#### h. Reviewing Sixteenth Notes Patterns

In the sixth grade text many songs contain the following rhythm patterns in 3/4, 4/4 or 5/4 times:

![](image)

The children should recognize these patterns and be able to sing them with the correct rhythm.

1. Discover words that represent these rhythms: Example:
   - mer-ri-ment (short-short-long)
   - New Jer-sey (long-short-short)

2. Use Threshold Chart 74 to review patterns

3. Explain where the beats fall in these patterns:
   - 1 ah and
   - 1 and ah


1) Learn a song by rote which contains this rhythm pattern The children should notice this is a jerky rhythm rather than an even one.
1. Example's
   a) "The Happy Plowman"
   b) "My Heart Ever Faithful"

   Follett, p. 56
   HRW, p. 75

1) Suggested Songs: "You're A Grand Old Flag," and "Cuckoo".
   a) An eighth note in $\frac{2}{4}$, $\frac{3}{4}$ or $\frac{4}{4}$ time gets one-half beat. Therefore, a dotted eighth note would get one-half beat plus one-half of a half, or three-fourths of a beat.

   HRW, "You're A Grand Old Flag" - p. 10
   Follett, "Cuckoo," p. 90
### GOALS

To Develop Rhythmically, cont'd.

### ACTIVITIES

**Reading Rhythms, cont.**

b) After singing the song, clap or play the rhythm of the song on rhythm instruments.

c) Review with the children that a dot after a note means that the note would get half again as much as it would get without the dot.

d) Practice clapping a pattern of four sixteenth notes \(\frac{\text{4 6s}}{\text{16 6s}}\). Without breaking the rhythm, clap only the first and fourth sixteenth notes in each group.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{4/16} & = \text{.6.0.6} \\
\text{1/16} & = \text{.6.6}
\end{align*}
\]

e) Put the following on the board:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
3 \\
4 \ 6/3 \ 6/3 \ 6/3 \\
\end{array}
\]

Think of each sixteenth note as belonging to the note which follows it. This will help to keep the sixteenth notes short and the rhythm crisp.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{6/3} & \text{ 6/3} \\
\text{6/3} & \text{ 6/3}
\end{align*}
\]

f) Teach a note song incorporating the dotted eighth-sixteenth note pattern.

j. **Syncopated Rhythm Patterns**

1) Teach a rote song which has syncopated rhythm in it. Ask the children if they notice any measures which have rhythm which is somewhat unusual. They should identify the measures given in the example. Tell the children this rhythm usually occurs when a short note precedes a long one at the beginning of a beat or measure.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

1) Suggested songs for syncopated rhythm:
   a) "You're a Grand Old Flag" - p. 10
   b) "Talkin' Blues" - p. 31
   c) "Comin' Through the Rye" - p. 42
      ("Scotch Snap" ▲▲)
   d) "Me Gustan Todas" - p. 122
   e) "Río Río" - p. 124

2) See IMC kit "Dotted Notes and Rests (K5017)

3) Use Threshold to Music charts for study of dotted notes.

4) Suggested Song: "The Minstrel Boy"

5) Suggested Exercise: "Talkin' Blues"

6) Suggested Song: "Vreneli"

MATERIALS

"Dotted Notes and Rests" (IMC) K-5017


HRW, p. 36

HRW, P. 31

Follett, p. 76

HRW, Grade 6
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To Develop Rhythmically-cont'd. | Reading Rhythms, cont.  
Syncopated Rhythm Patterns, cont. |

2) Have one group clap the steady beat, while another group claps the syncopated rhythm.

3) Have them clap the syncopation accenting the syncopated note. In singing other songs with syncopated rhythm, notice that these songs often come from Slavic countries, Africa, or South America. Syncopation is rarely found in songs from Germany, Scandinavia or the British Isles.


k. Changing Rhythm Patterns

1) The meter of a piece can sometimes change within the piece. The beat remains the same, moving steadily as the meter changes. The accent is the only thing really altered.

2) Have the children clap the rhythm, accenting the first beat of the measure.

3) Practice clapping beats grouped in different meters.  

\[
\begin{align*}
1 & 2 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 2 \\
\end{align*}
\]

4) Listen to recordings of changing meters.

5) Sing or listen to Folk songs that have changing rhythms.

6) Contemporary composers often compose music in unusual meters, changing meters, or in two meters at one time.
f) See also pages 19, 30, 130, 198 (HRW)
g) See pages 104, 108, 114, 124, 136
   (Follett)

Examples of songs with changing meters:
a) HRW, p. 94 "Plowing Song"
b) Follett, p. 78 "The Crafty Crow"

See, "Elements of Rhythm" HRW, p. 138
(Record 11, Side A, Band 1)

Suggested example: "Lieb Nachingall" p. 205
(Record 7, Side A, Band 5)

For examples, see "Elements of Rhythm" HRW, p. 138
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Develop Rhythmically-cont'd.</td>
<td>Reading Rhythm, cont.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Dance Rhythm Patterns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1) Children should become aware of the different types of dance rhythms and their origins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a) Tango</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b) Samba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c) Habanera or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d) Bolero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) The children might make a bulletin board showing where each dance originated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3) Several children may demonstrate the steps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4) Use the Latin American instruments to accompany these songs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5) Listen to dance rhythm patterns in IMC records.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C. Tempo and Metric Markings

1. By sixth grade, children should recognize and observe the following metric markings:
   a. Largo - slow, noble, and broad.
   b. Maestoso - with majesty; slower than andante.
   c. Andante - a walking tempo.
   d. Moderato - moderate tempo.
   e. Allegro - quickly (literally, cheerful)
   f. Presto - fast; faster than allegro.

2. Children should be aware that each song may have a different tempo. Some move very quickly and others very slowly, etc. Remind the children that at the beginning of many of the songs in their text, the tempo is indicated. Once a song has begun, its tempo should remain the same throughout except where a change is indicated in the music.
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

1. Refer to HRW teacher's edition, p. 119

   a)

   b) See "In Bahia Town", p. 126-127

   c) See t.e. p. 119 and t.e. pp. 136-137
      "Andalouse" (Listening lesson: Record 11,
      Side B, Band 1B).

---

### MATERIALS

- HRW, t.e.
- HRW text
- Latin American Instruments
- IMC, R-1059
- IMC, R-1060
- Follett text, p. 206
- IMC transparency "Tempo Marks" TR-5006

### MATERIALS

- HRW, t.e.
- HRW text
- Latin American Instruments
- IMC, R-1059
- IMC, R-1060
- Follett text, p. 206
- IMC transparency "Tempo Marks" TR-5006

### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

4) Many buildings have maracas, claves, and tuneable drums.

5) Suggested records:
   a) "Drum Rhythms for Jazz or Primitive" - vol. I
   b) "Drum Rhythms for Jazz or Primitive" - vol. II

---

1. Tell the children these markings are often in Italian and are used on music in all countries of the world. This is one way in which written music can be understandable to people in all parts of the world. It may help to use transparency about tempo marks.

2. When teaching a new song the teacher should have its tempo well in mind. If a song is introduced in the proper tempo, it is likely the children will always sing it at that tempo. It is very difficult to change a tempo once a song has been introduced.
### GOALS

To Develop Rhythmically—cont'd.

### ACTIVITIES

#### Tempo and Metric Markings, cont.

3. The following activities will help the children remember the meanings of the metric markings.

**Chart of Metric Markings:** Make a chart of metric markings and their meanings to display in the room.

**Flash cards:** Make a set of flash cards with dynamic markings on them.

**Metronome:** Ask the children if anyone can bring a metronome to school. Find metric markings (which the children have learned) on the metronome and discover how fast these should go.

---

#### D. Movements

1. **Creative Movements**
   - (See the Bloomington Orff Guide, pp. 10-15)
   - Have the children express themselves as you read examples from the guide.

2. **Reaction Movements**
   - Using procedure in Orff Guide, p. 15, have the children move to the beat of a drum.

3. **Action Songs and Chants**
   - Children move as they sing or chant. Refer to suggestions in Orff Guide, pp. 15-17

4. **Dances**
   - a. Use dance suggestions from HRW text.
   - 1) "Kalvelis" (Polka) - p. 24 (Record 8, Side A, Band 2)
   - 2) "Farandole" - p. 26 (Record 8, Side A, Band 3)
   - 3) "Green Sleeves" - p. 46 (Record 2, Side B, Band 2)
   - 4) "Merry Minstrels" - p. 52 (Record 2, Side B, Band 5)
   - 5) "Blacksmith's Dance" - p. 84-85 (Record 8, Side B, Band 3)
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

3. If the children do not have a metronome, ask the music consultant if she does.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Cards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metronome</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1. Additional verses can be found in Grace Nash's *Verses and Movement* book.

### 4. Teacher should read Dance in the "Study of Music" p. 32

1) The "polka" is basically a two-step: (Step - together - step)

2) Improvise your own dance steps

3) This is a stately English dance.

4) Have children devise own original movements for this dance round.

5) This is a favorite German Dance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Orff Guide, pp. 10-15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nash, <em>Verses and Movement</em> (IMC)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GOALS

To Develop Rhythmically- cont'd.

### ACTIVITIES

**Movements, cont.**

6) "Totur" - p. 116  
   (Record 9, Side B, Band 2)

7) "Tanko Bushi" - pp. 152-153  
   (Record 10, Side B, Band 3)

b. Use Dance suggestions from Follett text.

1) "Dance Song" - p. 108b  
   (Record 5605-A)

2) "Ho Be Di Ah," - p. 126a

3) "Debka Hora" - p. 134a

4) "Cherry Blooms," - p. 150-151

c. Use dance suggestions with IMC records.
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

6) This is a mixer dance popular in the U.S. and Denmark. It is a basic two-step. (step - together - step)  
- HRW, p. 116  
- HRW Record 9

7) This is a Japanese Folk Dance.  
- HRW, pp. 152-153  
- HRW Record 10

2) Follow the words of the song for dance directions.  
- Follett, p. 108b  
- Follett record 5605

4) This is one of the best known Japanese songs.

#### c. Suggested IMC records:
1) "Bowmar Library Dances"  
2) Orff's "Music for Children"  
3) "Free Rhythm Studies for Educational Dance"  
4) "Modern Dance - First Primer"  
5) "Music for Modern Dance"  
6) "Creative Dance" - Vol. I & II  
- IMC, R-1021  
- IMC, R-1019  
- IMC, R-1068  
- IMC, R-1058  
- IMC, R-1070  
- IMC, R-1064, 1065
III. To Read Music

A. Music Symbols
   1. Review Music Symbols

   2. Reviewing 6\text{ time}
      a. Teach the children a rote song in 6\text{ time}.

      b. While half of the children sing the song, the other half should clap on the strong beats of each measure. They will discover the song has two strong beats per measure. Since the time signature indicates there are six beats in each measure, each of these strong beats would be followed by two secondary beats.

      c. Have half the class sing while other half claps the beats, this time six beats in each measure with the strongest beats being "one" and "four."

      d. The children should discover through clapping how many beats each kind of note gets.

         \begin{align*}
         \text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\}}}}} & = 1 \text{ beat} \\
         \text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\}}}}} & = 2 \text{ beats} \\
         \text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\}}}}} & = 3 \text{ beats} \\
         \text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\}}}}} & = 4 \text{ beats} \\
         \text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\}}}}} & = 5 \text{ beats} \\
         \text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\}}}}} & = 6 \text{ beats}
         \end{align*}

         Explain the significance of the bottom number of the time signature. Have the children notice that each kind of note in 6\text{ time} gets twice as many beats as it would get in \frac{2}{4}, \frac{3}{4}, or \frac{4}{4}.\)
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

1. Suggested review exercises
   a. Teacher should make a chart for music symbols which will be added to as new symbols are learned by the children.
   b. Teacher may make a set of flash cards of music symbols to be used in various ways for reinforcement of knowledge of music symbols.
   c. Teacher may use IMC materials to review music symbols.
   d. Use game on "George Frederick Handel" in resource section of this guide.

a. Suggested songs:
   1) "All Hail Fridolin", HRW, p. 114
   2) "My Little Bird," HRW, p. 112
   3) "Night Herding Song," p. 180 (Follett)

### GOALS

To Read Music - cont'd.

### ACTIVITIES

Music Symbols, cont.

- e. Apply the above procedures to $\frac{3}{8}$ time also, noticing that the strong beat in $\frac{3}{8}$ is beat "one" only.

3. Introduce $\frac{3}{2} \quad \frac{2}{2}$, and $\xi$ (alla breve or cut time)

- a. Review with the children that in $\frac{2}{4}, \frac{3}{4}$, and $\frac{4}{4}$ a quarter note gets one beat. (Most music is written in these time signatures). In $\frac{6}{8}$ and $\frac{3}{8}$ time, and eighth note gets one beat. (There is less music written in these time signatures).

  In $\frac{3}{2}, \frac{2}{2}$ and $\xi$ a half note gets one beat.

- b. Use songs from text in $\frac{3}{2}, \frac{2}{2}$, and $\xi$.

4. Introduce the Bass Clef

- a. Play the scale tones on the piano so that children can hear and see the pitch difference between men's and women's voices.

- b. Note the difference between the names of the staves:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treble Clef</th>
<th>Bass Clef</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A-G</td>
<td>A-G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  c. Both staves use the same sequence of note names (A-G). However, the bass clef begins the sequence one space or line lower than the treble clef.
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

**e. Use Threshold to Music**  
(Teacher's Manual, p. 98)

It is very difficult for the children to remember what the bottom number of the time signature means. Help them to remember that the bottom number refers not to any number of beats but rather to the kind of note that gets one beat.

In the HRW, t.e., p. xviii, notice the way the meter signature is explained as $\frac{3}{4} = \frac{3}{4}$. If it is a fast tempo and should be felt as one beat to a measure, it is written $\frac{3}{4}$.

**b. Suggested songs:**

- $\frac{3}{2}$ "Young Person's Guide to the Orchestra"
- "Poor Wayfaring Stranger"
- $\frac{2}{2}$ "We are Climbing Jacob's Ladder"
- $\frac{2}{2}$ "Come Follow Me"
- "Robin Hood"
- $\frac{2}{2}$ "Water Come A Me Eye"
- "Zum Gali Gali"

**a. 1) Women's voices:**

- (soprano, alto)

**2) Men's voices:**

- (tenor, bass)

### MATERIALS

**Threshold to Music**

**HRW, t.e. p. xviii**

**HRW, p. 58**

**Follett text, p. 183**

**HRW, p. 166, p. 53**

**Follett text, p. 25**

**HRW, p. 128**

**Follett text, p. 132**

**HRW, p. 113**

**HRW, t.e., p. 112**

"G" is on the second line in the treble clef and on the first line of the bass clef.
GOALS

To Read Music - cont'd.

ACTIVITIES

Music Symbols, cont.

d. Rewrite the alto part of a song into the bass clef.

e. Use letter game about Johann Sebastian Bach in resource section of this guide.

5. Recognition of Dynamic Markings

a. Most of the dynamics in HRW are found in the t.e. part. The procedure is usually to let the children decide, on the basis of the words, phrasing, and emotional feeling of the song just how the song should be sung. There are very few dynamic markings in the children's text.

b. The following activities will help the children to remember the meanings of dynamic markings:

1) Dynamics Chart - The teacher should make a chart for dynamic markings to be displayed in the room, adding to it as each new marking is encountered in songs.

2) Flash Cards - The teacher may make a set of flash cards of dynamic markings to be used in various ways.

3) Dynamics in Poetry - Select a poem to be dramatized through the use of dynamics. Write the poem on the board. Add appropriate dynamic markings, accents, etc., for each line, having the children decide. Chant the poem, incorporating the dynamics. Add rhythm instruments or other sound effects, if they fit.

4) Introducing crescendo and diminuendo - Have children clap very softly with one finger on the palm of the hand four even beats. Without losing any beats, clap four more beats a little louder using two fingers. Increase this by one finger every four beats until all fingers are used in a loud clap. This should sound like a crescendo. Reverse the procedure to achieve a diminuendo.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

d. Refer to suggestions for teaching "My Little Bird, Where Do You Fly?" HRW, p. 112 (t.e. p. 113)

a. Children in sixth grade should be able to use the following dynamic markings:
   a. p (piano) - soft
   b. f (forte) - loud
   c. crescendo - gradually louder
   d. decrescendo or diminuendo - gradually softer
   e. pp (pianissimo) - very soft
   f. mp (mezzo piano) - medium soft
   g. mf (mezzo forte) - medium loud
   h. ff (fortissimo) - very loud

   The children should be told that these words (piano, forte, mezzo, etc.) are Italian and mean "soft," "loud," "medium," etc., in that language. The children should observe these markings when they appear in music.

Follett, p. 206-207
B. Recognition of Form and Structure

1. Scalewise Patterns

a. Review the Major Scale

1) Using a large model of the piano keyboard, discover the scale patterns when starting on different notes.

```
---------
|      |
---------
| 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 |
---------
| W W W W W W W |
---------
|    D E F G A B C D |
---------
```

2) Help them to see the need for #'s and b's as a part of the scale.

3) Give each student a worksheet containing several keyboards as above. Place an X where they should begin and have them color the correct notes.

4) Set up the melody bells, the Orff instruments or use the piano. Let the students discover several major scales. Give them a paper with the name of the beginning note (as A'). Let them write the remainder of the scale as they play the series of whole and half steps.

5) Singing Scale Patterns

Children should be able to sing scale patterns with syllables fluently. That is, they should be able to sing from any note in the scale to the next one up or down without difficulty.

a) Singing from syllables chart: The teacher should establish "do" on the pitch pipe (D, E flat or E). Then by starting with "do," he should point to notes on the syllables charts moving up and down by step.
HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

a. The major scale is a succession of eight notes with half-steps between the third and fourth steps (mi to fa) and 7th to 8th steps (ti to do).

1. Do re mi fa sol la ti do
   1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
   W W W W W W ½

Be sure that they understand that ½ steps occur between one note and the note nearest to it (sometimes black, sometimes white)

4. Be sure that they know that each letter of the alphabet from A-G must be represented in sequence beginning with the letter given to them.

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.4\textwidth]{chart.png}
\caption{Syllable chart: do ti la sol fa mi re do}
\end{figure}

Pitch in the keys of D,E flat or E. Check on pitch pipe to see if the top note is in tune. Teacher should tell the children to sing "big" steps when going up and "tiny" steps when going down. "Flattening" occurs when ascending steps are not big enough and descending steps are too big.

MATERIALS

HRW, t.e., p. xv
Follett, p. 202
IMC, k-5033 A-F
"It's Fun to Read Music" (Scales)

IMC - K-5020 "Major and Minor Scales, Accidentals and Chromatics"
### GOALS

To Read Music - cont'd.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b) Scale patterns by hand levels: Teacher should establish a given level for &quot;do.&quot; He should then move his hand up and down in scale patterns while the children follow in singing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scale ladder:</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>do</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>sol</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MATERIALS

  - Chart 106, tm-122
  - Chart 21, tm-37
  - Chart 13, tm-29
  - Chart 105, tm-122
  - Chart 13, tm-29
  - Chart 53, tm-74
  - Chart 53, tm-47
**VOCAL ACTIVITIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To Read Music - cont'd. | c) Mystery Melodies  
1) Write one or two phrases of the melody of a well-known song on the chalkboard. Do not write the title or the words. Have the children figure out what the melody is by first finding "do" and then "thinking" the syllables. |

2) Use IMC records for Ear Training. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>b. Review the Natural Minor Scale</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) Play the F major scale on bells, Orff instruments or piano, using the same notes, begin on D. This is the d minor scale (has 1 flat - b♭). Using a large keyboard determine the whole steps and half steps for the natural minor scale or draw a scale ladder of the minor scale.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Music Symbols</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F major</td>
<td>G A B♭ C D E F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D minor</td>
<td>D E♭ F G A B♭ C D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>W W 1/2 W W 1/2 W W 1/2 W W 1/2 W W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2) Ask eight children to come to the front of the room. Give one of the notes d-e-f-g-a-b♭-c-d of the resonator bells to each child. Do not have the notes in order. Through experimenting, the children should arrange the notes in the proper sequence. Then they should play the scale--each child playing one note. The class could sing the scale with them as they play it a second time. |

3) Build the Natural Minor Scale on the staff  
a) Pass out to each child a tagboard staff, notes, sharps and flats. Have them place sharps and flats on the staff for a given key signature.  
b) Have the children find "do" and place it on the staff about three inches to the right of the G clef sign.  
c) Count down to "la" and place "la, and ti" on the staff to the left of "do." |
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

1) Each natural minor scale has the key signature of a major scale. We say it is related to it. The minor scale begins on the 6th step (la) of the major scale. Note that the minor key note is one line or one space below the major key note.

- **Major Key - B**
- **Minor Key - G**

Vary this activity by using smaller groups. It might be fun to divide the class into four or more groups, giving each group a chance to get the jumbled notes into their proper sequence. Time each group to see which one is the quickest. This could be done with the major scale also.

**MATERIALS**

- **IMC - R-1120, "Ear Training for Middle Grades"**
- **HRW, t.e., pp. xv, 23.**
- **Follett text, pp. 202-203, 204.**
- **Resonator bells**
- **Tagboard staffs, notes, sharps and flats from building.**
- **IMC, K-5033 G, "It's Fun to Read Music - Minor Scales"**
### Vocals Activities

#### To Read Music - cont'd.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Goals</th>
<th>Activities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>d) Complete the scale by placing the remaining notes up to &quot;high la.&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e) Sing the minor scale from the staff.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4) Sing songs in the natural minor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5) Review with the children that when a song ends in &quot;do&quot; it is in a major key. If a song ends on &quot;la,&quot; it is in a minor key. The letter name of &quot;do&quot; determines the name of the key in major. The letter name of &quot;la&quot; determines the name of the key in minor. To make this more clear to the children, divide the class into groups. Each group should be assigned a certain number of pages in the HRW or Follett text in which to find songs in the minor key.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Introduce the Harmonic Minor Scale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) Sing several songs in the harmonic minor scale.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) Put the natural minor scale on the board and sing with the syllables.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) Change the scale to the harmonic minor by raising the seventh tone. Sing this scale ascending and have the children notice the &quot;pulling&quot; feeling between &quot;fa&quot; and &quot;si.&quot; Sing the scale descending.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Vocal Activities

**Suggested Songs:**

1. "Johnny Has Gone For A Soldier" *HRW*, p. 3
2. "Ghost of Tom" *HRW*, p. 28
3. "Rommel Drum" *Follett*, p. 67

**Examples:**

- Last note of song in C Major
- Last note of song in C Minor

**Suggested Songs:**

1. "Tum Balalya" *HRW*, p. 22 (d minor)
2. "Greensleeves" *HRW*, p. 46 (e minor)
3. "Fum Fum Fum" *Follett*, p. 96 (a minor)
4. "Pierlala" *Follett*, p. 66 (d minor)
5. "The Birch Tree" *Follett*, p. 119 (g minor)

**Natural Minor:**

- la ti do re mi fa sol la
- 1/2 step 1/2 step

**Harmonic Minor:**

- la ti do re mi fa si la
- 1/2 1/2 1-1/2 1/2 step steps step
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Read Music - cont'd.</td>
<td>4) Isolate a phrase of one of the songs just sung and sing the syllables using &quot;si&quot; for raised sol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5) Some songs shift between major and minor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d. Introduce the Chromatic Scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1) Sixth grade children should be introduced to all of the notes in the chromatic scale by syllables. The chromatic scale moves from &quot;do&quot; to &quot;do&quot; but contains thirteen tones rather than eight. All of the tones move by half steps. One set of names is used for the chromatic tones of the ascending scale. Another set is used for the chromatic tones of the descending scale. In the ascending chromatic scale, all of the altered tones take the vowel &quot;i.&quot; In the descending chromatic scale, all of the altered tones take the vowel &quot;e&quot; except that of &quot;re&quot; which becomes &quot;ra.&quot; When these chromatic tones appear in note songs, the children should know how to change the pitch and what syllable to call them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) Use IMC materials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e. Reviewing how to find &quot;do.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1) Review the concept that &quot;do&quot; can be on any line or in any space in a given song. The position of &quot;do&quot; is determined by the key signature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a) Determining whether a sharp or flat is on a line or space: When a sharp is on a line, the line cuts through the center of the &quot;box&quot; of the sharp.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

4) (The seventh step in the natural minor ("sol") becomes "si" in the harmonic minor).

5) Suggested Songs:
   a) "Greensleeves" HRW, p. 46
   b) "Skye Boat Song" Follett, p. 32

MATERIALS

1) One Octave of Ascending Chromatic Scale:

   do di re ri mi fa fi sol si la li ti do

   One Octave of Descending Chromatic Scale:

   do ti te la le sol se fa mi me re ra do

   Natural notes are underlined.

IMC, K-5033H, "It's Fun to Read Music" (Chromatic Scales)
IMC, TR-5005, TR-5007 "Syllable Guide for Flats and Sharps"

1) The teacher should make clear to the children the difference between key signature and time signature (see glossary).

   a) Use IMC materials.

HRW text, p. 13
IMC: K-5021, "Key Signatures"
IMC: K-5032G, "Flats"
IMC: K-5032H, "Sharps"
To Read Music - cont'd.

When a sharp is in a space, the "box" of the sharp fills the space.

When the flat is on a line, the line cuts through the center of the round part of the flat.

When the flat is in the space, the round part of the flat fills the space.

b) The following shortcuts may be used for finding "do."

1) When there are sharps, if the farthest sharp to the right is on a line, count down to "do" by lines using the syllables ti-sol-mi-do.

2) Find the last sharp to the right. This is "ti." Go up one note to "do."

3) When there are flats in the key signature, the second flat from the right is on the same line or space as "do."

4) Find the last flat to the right. This is "la." Count down or up to find "do."

c) Children's choice - Allow the children to choose songs. In order for a song to be sung, the child must tell where "do" is, the name of the first note and the key of the song.
1) \[ \text{Staff notation} \]

2) \[ \text{Staff notation} \]

3) \[ \text{Staff notation} \\
\text{Last flat: Second to last flat is "do" (A')} \]

4) \[ \text{Staff notation} \]

HRW text

Follett text
To Read Music - cont'd.

f. Review the Pentatonic Scale
The pentatonic scale is based on 5 tones (penta-5, tonic-tone) These tones are do-re-mi-so-la.

1. Notice the arrangement of whole steps and one step of a whole and a half (between mi and sol). For example using the black keys on the piano you have the five tones of the pentatonic scale.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>W½</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>(do re mi sol la)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Because it does not contain fa (4), and ti (7), both tones which seem to need to be resolved, songs written in this scale are easy to compose and accompany. Many folk songs and oriental music are in this scale.

3. Build this scale on the resonator bells or the Orff instruments.

a) Improvise simple tune to favorite poems, nursery rhymes or Japanese Haikus. (See Orff Guide, p. 41-42)

b) Sing favorite songs written in pentatonic (See harmony section of guide), and Orff Guide, pp. 18-38. Improvise ostinati accompaniments for them.

1) Students should have had some rhythmic experiences before beginning this (Echo and group clapping are excellent).

2) Start with one or two of the notes, perhaps sol and mi, and later add others from the five tones to be used (do-re-mi-sol-la).
## VOCAL ACTIVITIES

### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

1. W W W W

2. The scale does not use the 4th or 7th tones of the major scale.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>↑</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td></td>
<td>↑</td>
<td></td>
<td>↑</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do - Re - Mi    Sol - La    Do

b) Suggested Pentatonic Songs:

- **HRW** - See index in t.e., p. 332
- **Follett** - See listing in Orff Guide, p. 40

### MATERIALS

- HRW, p. 139
- "Elements of Music Melody"

- Orff Guide, pp. 41-42

- HRW text
- Follett text
- Orff Guide

2. Any combination of the tones, do-re-mi-sol-la will result in a pleasant sound. Since they may start and end on any note of the scale, all students can have a rewarding experience.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Read Music - cont'd.</td>
<td>3) As the students become more proficient have them try to remember the accompaniments or melodies. This will probably be a good reason for them to try to write it down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c) Use pentatonic exercises from Threshold to Music.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>g. Modal Songs -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1) Sing songs from text that are built on modes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) Teach &quot;Scarborough Fair&quot; (Dorian Mode). Ask Music Consultant for a Grade 6 Ginn text.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

c) Use charts 53, 75, 76-79, 81, 83-85, 91-99.  

MATERIALS

Threshold to Music -  
Second and Third Yrs.  
(Teacher's Manual)

g. The earliest chants were probably based on the pentatonic (5-tone) scale. As years passed, more tones were added to make up "modes" of 8 tones. There are 6 different modes, each has a different arrangement of whole and half steps.

Example: Dorian mode begins on D and whole and half steps are arranged as follows:

```
\[ D - W - W - \frac{1}{2} - W - W - \frac{1}{2} - W \]  
```

1} Suggested songs:

p. 92 - "Le premier mois d'1' anne's" (Aeolian Mode)  
p. 94 - "Plowing Song" - (Aeolian Mode)  
p. 193 - "O Come, O Come, Emmanuel" - (Aeolian Mode)  
p. 194 - "I Wonder As I Wander" - (Dorian)  
p. 206 - "R̄iu, R̄iu, Chiu" - (Dorian)

HRW text

Ginn, Grade 6 text
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Read Music - cont'd.</td>
<td>h. Movement of Melody by Skips or Intervals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Many melodies move by skips. These skips are called intervals. Children in the sixth grade should be able to recognize on the staff, build on the staff, and sing the following intervals:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Second (step)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fifth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>octave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Have the children build intervals on the staff using the tagboard staffs and notes, or the chalkboard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Sing a familiar song containing several different intervals. Identify these intervals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Have the children sing the following syllable patterns as you point to the notes. Use either the syllable ladder or a scale on the staff on the board: Any &quot;do&quot; which is underlined is low &quot;do&quot;; any &quot;do&quot; which is not underlined is high &quot;do.&quot; Ascending -- do-re-do-mi-do-fa-do-sol, do-la, do-ti, do-do. Descending -- do-ti, do-la-do-sol-do-fa-do-mi-do-re-do-do. Have the children identify the above intervals after they have sung the above exercise.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### VOCAL ACTIVITIES

#### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H. (&quot;Interval&quot; - distance between two tones)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The size of an interval is determined by calling the first note &quot;1&quot; and counting by steps up or down to the next note. If the second note is &quot;4&quot; the interval is a fourth. If the second note is &quot;2&quot; the interval is a second.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 2. Decide on a key signature. Place the sharps and flats on the proper lines and spaces at teacher's discretion. Have children place a note on the second space of the staff. Have them place another note a fifth higher. Have children place a note in the first space of the staff. Have them place another note in the second space. Ask them what interval this is. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3. Suggested songs:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) &quot;Roll On, Columbus&quot; p. 4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) &quot;The Inch Worm&quot; p. 182-3 (t.e., p. 182)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 4. Check the intervals on the piano to see if they are in tune, but do not play with the children. Make a small step between high "ti" and high "do." |

#### MATERIALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HRW, p. 5 (t.e., p. 5)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IMC: K-5022 &quot;Intervals and Phrases.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMC: K-5074, &quot;The Magic of Melody&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tagboard, staff notes, sharps and flats from building.
**VOCAL ACTIVITIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To Read Music - cont'd. | 5. Arpeggio  
a) Practice singing tones in arpeggio form. (See HRW, p. 17 and Threshold to Music, Chart 102).  
b) Sing with syllables, then with "loo" or "sh."  
c) Play arpeggios on melody instruments (Resonator or melody bells, piano, Orff Instruments).  
d) Find examples in the text. After singing through the chord patterns, try singing the song without further assistance.  
e) Listen for arpeggios in accompaniments of songs.  
i. Movements of Melody in Repeated Patterns of Sequence or Repetition.  

1. When beginning a new piece look for sequence or repetitions in the melody line.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

5: "Arpeggio" - Notes of a chord sounded one after another rather than simultaneously.

\[ \text{do-mi-sol-mi-do - ti-re-fa-sol-fa-re-ti} \]

Example: HRW, p. 12 "Swinging Along"

Example: HRW, p. 90 "The Herdsman"

"Repetition" - a melody pattern repeated at the same pitch
"Sequence" - a melody pattern repeated at a different pitch.

1. Examples: a) HRW, p. 2 "The Home Road"

b) HRW, p. 55 "Old Abram Brown"

c) HRW, p. 107 "Summer Magic"
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

To Read Music - cont'd.

2. Primary Chord (Sol-ti-re-fa)

Review with the children that the notes sol-ti-re form the dominant or V chord. When the seventh (or fa) is added to the chord, it is called the dominant seventh chord. This chord is sometimes outlined in melodies.

a) Have children sing the pattern from syllables chart. Divide the class into three groups and sing chord.

b) Have three children simultaneously play the chord notes on the resonator bells.

c) Look for examples in other songs in the basic texts.

d) Use "Basic Musicianship Series" (IMC) for ear training.

a) Use "Basic Musicianship Series" (IMC) for ear training.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

c) Ask them to look for one measure in the song where the notes would be high sol - low do - high sol - low do.

   terl, piao, terl, piao
   sol - do - sol - do

Have the children "frame" the measure with their pointer fingers.

d) Establish the tonality by singing do-mi-sol in the key of E flat.

e) Sing the song through having the children sing syllables on the above pattern while the teacher sings "loo" on the other notes of the song.

2. Examples: (Sol-ti-re-fa)

HRW, p. 19 - "He's Got the Whole World in His Hands"

   Whole World in his hands
   sol - sol - fa-re-do

Follett, p. 57 - "Reap the Flax"

   Card, Card it well and
   fa - fa - re - ti - re -

(The root -(sol) in this chord has not been included; However, having the other three members of the chord make us hear it as the dominant seventh chord.)
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

To Read Music - cont'd.

e. Use the fingers and thumb of the hand to represent the five lines and spaces of the staff. Decide on a position for "do." Play "do" on the pitch pipe. Holding the hand sideways in front of the children have them sing whatever notes you point to. This is a good warm-up exercise for introducing a specific key in note singing.


3. Movement of melody on tones of primary chord patterns.
   a. Primary Chord (Do-Mi-Sol-Do)
   Review the singing of the primary chord pattern (do-mi-sol-do). Explain to the children that if we put these notes together and sang them or played them simultaneously, we would produce a chord. This is called the tonic or I chord. This chord is sometimes outlined in melodies where we sing only one note at a time.

1) Have children sing the pattern from syllables chart. Divide the class into three groups and sing chord.

2) Have three children simultaneously play chord on resonator bells.

3) Look for examples in other songs in the text books.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPERS FOR THE TEACHER

Vocal Activities

f. Specific intervals are listed here.

a. Example: HRW, p. 19

"He's Got The Whole World In His Hands"

He's got the whole world
sol -sol-sol- sol -mi-do

Example: Follett, p. 90-91

"Cuckoo"

hul - dri - ah
(sol - mi - do)

3) Example: Follett, p. 184 "Fengyang Drum"
   a) Read and discuss the words and the origin of the song.
   b) Have the children find "do."
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To Read Music - cont'd. | b. Isolate these sequences, then play or sing them.  
c. Determine whether the rhythm is also repetitious or sequential.  
d. Listen for repetition and sequence in listening activities. |

4. Recognizing Like Phrases
When teaching a new song by rote, have the children listen for like-phrases. While the teacher sings the song on the syllable "loo," a phrase at a time, the phrases should be labeled by the children by letter, each like-phrase having the same letter. The letters should be written on the board.

In singing songs by note, the children should get into the habit of looking for like-phrases before they start to sing the song.
**VOCAL ACTIVITIES**

**HELPS FOR THE TEACHER**

c) See also HRW, p. 38, 87, 112, 124, 184

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4. Examples for like phrases:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. HRW, p. 36-37 &quot;The Minstrel Boy&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 1 - A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 2 - B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 3 - A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 4 - B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. HRW, p. 207 &quot;Music in the Air&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 1 - A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 2 - A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 3 - B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 4 - B'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Follett, p. 66 &quot;Pierlala&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 1 - A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 2 - A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 3 - B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 4 - C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Follett, p. 59 &quot;Midsummer Eve&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 1 - A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 2 - B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 3 - C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 4 - D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase 5 - B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

GOALS

To Sing in Harmony

ACTIVITIES

A. Children should be able to sing simple accompaniments (harmonies) and music in two and three parts.

1. Try singing a song adding a simple ostinato. (Music written in the pentatonic (do-re-mi-sol-la) lends itself to short music accompaniments.)

   a. Example: "All God's Chillen Got Shoes" (p. 110-113 teacher's manual of Threshold to Music)

   b. Use other pentatonic songs.

      1) Children will probably have greater success if they begin by improvising an instrumental ostinato on the bells or Orff Instruments, and then adding words to these so that they might be sung.

2. Review rounds, canons, and descants

   a. Refer to suggestions in texts.

   b. Combination Rounds - The following rounds can be sung together:

      "Make New Friends"
      "Sing Together"
      "Three Blind Mice"
      "Are You Sleeping?"
      "Row Your Boat"
**VOCAL ACTIVITIES**

**HELPS FOR THE TEACHER**

1. "Ostinato" - Short, repeated pattern

   a. Example: Ostinato for "All God's Chillen"

   ![Ostinato Example](image)

   I've got shoes

   

   b. Other Suggested songs in the pentatonic:
   1. See HRW, t.e., Index - p. 332
   2. See Orff Guide, p. 40 (Lists Follett songs)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Threshold to Music and Teacher's Manual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HRW text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follett text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orff guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. a. Suggested Songs:
   1. HRW - t.e., p. 332 (Index)
      a. Descants
      b. Rounds and Canons
   2. Follett - t.e., p. 220
      "Rounds, Canons, and Descants"

   b. Examples of Combination Rounds:

   "Make New Friends"

   ![Example Sheet Music](image)

   Make new friends, but keep the old,

   One is sil-ver and the oth-er gold.
GOALS

To Sing in Harmony - con't

c. Partner Songs - These are a combination of two different songs which can be sung together.
Example: "Solomon Levi"
          "Spanish Cavalier"

3. Reviewing Two-part Singing
   a. Divide class into two parts. One half sing do-re-do-re-mi-fa-sol-la while the other half sings on ascending scale.
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

"Sing Together"

Sing, sing together, Merrily, Merrily sing;

Sing, Sing, Sing, Sing.

Partner songs are available in the following books:
"Partner Songs," Bechman, Ginn and Co.
"More Partner Songs," Bechman, Ginn and Co.

Golden Book of Favorite Songs.
Partner Songs
More Partner Songs

a. Some other easy exercises of the same type:
   do-re-mi-fa-mi-fa-sol
   do-re-do-re-do-re-mi
   do-re-mi-mi-fa-fa-sol
   do-re-do-do-re-re-mi
   do-mi-sol-la-sol
   do-do-mi-fa-mi
   mi-fa-sol-la-sol
   do-re-mi-fa-mi
   sol-la-ti-do-ti-la
   mi-fa-sol-la-sol-fa
   do-re-mi-fa-sol
   do-ti-do-re-mi
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

To Sing in Harmony - 'con't.

b. Divide class into two parts. One half thinks "do-re" then starts on "mi" and sings the scale up to "mi." The other half sings the scale from "do" to "do."

c. 1) Write on the board: do-re-mi-fa-sol-la-sol. Sing once or twice.
2) Write under it: do-re-do-re-mi-fa-mi. Sing once or twice.
3) Divide the class into two parts and sing them together. (Parts should not be sung separately often enough so they are memorized).

d. Harmonize in thirds by ear on a simple song.
The harmonization can be below (Mystic Lights)-HRW, p.150, or above ("Si Pilemon") - HRW, p. 148, the melody line. Singing in thirds above the melody line has a sound used in "barbershop quartet" music.

e. Sing many two-part songs.
1) Sing simple harmonies written in thirds as: "In Summer, the Sunshine Is Brightest" (HRW, p. 106)
"Wonderful Copenhagen" (HRW, p. 184)

2) Sing other two-part songs which are not basically sung in thirds:
"Tum Balalyka" (HRW, p. 22)
"These Things Shall Be" (HRW, p. 15)
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

Example: "I See the Moon"

I see the moon, the moon sees me,
Down through the leaves of the old oak tree,
Please let the light that shines on me,
Shine on the one I love.

Refrain:
Over the mountain, over the sea,
Back where my heart is longing to be,
Please let the light that shines on me,
Shine on the one I love.

I hear the lark, the lark hears me,
Singing a song with memory,
Please let the lark that sings to me,
Sing to the one I love. (Refrain)

Pitch this song in the key of F. It starts on low sol (middle C). Harmonize in thirds on the refrain. (The melody starts on "mi"; the harmony on "sol").

2) Notice whether the parts are moving in parallel motion (same direction) or are moving in contrary motion (opposite direction).
3. Use variations in teaching part songs.
   a) Combine instruments with voices. Play one part on the bells and then later add the words.
   b) The teacher may sing one part while the group sings the other.
   c) Have the class sing one part with the recording of the song, then try having the class sing another part on the next time through.
   d) Listen to the recording of the piece and follow one part visually in the book.
   e) Try to show by high and low hand signals the contour of one part either by listening to or looking at the music. (Usually the recordings use 2 definite voice qualities or instrument and voice combinations so that it is easy to follow the parts aurally.)

B. Introducing Three-part Singing
1. Sing a simple two-part song in thirds and add a descant.

2. Sing songs which have a melody part with the accompaniment part basically in thirds.

3. Sing songs which have a melody which follows a chord pattern and whose harmonies are also structured as chords.
   a) Review the primary chords.

   b) Review the scale.

   c) Building a Chord
   The children should be told that the I chord is built on the first note of the scale, the IV chord on the fourth note of the scale, and the V chord on the fifth note of the scale. The I and IV chords contain three notes. These notes are built of thirds above the root. The
3) See HRW, t.e., pp. iv and v

1. Example: "Du, du liegst mir im Herzen"
   (HRW, p. 72)

2. Example: "Spinn, spinn, meine liebe Tochter"
   (HRW, p. 70)

3. Example: "Jacob's Ladder"
   (HRW, p. 166)
   a) Use pages 16-17 in HRW to review the chords. This page is in the student text and gives a step-by-step procedure for review.
   b) In order to understand chords, the student should have a good understanding of the scale and its numbers.
   c) Key of C

   Key of F

   1st tone  4th 5th 1st tone 4th 5th 1st tone 4th 5th
### VOCAL ACTIVITIES

#### To Sing in Harmony - con't.

V7 chord contains four notes. These notes are also built of thirds above the root. The seventh of the V7 chord refers to the fact that the top tone of the chord is an interval of a seventh above the root of the chord.

In order to hear the harmony of these chords, the children should sing them by syllables:

- I chord - do-mi-sol
- IV chord - fa-la-ti
- V7 chord - sol-ti-re-fa

The IV and V7 chords should be sung starting on low fa and sol, respectively, when the top notes are out of the children's range.

### Inverted Chords

The chords are not always found in root position (do-mi-sol). A chord composed of mi-sol-do is also considered to be the I chord. It is said to be inverted. (Sometimes in the V7 chord the fifth note is left out. This does not change the chord significantly.)
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

KEY OF G

Examples:

Key of F

Key of E♭

Key of G

d) Examples:

Key of F

Key of E♭

Key of G
## To Sing in Harmony - con't.

### VOCAL ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>C, Distinguish between the sound of major and minor chords.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>![Diagram of major and minor chords]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>Notice the position of the intervals. Describe the difference in sound (minor is often said to sound somber, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>D. Distinguish between Dissonance and Consonance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>1) Sing songs which contain dissonances and contrast this sound with much of the rest of the piece.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>E. Distinguish between homophonic music and polyphonic music.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>1) Listen to music showing the two styles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>2) Find and sing homophonic and polyphonic music.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>F. Contemporary Ideas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>1. Songs based on Whole Tone Scale.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VOCAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

C. See HRW, p. 18 (t.e., p. 18)

D. "Dissonance" - tension, needs to be resolved. "Consonance" - Feels rested or complete.

1) Suggested songs:
   - HRW, p. 182 - "Inch Worm"
   - HRW, p. 55 - "Old Abram Brown"
   - HRW, p. 194 - "I Wonder As I Wander" (ends in dissonance)

E. See HRW text, p. 49 and 86
   "Homophonic" - Voices move together in harmony
   "Polyphonic" - Each voice sings an independent melody

1) HRW Records (text p. 49-51)
   Record 8, Side B, Band 1

2) Examples:
   a) HRW, p. 49 - "Lure Falcons, Lure" (polyphonic)
   b) HRW, p. 53 - "Come, Follow Me" (polyphonic)
   c) HRW, p. 86-87 - "Evening Prayer" (homophonic)
   d) HRW, p. 61 - See time line

1. Refer to "Elements of Music: Melody", HRW, p. 139
   Listen to "Voiles" by Debussy. (Composition based on whole tone scale)
**GOALS** | **ACTIVITIES**
--- | ---

To Sing in Harmony - con't. | 2. Songs based on the Twelve Tone Row
a. Listen to "Composition for Synthesizer" - HRW, p. 187 (Record 11, Side B, Band 4a-4c)
b. Listen to "Fourth String Quartet" HRW, p. 160 (Record 11, Side A, Band 4)
c. Study and sing "Play on Notes," HRW, p. 188

3. Songs that are Tonal, Atonal, and Polytonal.
   a. Listen to "Scaramouche Suite" (HRW record 11, Side A, Band 4)

V. To Create Music | A. Write a melody to a poem.
   Select a poem. Have the children discover the meter and write the notes for the rhythm of the first line. Establish the key by singing the scale or do-mi-sol-do. Have children suggest a melody. Choose the most interesting one and write it on the board. Continue in this manner until the song is completed. Try to develop a sense of unity. (One way this can be done is through repeated phrases). A variation of this activity would be to use a poem which the children have made up.

B. Write an opera.
   Group decides on a topic. The teacher starts by asking a question in singing. One child answers in singing. Teacher asks another question in singing, another child answers, etc. If something interesting develops, try to remember the melodies. Select a group to represent the chorus and other children to be soloists. Present the opera for another class.
   Listen to the record "Let's Make An Opera" by Benjamin Britten.

C. Write simple descants or harmony parts for songs.

D. Create music in Non-Traditional Tonalities
### VOCAL ACTIVITIES

#### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

2. All 12 tones of the chromatic scale are present.


A. See "poetry" in classified index of teacher's editions. (*Follett*, p. 22; **HRW**, p. 331)

Refer to page 41a, *Follett* text, *Teacher's Manual*

#### MATERIALS

- **HRW** text
- **HRW** text (t.e.)
- **HRW** records
- **HRW**, t.e.

- Record "Let's Make an Opera" by Benjamin Britten (London Recording) (IMC)

D. See "New Music of Your Own"

**HRW**, text (t.e.)

---

**ERIC**

398
Behavioral Objectives.

I. To develop music skills through use of melodic instruments.
   - The student will be able to play melodic patterns on the bells by note to accompany vocal selections.
   - Given the home tone, the student will be able to play the major scale and its relative minor on the keyboard.
   - The student will be able to play on the keyboard the I, IV, $V^7$ chords in the keys of C, F and G.
   - The student will be able to identify by letter names the notes in the treble and bass clefs.

II. To develop music skills through use of the autoharp.
   - The student will be able to play the autoharp by reading chord symbols or numerals in two- and three-chord accompaniments in the keys of C, F and G.

III. To develop music skills through use of rhythm instruments.
   - The student will be able to read and play rhythmic accompaniments to vocal selections on percussion instruments.

IV. To develop self-expression and imagination through creative instrumental experiences.
   - The student will be able to improvise rhythmic and harmonic accompaniments to familiar songs using the classroom or Orff instruments.
I. To Develop Music Skills Through Use of Melodic Instruments

A. Accompaniment to vocal music using Melody and Resonator Bells.

1. Select a song from "Instrumental Skills: Bells" in the classified index of the HRW text (t.e., p. 332) or from "With Parts for Instruments - Bells" from the classified index of the Follett text (t.e., p. 220).

2. In order to have all children learning the bell parts at one time, the teacher should ditto a representation of the resonator bells or melody bells that are used in this song. After the children have learned the song, teach them the bell part. Have half the class singing while the other half practices playing the bell part on the dittoed copies.

3. The teacher should accompany on bells. When they are practicing, this should be sung slower. When the entire class has had time to practice on their dittoed copy, select one child to play it on the bells while the class sings.

B. Accompaniment to Vocal Music Using the Orff Instruments

1. Refer to "Use of the Instruments" pp. 18-42 in Orff Guide.

2. Choose songs based on the pentatonic (5-tone) scale (Do-Re-Mi-Sol-La).

   a. HRW text
      p. 40 - "Turn Ye to Me"
p. 42 - "Comin' Thro' the Rye"
p. 144 - "The Purple Bamboo"
p. 147 - "Dune of Tosa"
p. 155 - "Arirang"


   c. Other song examples may be found in Orff Guide, pp. 21-38 and in Nash's Music With Children, Series I, II, and III, and Orff's Music For Children, Series I-V.
INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

Example: HRW, p. 20-21 "The Peddler"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>E</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Try to make these as close to the real size as possible, using one piece of construction paper for each child with the above set of bells. Pencils (eraser end) may be used for mallets. Children should aim to get a free bouncing movement.

Prepare the Orff Instruments by removing all bars that are not in the pentatonic scale for each song.

Example: Key of C - Use all bars of CDEGA
         Key of F - Use all bars of FGACD
         Key of G - Use all bars of GABDE

MATERIALS

HRW text, Follett text

Master code
White construction paper

Orff Instrument Guide

HRW text
Follett text

Nash, Music With Children (IMC)
Orff, Music For Children, (IMC)
C. Playing Melodies on Tuned Water Glasses

Build a major scale through tuning water glasses or pop bottles. The more water, the higher the pitch. Children can practice building different chords by blowing across the top of the bottles. Simple songs may be played such as "Mary Had A Little Lamb."

D. Accompaniment to Vocal Music Using the Pianet or Piano

1. Review the letter names of notes for treble and bass clefs.
   a. Names of the lines - Review the treble clef as the G clef, having the children notice that the curved loop of the clef sign goes around the G line. By using the first letters of the saying, "Every Good Boy Does Fine," we discover the letter names of the lines from bottom to top.

   Review the name of the lines of the bass or F clef by using the first letter of the saying "Good Boys Do Fine Always."

   b. Names of the Spaces for treble clef, use the word F-A-C-E from bottom space to top. For bass clef, use the first letter of the saying "All Cows Eat Grass."

   c. To review lines and spaces, have children make up words using the music alphabet by writing notes on the staff, the letter names of which spell a word. (See Vocal Resource for specific examples of stories using words written with notes).

2. Review Five-Finger Melodies in Keys of C and F.
INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

Bottles can be labeled one through eight and the water line marked with tape. In this way you can fill the bottles and build the scale faster for later use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Glasses or bottles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Teacher may wish to read through "Keyboard" detailed lesson plans, Part I (Lessons 1-12) which were used in grades 4 and 5. It may be necessary to review some of these lessons.

"Keyboard" detailed lesson plans.
Activities to make review more interesting:

a. Autoharp accompaniment - As a child plays a five tone melody and the class practices on their tagboard another child may accompany the tune on the autoharp. Ask the Music consultant to help figure out the Chords if they are not there.

b. Mystery songs - Since many of the songs suggested are very well known, teachers may write them on the board and have the class discover what the name is by playing it on the piano. After they discover the melody, have the children sing the song.

c. Transposing five-tone melodies - Have the class write out the syllables for a particular song. After they have completed this have them find these same syllables in another key. They may now play the same song in a new key.

3. Review the I and V7 chords.
   Follow the procedures given in part I (Grade 4-5) of the Keyboard lesson plans.
LIGHTLY ROW (Key of C)

OATS AND BEANS (Key of C)

JINGLE BELLS (Key of F)
### GOALS

To Develop Music Skills Through Use of Melodic Instruments - cont'd.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4. Introduce IV Chord in C Major, and harmonize C major melodies with I, IV, and V7 chords.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Introduce Major Scales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Introduction of Five Finger Melodies in G major and harmonizing with I, V7, and IV chords.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Accompany songs from text.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose songs from "Instrument Skills: Autoharp" in the classified index of the HRW text (p. 332) or from the list of two and three chord songs for Autoharp from the Follett text. Also see "Songs for Autoharp," in the instrumental resource section of this guide. Have the class sing while one or several children play the chords at the piano keyboard.

---

### II. To Develop Music Skills Through Use of Autoharp

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Review Autoharp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Review with children how to finger and strum the autoharp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Select songs from &quot;Songs for Autoharp&quot; in the Instrumental Resource Section of this guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. After the key of the song is determined, have the children locate on the autoharp the chords they will use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. The index finger goes on the I chord, the third finger on the V7 chord and the fourth finger on the IV chord. While one child actually plays the autoharp, the others should pretend to be fingering and strumming at their desks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUMENTAL ACTIVITIES

HELPs FOR THE TEAcher


7. Initially this should be done with songs having one chord and then two and three chords. When introducing songs with two or more chords, have one child designated to play the I chord, another to play the IV chord and another to play the V7 chord. (These would have to be played in different octaves) Each child should be ready to play his chord when it appears. Start by playing chords in the right hand and later with the left hand. Have the children follow the chord numerals initially and later play the chords by ear.

1. The classroom teacher should use the autoharp frequently in accompaniments that are too difficult for children to play. This helps children to associate harmony with the songs they sing.

3. Use Autoharp Charts found in each building.

4. Children in the sixth grade should be able to play two and three chord accompaniments on the autoharp in the keys of C, F and G.

A breakdown of the chords in each key is as follows:

Key of G
I chord (tonic) - G Major
V7 chord (dominant-seventh) - D Seventh
IV chord (sub-dominant) - C Major

Key of F
I chord (tonic) - F Major
V7 chord (dominant-seventh) - C Seventh
IV chord (sub-dominant) - B Flat Major
### GOALS

| III. To Develop Music Skills Through Use of Rhythm and Other Instruments |
| A. Accompaniment to Vocal Music Using Percussion Instruments. |
| 1. Refer to suggestions in HRW teacher's edition. |
| 2. See Follett Classified Index, "With Parts for Instruments," p. 221. |
| B. Accompaniment to Vocal Music with Band or String Instruments. |
| 1. Refer to suggestions in HRW teacher's edition. |

| IV. To Develop Self-Expression and Imagination Through Creative Instrumental Experiences |
| A. Experimentation and Composition. |
| 1. "Compose Electronic Music" (See HRW, p. 186). |
| 2. "Compose Percussion Accompaniments" (See HRW, p. 132). |
| 3. "Compose New Music of Your Own" (See HRW, p. 162-163). |
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

1. **Suggested Songs from HRW:**
   - p. 12 - "Swinging Along"
   - p. 20 - "The Peddler"
   - p. 122 - "Me gustan todas"
   - p. 124 - "Río Río"
   - p. 127 - "In Bāhia"

### MATERIALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HRW text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Percussion Instruments</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HRW text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Band and String Instruments</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Suggested songs from HRW:

1. p. 8 - "God of Our Fathers" (Trumpet, Clarinet, flute or violin)
2. p. 47 - "Greensleeves" (Violin)
3. p. 50 - "Now is the Month of Maying" (flute)
4. p. 90 - "The Herdsman" (Violin, clarinet, string bass)
5. p. 94 - "Plowing Song" (Flute)
6. p. 117 - "Far in the Mountains" (Flute, Violin, or French Horn)
7. p. 122 - "Me gustan todas" (Trumpet, clarinet, or flute)
8. p. 150 - "Mystic Lights" (Flute or Violin)
9. p. 197 - "Christmas is Coming" (Flute or violin)
CLASSROOM LISTENING PROGRAM

Behavioral Objectives.

I. To develop good listening habits.
   - The student will develop good listening habits by:
     a. being attentive during performances.
     b. being respectful of performers.
     c. being considerate of other members of the audience.
     d. showing appreciation through applause.

II. To distinguish between various mediums of performance.
   - Given recorded examples of orchestral music selections, the student will be able to identify the medium of performance and featured solo instruments.

III. To distinguish between various forms of music and music of various composers.
   - The student will be able to state distinguishing features of the following musical forms:
     a. concerts
     b. symphony
     c. overture
     d. opera
     e. suite
     f. ballet
     g. operetta
     h. musical comedy
     i. program music
     j. jazz
   - Given recorded examples of music by Beethoven and Stravinsky, the student will identify the composer and list major identifying characteristics of the music of the era the composer represents.
   - The student will be able to state contemporary innovations regarding the organization of musical sound.

IV. To develop self-expression and imagination through creative listening activities.
   - The student will be able to respond to music with physical movements expressive of the tempo, meter, rhythm, melody, harmony and mood.
   - The student will be able to respond orally to music in terms of its tonal organization.
### GOALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I. To develop good listening habits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

A. The children should have one listening experience a week.
   1. The sixth grade listening program has been divided into nine parts. It is recommended that one month be spent on each part.

B. Provide purposeful listening experiences.
   1. Establish an atmosphere conducive to good listening by preparing and motivating students to be attentive, receptive and responsive.
   2. Instill habits of courtesy and proper audience conduct.
      a. Respect for performers
      b. Appreciation shown through applause

| II. To Distinguish Between Various Mediums of Performance |

A. Review Instruments of the Orchestra
   1. See HRW text
      a. String family - p. 62
      b. Woodwind family - p. 104
      c. Brass family - p. 118
      d. Percussion family - p. 142
      e. Ancient Instruments - p. 156
   2. Listen to Britten's "Young Person's Guide to the Orchestra" (HRW, pp. 57-59)
   3. Listen for various instruments in other recordings.
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

Listen for something specific during each playing of a record; the rhythm, changes in tempo, dynamic contrasts, repeated phrases or sections, melodic.

Refer to section on "Exploring Music Through Listening"

1. For additional review, use IMC films:
   a. "The String Choir" - F-8032
   b. "The Woodwind Choir" - F-8041
   c. "The Brass Choir" - F-8005
   d. "The Percussion Group" - F-8028

2. Refer to HRW, p. 55 for notes on Benjamin Britten's life.

3. Suggested recordings:
   d. "Halling, Opus 72, No. 4", HRW, p. 111, Record 10.
   e. "Dansa" from Backianas Brasileiras No. 4, HRW, p. 125, Record 7.
   f. "Voiles" from Piano Preludes, Book I, HRW, p. 95
      Record 8.

MATERIALS

Record series:
   HRW records
   Adventures in Music Listening
   Musical Sound Books
   RCA Listening Activities
   Vox "Music Masters" Series
   Individual records.

HRW Teacher's Edition

HRW text
IMC films

HRW, Record 9
HRW, Record 11
HRW Record 10
HRW Record 7
HRW Record 8
HRW Record 11
III. To Distinguish Between Various Forms of Music and Music of Various Composers

A. The Symphony and the Concerto

1. Introduce the Concerto

Have the class evolve a definition of concerto after listening and answering questions like these listed below:

a. What is the solo instrument?

b. Does the piece begin with a solo instrument or the whole orchestra? (or you could have the students raise their hands when the soloist first plays).

c. Which passages seem more difficult - solo passages or parts for the whole orchestra?

d. Does the solo instrument play all the time?

e. Does the solo instrument ever play without any orchestral accompaniment?

f. Do you think the soloist is playing a melody or does he seem to be playing scales?

g. Does the orchestra ever play a melody? Is it just accompanying?

h. A cadenza could be described beforehand so the students could raise their hand at the beginning of the cadenza.

i. Is the cadenza near the beginning or the end?

2. Introduce the Symphony

a. Ask the children if they know what a symphony orchestra is. Conclude that a symphony orchestra is a large orchestra which plays classical music. One form that a symphony orchestra performs is that of a symphony.
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

1. See definition for "concerto" in Listening Resource Section of this guide, and notes on famous concertos.
   Suggested examples:
   
   "Concerto for Piano in A Minor"
   (IMC: K-5093 or R-1100) "Great Piano Concertos" (IMC: K-5089)
   
   Also check building record library for additional concertos. If available, use IMC film "What is a Concerto?" IMC: F-4056


   a. A symphony is a rather long work usually divided into sections called movements. These movements generally are the following:

      I - allegro or fast
      II - adagio or very slow
      III - minuet or scherzo, light and moderate to fast
      IV - finale, or fast
### LISTENING ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>To Distinguish Between Various Forms of Music and Music of Various Composers - cont'd</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Have the children list famous composers who they think might have written one or more symphonies.

c. Listen to "Symphony #40 in G Minor" (First and Third Movements) HRW, pp. 88-89, HRW, Record 9, Side A, Bands 2-3.

d. Listen to additional examples of symphonies.

---

### B. The Overture and Opera

1. The Overture


   b. Listen to "Egmont Overture," HRW, p. 76, Record 8.

   c. Listen to the overture from "The Mastersingers of Nuremberg," HRW, p. 100-103, Record 10.

   d. Choose additional overtures.
Listening Activities

Helps for the Teacher

At a serious concert, a symphony orchestra usually performs a symphony. This might take one half of the concert time. Since the symphony is divided into "movements," some people think the symphony is over and clap at the wrong time. At lighter concerts, only one movement of the symphony might be performed.

b. Some famous composers and the number of symphonies they have written are:

- Haydn - 104
- Beethoven - 9
- Brahms - 4
- Mozart - 48

c. Refer to teaching suggestions in HRW, t.e., and in Listening Resource Section.

d. Suggested examples:
1) See list in Listening Resource Section.
2) IMC: K-5078 - "The Classic Symphony"
3) IMC: K-5086 - "Musical Kaleidoscope"
4) IMC: K-5010 - "New World Symphony" - Dvorak
5) IMC: K-5094 - "Surprise Symphony" - Haydn
6) IMC: K-5083 - "Symphonic Movement", No. 1"
7) IMC: K-5082 - "Symphonic Styles"
8) IMC: K-5041 - "Young People's Concerts" - I
9) IMC: R-1116 - "Toy Symphony"
10) IMC: F-4055 - "What Makes Music Symphonic?"
11) IMC: K-5091 - "Bernstein on Beethoven"

Materials

1. See "Overture" in Listening Resource Section
   a. This is also found at IMC, K-5090. (Scores, record, pictures).

   c. Teacher may wish to study this overture with the rest of the opera. IMC has this record with an accompanying filmstrip (K-5061).

   d. See list of overtures in listening resource section.
### GOALS

To Distinguish Between Various Forms of Music and Music of Various Composers, cont'd.

### ACTIVITIES

#### 2. The Opera

b. Listen to one or two other operas.

#### C. The Suite, Ballet, and Program Music

1. The Suite
a. Listen to examples in HRW records.

b. Listen to additional examples.

2. The Ballet
a. Listen to "Le Cid Ballet Suite" HRW, pp. 136-137, Record 11.

b. Choose other ballet recordings in building and IMC.
### LISTENING ACTIVITIES

#### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

**2. See "Opera" in Listening Resource Section**

a. Refer to teaching suggestions in **HRW, t.e.** (or IMC: K-5061)

b. Suggested examples:
   1) "Aida" - Verdi (IMC: K-5025 or K-5095)
   2) "The Barber of Seville" - Rossini (IMC: K-5060)
   3) "Coppelia" - Delibes (IMC: K-5062)
   4) "Great Operatic Composers" - (IMC: K-5088)
   5) "Hansel & Gretel" - Humperdinck (IMC: K-5002)
   6) "Lohengrin" - Wagner (IMC: K-5023) (Also in boxed unit in building)
   7) "Magic Flute" - Mozart (IMC: K-5024)
   8) "William Tell" - Rossini (IMC: K-5059)
   9) "Aida" - Highlights (IMC: R-1124)
  10) "Amahl and the Night Visitors"
  11) "Operas for Girls and Boys"

**1. See "Suite" in Listening Resource Section.**

a. Suggested Examples
   1) "Scaramouche Suite" - p. 161, Record 11
   2) "Solveig's Song" from Peer Gynt Suite, p. 110, Record 7 (also Follett, p. 54)
   3) "Farandole" from L'Arlesienne Suite, p. 26, Record 8. (or A.M., Grade 6, Vol. 1)

b. Additional Examples
   1) See list of building records in Listening Resource Section.
   2) "Carnival of the Animals" - (IMC: K-5008)
   3) "Children's Corner Suite" - (IMC: K-5048)
   4) "Grand Canyon Suite" - (IMC: K-5012)
   5) "Peer Gynt Suite" - (IMC: K-5004)
   6) "Billy the Kid" - (IMC: K-5007 (or A.M. Grade 6, Vol. 1)).
   7) "Kinderscenen" - Schumann

**2. See "Ballet" in Listening Resource Section.**

b. Additional suggestions:
   1) See list of building recordings in Listening resource section.
   2) "The Firebird" - Stravinsky (IMC: K-5005)
   3) "Petrouchka" - Stravinsky (IMC: K-5014)
   4) "The Nutcracker" - Tchaikovsky (IMC: K-5003)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To Distinguish Between Various Forms of Music and Music of Various Composers - cont'd.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 3. Program Music  
  b. Choose other program music recordings in building or IMC. |
| D. The Operetta and the Musical Comedy  
  1. The Operetta  
     a. Choose an operetta from building record library.  
  2. The Musical Comedy  
     a. Play available recordings of musicals. |
LISTENING ACTIVITIES

   a. In addition to suggestions in HRW, try the following:
      1) Discuss what Bohemia might be like and what might be seen along this river.
      2) Have a paper river on the bulletin board. Have children put the following cut-out figures for each scene the river passes: black castle, horn for hunters, couple for wedding dance, wiggly blue line for rapids, houses for Prague, etc.
   b. Suggested examples:
      1) "Til Eulenspiegel's Merry Pranks" - Keyboard Junior Boxed Unit
      2) "Fountains of Rome" - (IMC: K-5047)
      3) "Peter and the Wolf" - (IMC: K-5092, K-5001)
      4) "Scheherazade" - (IMC: K-5046)
      5) "Sorcerer's Apprentice" - (IMC: K-5006)
      6) "Pictures at an Exhibition" - (IMC: K-5041)
      7) "Stories Told in Music" - Keyboard Jr. Boxed Unit

1. See "Operetta" in Listening Resource Section.
   a. Suggested recordings:
      1) "H.M.S. Pinofore" - Gilbert & Sullivan
      2) "The Mikado" - Gilbert & Sullivan
      3) "Babes in Toyland" - Herbert
      4) "The King & I" - Rodgers & Hammerstein

   a. Suggested recordings:
      1) "Most Happy Fella"
      2) "Sound of Music"
      3) "Hans Christian Andersen"
      4) "Guys & Dolls"
      5) "Oliver"
      6) "Half A Sixpence"
      7) "The Music Man"
      8) "Oklahoma"
      9) "Carousel"
     10) "Bye Bye Birdie"
## LISTENING ACTIVITIES

### GOALS

To Distinguish Between Various Forms of Music and Music of Various Composers - cont'd.

### ACTIVITIES

#### E. Music of the Twentieth Century

1. American Folk Music
   b. See "Stephen Foster," HRW, p. 165
   d. Listen to "Music of the American Indian," IMC: K-5075
   e. See "Twentieth Century America," IMC: K-5084.

2. American Jazz
   a. See HRW, pp. 173-175 for discussion of the various eras of jazz.
   b. Listen to "Creation of the World," HRW, p. 177, Record 11. (A composition based on jazz rhythms and jazz harmonies)

3. Electronic Music
   b. Listen to "Electronic Music" (IMC: R-1086)

4. Other Contemporary Music
   b. Listen to Music by other contemporary composers.

#### F. Beethoven and His Music

1. Beethoven's Life Story
   a. Use record, filmstrip or film for a summary of his life.
   b. See notes on his life in Listening Resource Section.
**LISTENING ACTIVITIES**

**HELP FOR THE TEACHER**

b. Teacher may wish to play recording of some of Foster's songs. (Some buildings have "Stephen Foster Favorites").

**MATERIALS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HRW text</th>
<th>IMC Materials</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For additional study of jazz, choose from the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) &quot;Understanding Jazz&quot; - IMC: K-5077</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) &quot;What is Jazz?&quot; (Bernstein) - IMC: R-1119</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| HRW, t.e. | HRW, Record 11 |
| IMC: R-1086 |               |

| a. See discussion in HRW, t.e., pp. 160-162 | HRW, t.e., HRW, Record 11 |

| b. See sections in this guide on Stravinsky and American Composers (Gershwin, Ives, Copland, Barber) |               |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a. Suggested resources:</th>
<th>IMC: kit, film, and filmstrip</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) &quot;Beethoven&quot; - IMC: FS-1031</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) &quot;Beethoven and His Music&quot; - IMC: F-3022</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) &quot;Bernstein on Beethoven&quot; - IMC: K-5091</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4) &quot;Leonard Bernstein on Beethoven&quot; - IMC: R-1118</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GOALS

**To Distinguish Between Various Forms of Music and Music of Various Composers - cont'd.**

### ACTIVITIES

2. Listen to works by Beethoven.

3. Discover identifying characteristics of music of this time.

### G. Stravinsky and His Music

1. Stravinsky's Life Story
   - a. See notes on his life in Listening Resource Section, and in teacher's guide of IMC materials.

2. Listen to works by Stravinsky.

3. Discover identifying characteristics of music of this time.

### H. Contemporary American Composers

1. Use IMC kit on "American Composers" (K-5076) and additional recordings by these four composers:
   - a. Aaron Copland - (This composer was also studied in grade 5, so a brief review is sufficient).

   b. George Gershwin

   c. Charles Ives

   d. Samuel Barber
### HELPS FOR THE TEACHER

#### LISTENING ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR THE TEACHER</th>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. Suggested Works:</strong></td>
<td><strong>HRW, t.e.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. &quot;Egmont Overture&quot; - HRW, p. 76-77, Record 8</td>
<td><strong>HRW, Record 8</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. &quot;Symphony #5 in C Minor&quot;</td>
<td><strong>A.M. Record</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. &quot;Symphony #9&quot;</td>
<td><strong>MSB Records</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. &quot;Rondino&quot; - MSB - Yellow label</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. &quot;Emperor Concerto #5 in Eb Major&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. Suggested Works:</strong></td>
<td><strong>IMC kits</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. &quot;The Firebird&quot; - IMC: K-5005</td>
<td><strong>A.M. Records</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. &quot;Petrouchka&quot; - IMC: K-5014</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. &quot;Rite of Spring&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. &quot;Berceuse&quot; (Firebird Suite) - A.M., Grade 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. &quot;Infernal Dance of King Kastchei&quot; (Firebird Suite) A.M., Gr. 5, Vol. II</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1. Refer to notes on composer's lives in Listening Resource Section of this guide and in record manual.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HELPS FOR THE TEACHER</th>
<th>MATERIALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Suggested Music of Copland:</td>
<td><strong>IMC kits and records</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) &quot;Buckaroo Holiday&quot; (Rodeo) - IMC: K-5076</td>
<td><strong>A.M. Records</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) &quot;Appalachian Spring&quot; - IMC: K-5076</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) &quot;Billy the Kid&quot; - IMC: K-5007 and 5041</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4) &quot;Hoe-Down&quot; (Rodeo) - IMC: R-1021 or A.M., Gr. 5, Vol. II</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5) &quot;Street in a Frontier Town&quot; (Billy the Kid) A.M., Gr. 6, Vol. I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6) &quot;The Red Pony Suite&quot; (Circus Music) A.M., Gr. 3, Vol. I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Suggested Music of Gershwin:</td>
<td><strong>IMC kits</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) &quot;An American in Paris&quot; - IMC: K-5076</td>
<td><strong>A.M. Records</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) &quot;Rhapsody in Blue&quot; - IMC: K-5076</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Suggested Music of Ives:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) &quot;The Greatest Man&quot; - IMC: K-5076</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) &quot;Symphony #2&quot; - IMC: K-5041</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) &quot;Ives Music for Chorus&quot; - IMC: R-1055</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Suggested Music of Barber:</td>
<td><strong>IMC kit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) &quot;Violin Concerto&quot; - 2nd Movement - IMC:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>K-5076</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## LISTENING ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOALS</th>
<th>ACTIVITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| IV. To Develop Self-Expression and Imagination Through Creative Listening Activities | A. Physical Response  
1. Marching, walking, etc.  
2. Dance and creative movement  
3. Group interpretation  
4. Pantomine the story of the music. |
|       | B. Oral or Written Response |
|       | C. Pictorial Response |
The Moveable "Do" System of Music Reading

The system of note reading taught in the Bloomington Elementary Schools is the moveable "do" system and uses the syllables to describe the various tones. This system is based upon the chromatic scale of thirteen tones within the normal octave illustrated as follows:

One-Octave Ascending

```
do  di  re  ri  mi  fa  fi  sol  si  la  li  ti  do
```

One Octave Descending

```
do  ti  te  la  le  sol  se  fa  mi  me  re  ra  do
```

The underlined syllables are those normally used to describe the eight tones used in the diatonic major scale. The steps between these tones are not all of equal size, some being whole steps, some half steps, as evidenced by the irregular pattern of notes underlined in the above illustration. However, a regular scale pattern is established as follows:

```
do  re  mi  fa  1/2  sol  la  ti  do
step  step  step  step  step  step  step  step
```

Due to this irregularity of steps, it is of great importance to determine the position of a given note in the scale before determining if the next note is one whole step or one-half step higher or lower. For example, in the illustration below, to sing from "fa" to the note below it "mi", one-half step is taken. On the other hand, to sing from "fa" to the next note higher "sol", one whole step would be taken. Therefore, it is important to establish the tonality relationship, or the scale, for a song when determining the first or beginning note.
The ability to read music notation without direction, which is a basic objective in our music program, is facilitated through the use of this system in that the relationship between syllables is constant, regardless of the key in which the song is written.

To help identify the scale for a particular song, it is necessary to recognize the three basic rules for finding "do" or the beginning note of the scale. These rules are most simply stated in this manner:

1. When there are no sharps or flats, the key is "C" and "do" is on the "C" line or space.

2. When there are sharps in the key signature, the right hand sharp is "ti". Count up or down to "do".

3. When there are flats in the key signature, the right hand flat is "fa". Count up or down to "do".

In utilizing the information, the teacher and children can find the proper scale and identify the whole and half steps as they exist before beginning to sing the song.

In reading a song by note, the children just identify the syllables, then sing them using a pointing finger to progress from syllable to syllable. This can be done a variety of ways and reference should be made to the recommendations for note reading in the Guide.

Altered tones, that is notes that are changed by accidentals (sharps, flats, or natural signs) not in the key signature, occur in the music. These changes are used to effect tonal effects that are desired by the composer. (Common examples of these are: fa = fi; ti = te.) These and all other altered tones can be seen in the chromatic scale. They are all the tones which are not found in the diatonic major scale.

The four basic scales referred to in this Guide are explained on the following page.
Major scale - Eight tones forming the following pattern:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{do} & \quad \text{re} & \quad \text{mi} & \quad \text{fa} & \quad \text{sol} & \quad \text{la} & \quad \text{ti} & \quad \text{do} \\
1 & \quad 1 & \quad \frac{1}{2} & \quad 1 & \quad 1 & \quad \frac{1}{2} & \quad 1 & \quad \frac{1}{2}
\end{align*}
\]

(Natural Minor Scale) - Eight tones forming the following pattern:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{la} & \quad \text{ti} & \quad \text{do} & \quad \text{re} & \quad \text{mi} & \quad \text{fa} & \quad \text{sol} & \quad \text{la} \\
1 & \quad \frac{1}{2} & \quad 1 & \quad 1 & \quad \frac{1}{2} & \quad 1 & \quad 1 & \quad 1
\end{align*}
\]

(Harmonic Minor Scale) - Eight tones forming the following pattern:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{la} & \quad \text{ti} & \quad \text{do} & \quad \text{re} & \quad \text{mi} & \quad \text{fa} & *\text{si} & \quad \text{la} \\
1 & \quad \frac{1}{2} & \quad 1 & \quad 1 & \quad \frac{1}{2} & \quad 1 & \quad \frac{1}{2} & \quad 1
\end{align*}
\]

(Melodic Minor Scale) - Eight tones forming the following pattern:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{la} & \quad \text{ti} & \quad \text{do} & \quad \text{re} & \quad \text{mi} & \quad \text{fi} & *\text{si} & \quad \text{la} \\
1 & \quad \frac{1}{2} & \quad 1 & \quad 1 & \quad 1 & \quad \frac{1}{2}
\end{align*}
\]

* "si" is sol raised one-half step.

A note of historical interest which may be pointed out is that Guido of Arezzo, a Benedictine monk, planned a method of teaching the reading of music, improved the system of writing notes and established a six-tone scale. He noticed a hymn that went up one degree with each of the first six lines, so he used the first syllables of the first word in each line to name the tones of the scale.

\begin{align*}
\text{Ut queant laxis} & \quad \text{Mira gestorum} & \quad \text{Solve polluti} \\
\text{Resonare fibris} & \quad \text{Famuli tuorum} & \quad \text{Labii reatum Sancte Joannes}
\end{align*}

Ut was changed to do, ti was added and from this our scale was evolved.
HAND SIGNALS

do - 8

ti - 7

la - 6

sol - 5

fa - 4

mi - 3

re - 2

do - 1
Songs from Exploring Music listed according to key.

These songs have been categorized by key in order to make choosing a song for note singing easier for the teacher.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Song in key of F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Roll On, Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Swinging Along</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Streets of Laredo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>A Hundred Years Ago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Let Us Break Bread Together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Cockles and Muscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>In Bahia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Il est ne'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Songs in D minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tum Balalyka (# fa = &quot;fi&quot;, # sol = &quot;si&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
<td>Hungarian Round</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>Summer Magic (# sol = &quot;si&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Songs in Eb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Home Road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Peace of the River</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>God of Our Fathers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>The Minstrel Boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>A New Year Carol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128</td>
<td>Water Come A Me Eye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Hosanna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208</td>
<td>The American Hymn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Songs in key of C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Swan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Merry Minstrels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Come, Follow Me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>My Heart Ever Faithful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>The Herdsman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>168</td>
<td>Ev'ry Night When the Sung Goes In</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Songs in key of C minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When V and I Together Meet (#fa = &quot;fi&quot;,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>#sol = &quot;si&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>Farewell, Beloved Homeland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>Far in the Mountains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Songs in key of A minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Johnny Has Gone for a Soldier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Shule Aroon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>I Came Home Late One Evening</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Exploring Music Songs - cont.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Songs in key of G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tallis' Canon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Now Is the Month of Maying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>Jesu, Joy of Man's Desiring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205</td>
<td>Lieb Nachtigall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Songs in key of E minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>The Peddler (#re = &quot;ri&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Ghost of Tom (#sol = &quot;si&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Old Abram Brown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Songs in key of D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>These Things Shall Be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Come O'er the Stream, Charlie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>Alleluia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>Glockenjodlev</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Songs in key of Bb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Ma bella bimba (#sol = &quot;si&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>In Summer the Sunshine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Songs in key of G minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>133</td>
<td>La Larara (#sol = &quot;si&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158</td>
<td>The Night Piece</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Songs from Follett text listed according to key.

These songs have been categorized by keys in order to make choosing a song for note singing easier for the teacher.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Reap the Flax (easy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Paul on the Hillside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>The Happy Plowman (easy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>The Crafty Cow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>Dance Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118</td>
<td>Yes or No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Donkey Riding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>The Ash Grove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Weel May the Keel Row</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>The Holly and the Ivy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>Angels We Have Heard on High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>Dancing Through Lorraine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>How Brightly Shines the Morning Star (#fa = &quot;fi&quot;, #re = &quot;ri&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>Spring Gladness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>Austrian Hymn (#fa = &quot;fi&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Cuckoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>Gypsy Dance (refrain only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Rise Now, Oh Shepherds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Christ is Born</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>The Lark Is Singing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td>The Power of Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>152</td>
<td>Bluebells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>Night Herding Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Gaelic Lullaby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Robin Hood and the Tanner (#fa = &quot;fi&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>The Rommel Drum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>With Sound of Pipe and Flute and Drum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118</td>
<td>Come and Sing Together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147</td>
<td>Chimes at Night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>168</td>
<td>The Cat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>183</td>
<td>Poor Wayfaring Stranger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>This Is My Father's World</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Rosalil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Hunting Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>The Spinner (#fa = &quot;fi&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
<td>Niño Querido (bti = &quot;te&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>Hu-Ya!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>178</td>
<td>The Home Road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192</td>
<td>Remember All the People</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Harvest Song (easy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>The Mountains of Norway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Summer Evening (easy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Sarasponda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>Holla Hi Holla Ho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>At Break of Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136</td>
<td>Congo Lullaby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156</td>
<td>Greens and Beans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>La Cucaracha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>193</td>
<td>Prayer for Peace</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>The Farmer and the Crow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Maiden's Song</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>Fun, Fun, Fun (#sol = &quot;si&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>Sleigh Bells (#sol = &quot;si&quot;)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Keep the Ball A-Rolling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>O, No, John</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>The Quaker's Wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Cockles and Mussels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>High in Hooke Valley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Kermis Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>Paris in the Morning (easy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>Vrenell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Dear Nightingale, Awake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>The Wedding of the Birds (easy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>Laughing Round</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>The Bobolink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>Ho-Be Di-ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145</td>
<td>Song of the Gurkha Boys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>153</td>
<td>Ahrirang</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Skye Boat Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Old Abram Brown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132</td>
<td>Zum Gali Gali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135</td>
<td>Shalom Chaverim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Camptown Races</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Per Spelman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td>The Meadow Near the Brook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>Wedding in Krakow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155</td>
<td>Kookaburra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184</td>
<td>The Little Mohee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td><strong>Songs in key of B♭</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Maple Leaf Forever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>'Tis Irish I Am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>A Song of the Sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td><strong>Ma Bela Bimba (#sol = &quot;si&quot;)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119</td>
<td><strong>The Birch Tree (#sol = &quot;si&quot;)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td><strong>Songs in key of A♭ or A</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Wee Cooper of Pife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Midsummer Eve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>The Invitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td><strong>Songs in G Minor</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|      | Robin Hood (#fa = "fi"  
|      |   #sol = "si")                            |
| 47   | Shepherd's Song (#sol = "si"  
|      |   #la = "li")                             |
| 61   | Vainamoinen's Gift                        |
| 55   | **Song in F Minor**                       |
|      | Spring Song (#sol = "si")                |
Instruction: Place the proper letter names of the notes in the blanks below them. Then read the story.

GEORGE FREDERICK HANDEL 1685-1759

Handel's for- him to musician, but told him to pro-

lawyer. Handel dr- this and slyly -n
to practice in the attic an' soon me -le
play agr- -ly well on the clavichord, which is a gr-
-l like our piano. One -y he
r- ter his 's carri-
to ride to the Duke's pal-

While there Handel sat on the of the organ -r
and pro- to play. The Duke's
happily and he played with the musician. From legal study, he later wrote "The Messiah."

JOHANN SEBASTIAN BACH 1685-1750

At the age of ten, Bach was an orphan. His brother then took care of him.

Brother Christoph would also take Johann music. Once young Johann

Brother Christoph would also take Johann music. Once young Johann

music. Christoph took it away. Johann
to have it worked like ever. But his brother was

to his pla., Nevertheless Johann's

didn't and he su-

-oming mous. He once won a -use of his good organ playing. The

of Bach to the progress of music.
INSTRUMENTAL RESOURCE

Songs for Autoharp (Keys of C, F and G)

One-Chord Songs:

Choral Grade

F   F   F   F   F
For health and strength and daily food
F   F   F   F   F
We give Thee thanks, O Lord.

ARE YOU SLEEPING?

F   F   F   F
Are you sleeping, Are you sleeping?
F   F   F   F
Brother John, Brother John?
F   F   F   F
Morning bells are ringing, Morning bells are ringing.
F   F   F   F
Ding ding dong, ding ding dong.

LITTLE TOM TINKER

C   C   C   C   C
Little Tom Tinker got burned with a clinker
C   C   C   C   C
And he began to cry,
C   C   C   C   C
"Oh, Mamma! Oh, Mamma!"
C   C   C   C   C
What a poor fellow am I."

Two-Chord Songs:

MARY HAD A LITTLE LAMB

F   F   F   C7   C7   F   F
Mary had a little lamb, little lamb, little lamb.
F   F   F   C7   C7   F   F
Mary had a little lamb, its fleece was white as snow.

MULBERRY BUSH

G   G   G   C   B   D7   D7
Here we go round the mulberry bush, the mulberry bush,
D7   D7
the mulberry bush
G   G   G   G   D7   D7   G   G
Here we go round the mulberry bush so early in the morning.
TEN LITTLE INDIANS
G    G    G    G
One little, two little, three little Indians
D7   D7   D7   D7
Four little, five little, six little Indians
G    G    G    G
Seven little, eight little, nine little Indians
D7   D7   G
Ten little Indian boys!

SUSIE LITTLE SUSIE
F            C7            F
Susie, little Susie, now what is the news?
Susie, little Susie, some pennies I pray.
                      F            F            C7            F
The geese are going barefoot because they've no shoes.
To buy a little supper of sugar and whey.
                      C7            F            C            F
The cobbler has leather, but no last has he,
I'll sell my nice bed, and go sleep on the straw.
                      F            F            C7            F
So he cannot make them the shoes, don't you see?
Feathers will not tickle and mice will not gnaw.

ROW YOUR BOAT
C    C    C    C    C    C    C    C
Row, row, row your boat, gently down the stream,
C    C    C    C    G7    G7    C    C
Merrily, merrily, merrily, merrily, life is but a dream.

MISTER FINNEGAN (Tune: Ten Little Indians)
G    G    G    G    G
There was an old man named Mister Finnegan
There was an old man named Mister Finnegan.
                      D7   D7   D7   D7
He grew whiskers on his chinmegan
He grew fat and then grew thin again.
                      G    G    G    G
Along came the wind and blew them in again
Then he died so we have to begin again.
                      D7   D7   G    G
Poor old Mister Finnegan!
Poor old Mister Finnegan!
DOWN BY THE STATION
F F C7 F
Down by the station so early in the morning
F F C7 F
See the little pufferbillies all in a row
F F C7 F
See the stationmaster turn a little handle,
F F C7 F
Puff! puff! toot! toot! Off we go!

ITSY - BITSY SPIDER
F F C7 F
Itsy - bitsy spider went up the waterspout,
F F C7 F
Down came the rain and washed the spider out,
F F C7 F
Out came the sun and dried up all the rain,
F F C7 F
And the itsy - bitsy spider went up the spout again.

THIS OLD MAN
F F F F F
This old man, he played one,
F F C7 C7 F
He played nick-nack on my drum.
F F F F F
Nick-nack, paddy wack, give a dog a bone,
C7 C7 C7 F
This old man came rolling home.

WHERE HAS MY LITTLE DOG GONE?
F F C7 C7
Oh where, oh, where has my little dog gone?
C7 C7 F F
Oh, where, oh, where can he be?
F F C7 C7
With his tail cut short and his ears cut long,
C7 C7 F F
Oh where, oh, where can he be?

THE PAWPAW PATCH
F F F F F
Where oh where is dear little Mary?
C7 C7 C7 C7
Where oh where is dear little Mary?
F F F F
Where oh where is dear little Mary?
C7 C7 F F
Way down yonder 'in the pawpaw patch.
GO TELL AUNT RHODIE

G     G
Go tell Aunt Rhodie
D7    G
Go tell Aunt Rhodie
G     G
Go tell Aunt Rhodie
D7    G
The old gray goose is dead.

Three-Chord Songs:

TWINKLE, TWINKLE LITTLE STAR

F     F     B flat F     C7    F     C7     F
Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are!
F     C7     F     C7    F     C7     F
Up above the world so high, Like a diamond in the sky,
F     F     B flat F     C7    F     C7     F
Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are!

YANKEE DOODLE

G     G     G     D7    G     G     G     D7
Yankee Doodle went to town, a-riding on a pony!
G     G     C     C     D7    D7    G     G
He stuck a feather in his cap, and called it macaroni.
C     C     C     G     G     G     G
Yankee Doodle keep it up, Yankee Doodle dandy,
C     C     C     C     G     D7    G     G
Mind the music and the step and with the girls be handy!

MY BONNIE

C     F     C     C     C     G7    G7
My Bonnie lies over the ocean; My Bonnie lies over the sea;
C     F     C     C     F     G7    C     C
My Bonnie lies over the ocean; Oh, bring back my Bonnie to me.
C     C     F     F     G7    G7    C     C
Bring back, bring back, oh bring back my Bonnie to me, to me
C     C     F     F     G7    G7    C     C
Bring back, bring back, oh bring back my Bonnie to me!

GLORY, GLORY, HALLELUJAH

C     C     C     C
Glory, glory, hallelujah!
F     F     C     C
Glory, glory, hallelujah!
C     C     C     C
Glory, glory, hallelujah!
F     G7    C     C
His truth is marching on.
AWAY IN A MANGER

G   G   C   G
Away in a manger, no crib for a bed,
D7  D7  G   G
The little Lord Jesus laid down his sweet head;
G   G   C   G
The stars in the sky looked down where he lay,
D7  G   D7  G
The little Lord Jesus asleep on the hay.

JINGLE BELLS

G   G   G   G
Jingle bells! Jingle bells! Jingle all the way!
G   C   G   D7  D7
Oh what fun it is to ride in a one-horse open sleigh!
G   G   G   G
Jingle bells! Jingle bells! Jingle all the way!
G   C   G   D7  G
Oh what fun it is to ride in a one-horse open sleigh!
Sample of Autoharp Chart
Two and Three-Chord Songs for Autoharp from the HRW text in the keys of C, F, and G.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Roll On, Columbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Streets of Laredo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>He's Got the Whole World in His Hands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Let Us Break Bread Together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Talkin' Blues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Cockles and Mussels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Buon giorno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Spinn, spinn meine liebe tochter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>The Herdsman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Carmen, Carmela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Rio, Rio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Si Pilemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Mystic Lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>166</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Jacob's Ladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Green Grow the Laurels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>197</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Christmas is Coming</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Two and Three-Chord Songs for Autoharp from the Follett text in the keys of C, F, and G.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Donkey Riding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>The Holly and the Ivy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>The Quaker's Wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Harvest Song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>High in Haka Valley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Sarasponda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Vreneli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Spring Gladness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Cuckoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>The Man From Krakow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>The Invitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>153</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Ahrirang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>157</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Song of a Loving Mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>Aloha Oe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>La Cucaracha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>167</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>The Count of Cabra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>169</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Sambalele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>170</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>River, River</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>177</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Poll Perica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>The Little Mohee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>193</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Prayer for Peace</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Keyboard Instruction

Each child should make a keyboard of tagboard or some other similar material which is 22 inches wide and 5-1/2 inches deep. Lines are drawn one inch apart to identify white keys and the black keys superimposed at intervals, as illustrated below. This results in 22 white keys or three octaves going from B to B. This takes one width of a piece of taboard. Middle C should be indicated on the keyboard. No other keys should be marked. A master stencil of a keyboard may be utilized to make the keyboard more quickly.

![Keyboard Diagram]

The following illustrations will serve to further help the teacher understand the five-note fingering positions to be taken by the children when using the piano or keyboard at the desk.

![Fingering Diagram]

The following directions are for chording activities in the keyboard program. All children should use their keyboard except those seated at the piano, and it is recommended that whenever keyboard instruction is being given that the piano be used to give auditory reinforcement to be instruction.

The following illustrations are fingering positions for both left and right hand and will be given in the three chords, Tonic (I), Sub-Dominant (IV), Dominant (V7) and in the three keys used in the program, that of C, F and G. Teachers should not hesitate to work with the music consultant on this activity.
left hand

right hand

KEY OF C

left hand

right hand

B-9

446
Major Forms of Composition -
I. Concerto

Concerto - A work of music generally having three movements written in the sonata form which displays a solo instrument (or group of instruments) accompanied by an orchestra.

The word "concerto" began to appear in the Sixteenth Century but it was not used consistently in its modern sense until instrumental concertos by Giuseppe Torelli appeared in 1686. Corelli, in 1714, published a set of twelve concerti grossi which were the forerunners of solo concertos.

A concerto grosso is a composition for two or more instruments and orchestra in several movements which was popular at the end of the Seventeenth Century and in the first half of the Eighteenth Century. Early masters of the concerto grosso soon began writing compositions in which a single solo instrument was balanced with an accompanying orchestra. Thus the concerto for solo instrument and orchestra came into existence.

Johann Sebastian Bach was one of the first important composers to write a clavier (forerunner of the piano) concerto. However, the concerto as we understand the term today did not make its appearance until Mozart (1756-1791) who crystallized the form and helped liberate the solo instrument.

A concerto is a composition written for solo instrument and orchestra most often, but also sometimes for two or more solo instruments and orchestra. The solo player and orchestra are not teamed in a master-servant relationship, but rather in one of rivalry on an equal basis highlighting both the individuality of the solo instrument or instruments and the virtuosity of the performer or the performers.

Most concertos are in three movements or sections. The first movement is usually in some variety of sonata form. The second is slow and lyrical, sometimes in three-part song form, sometimes in variation form. The third is lively, gay or vigorous, usually in rondo form. A special feature of the concerto is the solo cadenza (an extended section in free style to display the virtuosity of the solo performer) which appears regularly at the end of the first movement and also in the last movement. Many concertos have cadenzas for all three movements. Concertos are classified according to the solo instrument, piano, violin, etc.

Suggested Concertos:
1. Piano Concerto in D Minor - Mozart
2. Piano Concerto in E Major - Mozart
3. Piano Concerto in B Major - Mozart
4. Piano Concerto in E Major (Emperor) - Beethoven
Following are summaries of some of the above works:

CONCERTO IN E MINOR, Felix Mendelssohn (faˈliks menˈdels zon)

Mendelssohn wrote only one violin concerto but it is one of the best loved in the entire repertory. It was written in 1844 and introduced in Leipzig on March 13, 1845.

The composer intended the three movements to be played without pause but now there is usually a slight pause between the first and second.

The first movement is allegro molto appassionnato with three main themes. The first theme is first presented by the violin, and after this has been amplified, the second theme is presented by the orchestra and then a solo violin. The clarinets and flutes present the third theme.

In the second movement is heard one of Mendelssohn's most beautiful melodies. After the andante movement comes the third movement allegretto. The first subject is vivacious and is found in the violin. After two more significant ideas, the first a robust melody for orchestra and the second a lyrical passage for solo violin, are presented and developed, the coda arrives to end the concerto.

CONCERTO IN D MAJOR, Wolfgang Mozart

This concerto, known as the "Coronation Concerto," was written in 1788. It is often called this because the composer played it in Frankfort in September, 1790, during the festivities attending the coronation of Leopold II.

The first movement (allegro) presents two lighthearted themes in the orchestral opening. The piano appears with the first of these ideas. After the orchestra recalls part of the second theme, there follows some brilliant virtuoso music and then the piano presents a beautiful melody.

The second movement (larghetto), the slow movement, starts with a simple stately melody for the piano, repeated by the orchestra. After a counter subject is heard, a new section is introduced by the piano and then the opening theme is repeated.

In the third movement (allegretto), which is in rondo form, the vivacious opening theme is at once stated by the piano and repeated by the orchestra. After some subsidiary thoughts, the piano sounds a soaring melody. Then there are some dramatic passages but the concerto ends vivaciously.
This concerto by Beethoven, written in 1809, was probably given this name by some later publisher who wished to point up its majestic content. The first public performance took place in Leipzig on November 28, 1811.

The first movement (allegro) opens with a powerful chord after which the piano presents a rhapsodic passage. Then the orchestra sounds the two main themes which are developed. After a dramatic climax, there is a brief pause followed by a cadenza (a section in a free style which gives the player a chance to exhibit his technical brilliance) for the piano.

The second movement (adagio un poco mosso) opens with a stately theme by the strings after which the piano comments on this subject in a reflective and improvisational manner.

The third movement (allegro) is in rondo form (recurring subjects) and is full of vivacity.

Mozart wrote the "Concerto for Clarinet" in October of 1791, only two months before he died. It was the last composition he was to complete. In spite of the poverty and poor health Mozart suffered during his last year, this work displays "youthful eagerness and bright charm." Mozart wrote the work for his clarinetist friend, "Mr. Stadler, the elder." As is true of all of Mozart's concertos, this work makes full use of the instrument for which it was written and is completely suited to it. All registers of the clarinet are exploited without the concerto being an exhibition of virtuosity. From beginning to end, the concerto is in Mozart's last style. There is a close relationship between the orchestra and the soloist. The work demonstrates Mozart's "supreme effectiveness of simplicity."

In 1777, a wealthy Dutch patron named Dejean commissioned Mozart to write "three short and easy concertos for the flute." Mozart responded with two concertos for flute and one for flute and harp. They are neither short nor easy, and without improvements that had recently been made on the instrument, would have been impossible to play on the flute.

The D major concerto appears to be a transcription of an earlier concerto Mozart had written for the oboe in C Major.

The first movement is marked allegro aperto. The two main themes are presented in the orchestral introduction. The flute enters and holds a high D for four measures "in the manner of an operatic singer." The rest of the movement is based on these themes.
The cadenza, which appears near the end of the movement was not written by Mozart. In the classical period, performers were adept at improvising cadenzas. The effect was (or was supposed to be) that of the artist breaking away from the printed page to improvise freely. It gave him a chance to show off his best technique and was the high point of the concerto. Cadenzas appear near the end of the first movement in most classical concertos. They are found in other movements, but not as often, and the improvised cadenzas in other movements were generally much shorter.

The second movement is marked andante ma non troppo and shows off the flute's lyric posers. It is based on the two themes, both of which are introduced by the strings and repeated by the flute. This movement is in G major. The cadenza is often omitted in modern performances.

The third movement is fast (allegro) and in rondo form. There is a short cadenza in the middle (before the return of theme one) and a longer one near the end. The one in the middle is indicated only by the fermata (rather than by a fermata and the word "cadence") and is often omitted. This movement is also based on two principal themes.

II. Symphony

Symphony - A musical composition usually having four movements written for an orchestra.

The symphony is a compound musical form which has conventionally four movements or parts in sonata form and written for full symphony orchestration. These movements or parts are contrasting in key and tempo, but are related in thought. The usual four-movement symphony begins with a movement in fast tempo -- allegro. The second movement is usually in slow tempo, in a contrasting key. This second movement has a number of structural plans. In the third movement, the minuet-and-trio (or scherzo-and-trio) form is used. This movement is light and graceful with its tempo ringing from moderate to fast. The finale, or fourth movement, is in fast tempo with sonata allegro or rondo structure.

Karl Philip Emanuel Bach (son of Johann Bach) established the three-movement form using two fast movements separated by a slow one.

Beethoven's Symphony No. 6 in F Major and Berlioz' "Symphonic Fantastique" have more than four movements.

Twentieth Century composers have experimented with sonata structures of one and two movements.

Suggested Symphonies:

1. Scherzo from Third Symphony, Beethoven
2. Toy Symphony, Haydn
3. Andante "Surprise Symphony," Haydn

R.C.A. Vol. 1
R.C.A. Vol. 3
R.C.A. Vol. 4
4. Theme from Andante "Clock Symphony," Haydn
5. Symphony #1, Theme from 4th Movement, Brahms
6. "1st Movement" from Symphony #5, Schubert
7. "Second Movement," Symphony #8, Beethoven
8. "4th Movement" Symphony #4, Tchaikovsky
9. Andante from Surprise Symphony
10. Allegro )
     Minuetto ) Toy Symphony, Haydn
     Finale )
11. Children's Symphony - 1st Movement - MacDonald
12. Children's Symphony - 3rd Movement - MacDonald

Following are summaries of some of the above works, and other famous symphonies:

TOY SYMPHONY, Franz Joseph Haydn (frants yö'sef high-dn) 1732-1809

Haydn was a happy, fun-loving person. His "Toy Symphony" represents one of his practical jokes in music.

One day when strolling along a street fair, Haydn saw some toy instruments on display. He bought a number of them, and that evening called his musicians together for "an important rehearsal." When they assembled, he gave each a toy instrument -- whistles, rattles, "noisemakers," toy trumpets, toy drums -- and handed out scores for his new symphony. Two violins, piano and double-bass (string bass) were the only three serious instruments called for. Imagine the bewilderment of the musicians when he asked them to read the score and play on the instruments he had provided!

The "Toy Symphony" is in three short movements -- the first is called allegro moderato, meaning "moderately quickly," the second is a minuetto, a little dance in 3/4 time, and the third is the finale, or ending, which whirls faster and faster towards its end, amid the din of the toy instruments. The whole symphony is very bright and cheery, alive with fun and good nature. Bird effects are introduced by nightingale whistle and the triangle, and many can be easily identified. The "Toy Symphony" is music written for fun and is meant to be heard in a spirit of good humor.

SYMPHONY NO. 94 IN G MAJOR (THE "SURPRISE SYMPHONY") Joseph Haydn (yö-sef high-dn), 1732-1809

Haydn is called the father of the symphony because he established the number and kinds of instruments used in the symphony orchestra. He was born in Austria of very poor parents. However, they had a deep love for music which they passed on to their son. When Joseph was eight years old, he became a chorister in a large church in Vienna. However,
he did not have a very good voice and began to study music in other forms. When Haydn was twenty-seven, he had achieved the important position of the music director for a count. From this time on, Haydn conducted orchestras and wrote music. He was asked to go to London where he wrote twelve symphonies, one of them being the Surprise Symphony. Haydn was skilled in writing for string instruments and it was not until he was old that he really learned the importance of wind instruments.

The Surprise Symphony was first performed in 1792. It gets its name from the sudden loud orchestral crash in the second movement. It is said that one time Haydn noticed a number of drowsy people at some of the London concerts. He inserted a soft passage by the strings, interrupted by the very loud chord, to lull the ladies to sleep and then awaken them with a "bang." Haydn gleefully exclaimed, "Here the ladies will shriek."

First Movement
There is a brief introduction with a delightful melodic passage given first to a woodwind and horn combination, and then to the strings. The movement proper begins with the first theme played by the violins, which sing it softly but with sparkle. This theme is a typical Hungarian gypsy tune.

Second Movement
In Haydn's time, the second movement was a great favorite with his audiences, not only because of the "surprise," but also because of its beauty and charm. It is made up of a single theme, repeated over and over, each time slightly different. The first time the theme is heard softly in the strings, and repeated even more softly. Then suddenly we are startled by the sudden crash. In the first variation of the melody, the second violins play the melody, while the first violins decorate it. The second variation is in a minor key. The third variation is played by first the oboe, then violins, then in a lovely passage for the flute and oboe. The fourth variation is announced by the full orchestra. A fifth variation comes just close to the end.

Third Movement
This movement presents the form that Haydn introduced to the symphony, that of a popular dance form as the third section. Haydn, of course, used the minuet, the dance of polite society in his day.

Fourth Movement
The final movement is a short rondo, built upon two single themes and proceeding at a furious pace through all its short but merry life.
SYMPHONY NO. 8 IN B MINOR (Unfinished) Franz Schubert (frants shoo' burt), 1797-1828

Schubert began the composition of this symphony in October of 1822 -- six years before he wrote his Seventh Symphony. Forty-three years elapsed, however, before it received its first performance, on December 17, 1865. Schubert is said to have given the score to a friend of his as a present for having made him an honorary member of the Music Society in Graz.

It is a question whether Schubert intended to "finish" the symphony. He did sketch for piano nine measures of a scherzo, but nothing of a final movement. The two completed movements form a musical whole, and many believe that Schubert felt additional movements were unnecessary.

The symphony is scored for 2 flutes, 2 oboes, 2 clarinets, 2 bassoons, 2 horns, 2 trumpets, 3 trombones, timpani, and strings. The first movement, with its familiar theme, is marked Allegro moderato; the second movement in Andante con moto and in the key of E major.

In his introduction to the Eulenburg edition of the score, Hermann Grabner concludes, "This is the most romantic of all Schubert's symphonies. A new world of sound is created here, harmony, finely graded according to the individual colour of each instrument, and melody shaded to a minute degree; the whole written in a polyphonic style of vast range and tremendous power."

SYMPHONY NO. 5 IN C MINOR, OPUS 67 Beethoven (bâ'tô ven)

This symphony written in 1807 is probably one of Beethoven's most popular pieces. It was first performed in Vienna on December 22, 1808, with the composer conducting.

The symphony is in four movements. The miracle of this work lies in the first movement (Allegro con brio) where a four-note theme is developed into a monumental drama. This rhythmic motif has been interpreted as "fate knocking at the door." This theme was known as the Victory motif throughout Europe during World War II for the allies. Its three short notes followed by a long one resemble the three dots and a dash that in Morse code stand "V," or "Viéctory." If the first theme resembles fate knocking, then the second theme in the first movement, a lyric one for flutes, clarinets, and violins, may suggest resignation to that fate.

The second movement (Andante con moto - slow but with motion) is in the form of theme and variations with two main themes. The first theme is sounded in the violas and 'cellos and many versions of this theme follow. The clarinets and bassoons present the second theme against triplet figures in the violas.
The third movement (Scherzo) and fourth movement (Allegro) are usually played with no pause between them. In the third movement an ominous sounding subject in the 'cellos and basses leads to the main theme by the horns which is rhythmically like the opening motif. The trio section has a dynamic subject treated frugally. A dramatic high point in the symphony is the transition from the third to fourth movement. There are two main themes in the last movement -- the first a march-like subject for full orchestra and the second presented by the woodwinds. The exultant character of this music persists until the final rousing measures.

SYMPHONY NO. 40 IN G MINOR (K 550), W. A. Mozart (mō'zart)
(This is also found in HRW, p. 88)

Mozart composed his 40th symphony in 1788 -- three years before his death. Although he was only 32 years old, the symphony in G minor is the work of a mature composer. The tone of the work is more serious and intense than the music Mozart had composed a few years earlier. (Compare this with the D Major Concerto for a striking contrast in mood).

The symphony is scored for flute, 2 oboes, 2 clarinets, 2 bassoons, 2 horns, and strings. It is an almost perfect example of classical symphony.

The first movement, Allegro molto, is in sonata-allegro form (exposition of two themes, development, and recapitulation of the themes). The first theme is stated, beginning in the first measure, by the violins. This is elaborated upon and repeated.

The second theme appears after a measure's "grand pause" with three descending notes in the strings. Answered by the clarinet and bassoon. The melody is continued by the strings. This second theme is in B flat major. Part of the first theme is introduced again before the end of the exposition. The exposition was repeated in the original version, but this is not always done now.

The second movement is slow, Andante, and is also in sonata-allegro form. It is in the key of E flat major. The beginning is interesting as the sections of strings enter one at a time. The second theme is in B flat major.

The third movement is a minuet, as would be expected. The form can be diagrammed: AA BB CC DD AB, each letter representing a section. Sections A and B are in G minor and sections C and D are in G major. In form it is typical of the dance movements in most classical symphonies. In mood it is more serious than would be expected.

The finale, marked Allegro assai, is in sonata-allegro form.

*sonata-allegro form is so called because it is the form of the opening allegro movement of a sonata.
Philip Hale has written: "There are few things in art that are perfect. Mozart's G Minor Symphony is one of them." When one considers the quantity of music written by Mozart in his short life, and realizes the quality, beauty and perfection of his music, his genius becomes almost unbelievable.

III. The Overture

Overture - A form of music usually written for full orchestra as an introductory part to an opera often played as an independent concert piece.

An overture is an introductory part to an opera or other musical work. A concert overture is an independent composition for band or orchestra.

The operatic overture had its origin in the Baroque period. In France, the overture was developed by Jean Baptiste Lully (luu-le) (1632-1687). It consisted of three movements: slow, fast and slow. The Italian overture was called "sinfonia" and was an ancestor of the modern symphony. It, too, had three movements: the first was fast, the second was slow, and the third was fast. The greatest Italian operatic composer of this period was Allessandro Scarlatti (1660-1725), the father of Dominico Scarlatti.

In the late Baroque, both the Italian sinfonia and the French overture became important orchestral forms. They were used as overtures, not only to operas, but to oratorios and cantatas and even as opening movements to orchestral suites.

From the classical period to the present, the operatic overture has followed two patterns. Sometimes it consists of airs from the opera itself and sometimes it sets the mood for the opera but uses different material. The baroque forms are no longer followed. Some operatic overtures, especially those of Rossini, are frequently performed as concert overtures.

Suggested Overtures:

1. Light Cavalry Overture, von Suppe R.C.A. Vol. 2
2. "Finale" from William Tell Overture, Rossini A.M. Gr. 3, Vol. 1
3. A Children's Overture, Quilter MSB 78022 Crimson
5. "Wedding March" Midsummer Night's Dream Music Mendelssohn MSB 78028 Crimson
7. "Pinocchio" from A Merry Overture MSB 78045 Blue
8. William Tell Overture MSB 78047 Blue
   HRW, Record 8
Following are summaries of some of the preceding pages works and other famous overtures:

**ROMAN CARNIVAL OVERTURE, Hector Berlioz (ber'li os')**

An overture is defined as an orchestral introduction to an opera, play, oratorio, etc. Opera overtures are frequently performed at symphony concerts such as the "Roman Carnival Overture" by Berlioz.

This overture was originally written as an introduction to the second act of Berlioz's opera "Benvenuto Cellini," but in 1843 he decided to make it an independent symphonic work even though he had used some of the melodic material from the opera. The second act takes place in a square in Rome and the overture is played before the curtain rises on the carnival scene. The listener has no difficulty imagining the gay festival taking place.

The overture opens with a dashing figure for violins and violas with the rhythm and tempo of a dance. The appears the main melody, a song for the English horn which is frequently played by other sections of the orchestra thereafter. The English horn has a delicate sound much like the oboe, but not quite as mellow, a little more raspy in sound.

The third section of the overture is a dance theme first presented softly, then increasing in sonority. All the sections are enlarged and the opening dance theme returns to end the overture.

**Overture to A MIDSUMMER NIGHT'S DREAM, Felix Mendelssohn (fa'liks men'dels zôn)**

Felix Mendelssohn was born in Hamburg, Germany, in 1809, of Jewish parents. From boyhood, Mendelssohn won honors as a pianist, first appearing on the concert stage at the age of nine. He began to compose at the age of twelve. Felix enjoyed reading Shakespeare's plays with his sister, Fanny. He admired Shakespeare so much that he wrote the charming overture to the play, "A Midsummer Night's Dream" (by Shakespeare), when he was barely seventeen years old. The overture was originally written as a piano duet and first performed by Felix and his sister in 1826. It was given its initial performance in conjunction with the play in 1840 in England.

The story of the play: Once upon a time, there was a queen named Titania, who was the queen of the fairies. Once upon a time there was a king named Oberon, who was the kind of the fairies. Strange as it may seem, Queen Titania and King Oberon did not speak to each other for they had had a quarrel. To make matters worse, on a summer night they were both invited to the wedding of a prince, who lived on the edge of their forest. As they drew near the prince's palace, Queen Titania and her fairies and King Oberon and all his royal court met in the woods. When Queen Titania saw King Oberon she turned away. At this, King Oberon decided once and for all to show her his power. To carry out his plan he needed to the help of his messenger, the mischievous fairy, Puck!
King Oberon asked Puck to find the magic flower which when its petals were rubbed on the eyes of anyone who's asleep made that person fall in love with the first one he sees when he awakens.

Of course, Queen Titania didn't know what King Oberon planned to do and so, in another part of the forest, she prepared to go to sleep (Nocturne). The fairies were not the only ones in the woods that midsummer night. While Queen Titania slept, some clowns came to the woods to rehearse a dance and a play for the Prince's wedding (Scherzo). While the dancing went on, the clowns gathered round Quince, their leader, to find out who was to play each part. Bottom was given the part of Pyramus, the lover, who loves Lady Thisbe. Francis Flute was to play the part of Lady Thisbe, however, he didn't want to be a lady. Bottom offered to play it and when Quince was about to assign the part of the lion, Bottom wanted that part too.

While they were disputing over the parts, Puck had found the magic flower and brought it to King Oberon, and now, in the woods, Puck came upon the busy actors. Being a very mischievous fairy, he decided to play a trick and put a donkey's head on Bottom. Puck waved his fairy wand and immediately Bottom had a donkey's head. Of course, Bottom didn't know this, but whenever he tried to speak, he could only say, "Hee Haw!" As they went on with their play, Quince instructed Bottom to come in and surprise Thisbe. Bottom came in saying, "Here I am, Hee Haw!" "No, that's not what you must say," said Quince, "You must say, Thisbe, I love you." But all Bottom could say was, "Thisbe, I... Hee Haw!" Quince exclaimed, "No, you don't sound like a lover; you sound like a donkey!" And the others exclaimed, "Look, look, he really has a donkey's head on him!" They all thought Bottom had been bewitched and ran away as Puck laughed and laughed while he hid behind some bushes.

While Puck's mischief was going on, King Oberon rubbed the petals of the magic flower on Queen Titania's eyes and then he waited for her to awaken. Along came Puck and Bottom who still had the donkey's head on. Bottom began to sing and woke up Queen Titania. She saw him first, and true to the magic, fell in love with him. As King Oberon watched poor Titania fall in love with the silly donkey, he took pity on the Queen and ended the magic spell. He ordered Puck to remove the donkey's head from Bottom, and with another magic flower, he rubbed Titania's eyes. So King Oberon and Queen Titania were friends again and the forest rang out with laughter and merry making as the guests danced gaily at the Prince's wedding.

In 1843, Mendelssohn wrote the rest of the music, thirteen numbers in all. The four that are most commonly performed are as follows:

The Overture opens with four lovely chords (the magic chords) in the woodwind section, sounding faint and mysterious. Swiftly and delicately, the music of fairies follows in the violins. A little later the curious braying of Bottom can be heard. It closes with the same four magic chords.
The Nocturne occurs when everyone has fallen asleep and contains one of the loveliest solos for French horn and in all music, mysterious and dreamy and so expressive of the sweet warmth and drowsiness of a midsummer night.

The Scherzo discloses the fairy world with its chattering elves and their mischievous games.

The Wedding March contains the joyous pomp, lively rhythm and bright orchestral color which has made it the customary recessional for the marriage ceremony.

1812 OVERTURE, Peter Illyich Tschaikovsky (pyo'ter il ech' chi kof'ski)

This concert overture was written in 1880 and was commissioned for the consecration of the Temple of Christ the Redeemer, in Moscow, which was built as a memorial to Napoleon's defeat in Russia in 1812. The composer decided to utilize for his music a program describing the historic events in Russia, beginning with the Battle of Borodino and culminating with Napoleon's flight from Moscow. There is no record of its performance at the consecration in 1881. However, its premiere probably took place in Moscow on August 20, 1882.

In the introductory section, the composer used the Russian hymn "God Preserve Thy People." The main section of the overture gives a realistic picture of the Battle of Borodino with quotations from the Russian national hymn and the "Marseillaise" which identify the two opposing armies. The Russian hymn is sounded as a climax to announce their victory.

Since this work was intended for outdoor performance, Tschaikovsky indicated that the percussion section should include actual cannon to boom at specified intervals. Today, of course, the timpani is used in its place.

POET AND PEASANT OVERTURE, Franz von Suppe'

Franz von Suppe' composed the overture "Dichter und Bauer" (Poet and Peasant) in 1854. Although he composed many operas, operettas and other musical works, this overture and the overture to "Light Cavalry" are the only ones of his compositions that are still popular.

"The Poet and Peasant Overture" opens with a fanfare by the brass. The work follows no special form but is made up of eight sections. Several themes are repeated: One is a waltz in the best Viennese tradition, and another is a light polka-like section with trills and rapid fingerings for the violins. A syncopated rhythmic motive appears four times in the work and serves as a unifying factor.

The dramatic nature of this work, along with its easy-to-remember melodies, has made it a favorite composition for "pop" concerts. It has been arranged for some 59 different combinations of instruments (including flute solo) and is especially popular with bands.
OVERTURE TO WILLIAM TELL, Gioacchino Rossini (jo' a kē'no ros sē' nē) (HRW, p. 7)

"William Tell" was composed in 1829, thirty-nine years before Rossini's death, but the last opera he ever wrote. It is a serious work (unlike "The Barber of Seville," Rossini's best known opera) and was regarded by his contemporary critics as his masterpiece. It tells the story of the Swiss hero for whom it is named. It is almost never performed anymore, however, only its overture remains popular.

The overture opens with a somber introduction for strings and timpani, reminding us of the serious nature of the opera.

A second section begins with a tremulo by the strings and, for the first time, the woodwinds timidly enter. The orchestra grows until the full orchestra is playing furiously and then gradually dies.

The third section is a charming dialogue between solo flute and solo oboe with soft horn and plucked string accompaniment. This is suddenly interrupted by a trumpet fanfare followed by the familiar "Lone Ranger" theme.

IV. The Opera

Opera - A dramatic musical composition with musical parts like arias, choruses with orchestra accompaniment; an opera is a musical drama.

In early history, the Greeks and Romans often used music in their plays. Many Miracle Plays (Mysteries or Moralities) from the Bible were accompanied by music. In the latter part of the Sixteenth Century, the oratorio, the predecessor to the opera, was born.

Later in 1594, in Florence, Italy, the first opera was produced. "Daphne" was its name. In 1567, Claudio Monteverdi was born. He liked the style of the opera and wrote twelve operas. His fame spread and led to the establishment of the first opera house in Venice in 1637.

The opera uses singers, dancers and orchestra. It tells a story and is usually said to be a "play set to music."

Another characteristic of the opera includes the fact that all characters sing their parts instead of speaking them. Also when there is no tune or melody, we say that the singer in doing a recitative. In comic opera, recitative parts are often said instead of sung.
Songs which have an unusually lovely melody and are sung by a leading character are called arias. They are sometimes described as vocal gymnastics and often detract from the story as a whole. For this reason, modern composers seldom use arias.

Many times several persons sing together as the "Quartette From Rigoletto." All four sing different melodies and words at the same time.

The orchestra in opera is often used to depict a mood or scene, as a storm. The words used are called the libretto.

Some of the most familiar and important operas would include: "William Tell," by Rossini; "The Valkyries" by Wagner; "Aida" by Verdi; "Midsummer Night's Dream" by Mendelssohn; "Lohengrin" by Wagner; "Pagliacci" by Leoncavallo; "Madame Butterfly" by Puccini; "Marriage of Figaro" by Mozart; "Die Meistersinger" by Wagner and "Rigoletto" by Verdi.

Suggested Operas:

2. "Prelude" Hansel and Gretel, Humperdinck
3. "Lokengrin" - Wagner

Following are summaries of some famous operas:

THE FLYING DUTCHMAN, Richard Wagner (vag'ner), 1813-1883

The opera, "The Flying Dutchman," was composed by Richard Wagner, with the first performance being given in Dresden, Germany, on January 2, 1843.

In the legend of the Flying Dutchman, we are told that a Dutch sea captain once tried to sail around the Cape of Good Hope in a furious gale and swore he would accomplish his purpose even if he kept sailing on forever. The Devil heard the oath and condemned the unhappy captain to sail the sea until the Day of Judgment, without aim, and without hope of release, unless he could find a woman to love him faithfully until death. The Devil allowed him to go ashore once in seven years to find such a woman, and this opera opens with the appearance of the Flying Dutchman's ship, with her blood-red sails and black masts, on the coast of Norway, in a bay into which the ship of Daland, a Norwegian captain, has just been driven by bad weather. A seven years' term having then expired, the Dutchman goes on shore and meets with Daland, the Norwegian captain. The Flying Dutchman asks Daland for hospitality, offering him in return all his treasures. In conversation with the Norwegian captain, the Flying Dutchman finds that Daland has a daughter so he asks for permission to woo her. Daland, anxious to secure a son-in-law so wealthy, agrees and the two set sail for Daland's home, which is not far distant, with a moderate and favorable wind to guide them.
Act Two opens with a Spinning Chorus: Senta, Daland's daughter, Mary, her former nurse, and some Norwegian maidens are at work spinning. On the wall of the room hangs the portrait of the Flying Dutchman, whose face has a fascination for Senta, and rouses in her a romantic attachment. In a ballad, she related his story to Mary and the maidens as they spin.

Meanwhile, Erik, the huntsman who wishes to marry Senta, has come in to tell them that he has seen her father's ship entering the port. The maidens wish to rush off at once to welcome the crew and hear their news, but they are kept by Mary to finish their household work and to prepare some food for the hungry sailors. Senta is also eager to meet her father but she is waylaid by Erik. Erik knows that Daland has intentions of finding a husband for Senta, one whom he would consider worthy of his daughter. Expecting that Daland might fulfill his intentions now, Erik wishes to plead for Senta once again. Senta listens as if in a trance and Erik goes on to tell her a dream he has had in which he saw her meeting her father and the sailor whose portrait hangs in the room and promising to be the wife of the sailor. Senta is greatly excited by his story and cries out that he in whose face and story she takes such an interest is seeking her and that she will be his. Erik rushes away in horror and despair and Senta, remaining in deep thought, stands with her eyes fixed on the picture of the Flying Dutchman.

Meanwhile Daland and his guest, the Flying Dutchman, arrive and Senta is startled to find that this stranger looks like the portrait. Daland tells Senta that this stranger wishes to be her husband. She is delighted, sensing the fulfillment of her dreams about the main in the portrait, and she vows to be faithful to him until death. Daland and the Flying Dutchman are joyous. Daland goes to announce this betrothal to his crew, who are celebrating the successful completion of their voyage with a feast, as was customary.

At the opening of Act Three, the Norwegian sailors on Daland's ship are dancing and making merry on the deck of their vessel. The maidens from Daland's home bring food and drink for the crews of both Daland's and the Flying Dutchman's ships. They try to attract the attention of the crew on the Flying Dutchman's ship anchored nearby but there seems to be no signs of life on board and they depart in fear and alarm leaving all of the food for the Norwegian sailors. While the Norwegian sailors are feasting, the crew of the Dutch Ship rouse to sing the story of their captain. A dark bluish flame is seen and the sound of a storm is heard. The Norwegian sailors leave the deck in horror and go down to the cabin making the sign of the cross as they go.

Meanwhile, Erik has returned to the house, once again pleading for Senta to be his wife. At that moment, the Flying Dutchman happened to come into the room and immediately rushed off to his ship when he saw Senta and Erik, thinking that Senta had no intentions of being faithful to him. Senta rushes after his pleading with him to believe that she means to be faithful.
The Flying Dutchman does not heed her and goes aboard his ship which puts out to sea at once. Senta climbs a cliff overhanging the sea and throws herself into the water protesting her faithfulness, while those gathered from the house and the ship watch the scene in horror. The Dutchman's ship, with all her crew, sinks immediately and in the glow of the sunset Senta and the Flying Dutchman are seen rising from the sea and floating upward.

The plot of the Flying Dutchman is a complicated one and the German audience who first saw it did not accept it well because it was not like anything else they had ever seen staged as an opera. It was not until rather late in Wagner's life that he began to be acclaimed as a great composer. But he did live to see how his own music dramas performed in a theater that was built in Bayreuth, Germany, especially for his compositions.

**DIE WALKURE (THE VALKYRIES), Richard Wagner (vag'ner)**

For a better understanding of "Die Walkure," the reader should have some knowledge of the "Nibelung Ring," a mythical story on which Wagner's trilogy (three operas) -- "Die Walkure," "Siegfried," and "Gotterdammerung" -- is based. In this prologue (introduction) to this trilogy, the story the Nibelung is told as follows:

Under the waves of the Rhine River, forgotten and uncared for, rested purest gold in beautiful masses. The Naiads (water-sprites) of the stream (Wagner called them Rhine daughters) were guardians of this treasure. Suddenly, out of the depths of the earth, there comes into the waters a greedy "Nibelung," (a descendant of the dwarfs), who is born of Mist and Darkness. The mischievous water-sprites encircle him and tell him of the great worldly power he would gain if he were to possess the gold. But, to do this, he must completely renounce love. The greedy Nibelung is bewitched by the gleam of the gold, and cursing love and beauty, he tears the treasure from its rock.

Wotan, the King of the Gods, is also longing for greater riches. The adventures of the Nibelung, whose name is Alberich, become known to the king, and to the king's companion, Loge. They descend to the mines where the dwarfs hoard their treasure, and they find that Alberich has made from the gold a ring, which gives him power. Wotan and Loge easily capture the Nibelung and his treasure, but Alberich puts a curse on the ring.

When Wotan returns to his castle, he means to keep the ring, but the goddess and prophetess, Erda, reminds Wotan of the curse attached to the ring and of the destruction that it will bring to the power of the gods. So Wotan heeds her warning and flings the ring to his giants, and there is strife and bloodshed between them because of their greed for the gold.

Wotan resolves to create new beings whom he will call the Valkyries, who can help to make up for the sufferings which the greed of gold has brought to whose on earth. And he names their new castle Valhalla.
Now with that background, we can perhaps better understand the story of Die Walkure which follows this introduction found in the opera Das Rheingold.

In these old Norse legends from which the stories of Wagner's musical dreams are taken, the Valkyries were the daughters of Wotan, the greatest of the Gods. These were the beings he had resolved to create to help those who suffered because of the greed for gold. It was their duty to watch over the fortunes of men in battle and to carry away the slain heroes to Valhalla, the home of the Gods, where they were made alive and well again, and then they became part of Wotan's palace guard. These war maidens, the Valkyries, rode through the air on splendid winged horses. They wore glittering coats of armor, and in those far-off days before science had helped people to understand the wonders of nature, it was thought that the northern lights were flashes of light shining from the armor of the Valkyries as they rode through the sky.

After a battle, the Valkyries would meet on a great rock high above the clouds, and then ride together over the rainbow bridge into Valhalla.

Brunnhilde was the leader of the Valkyries, and Wotan's dearest daughter. One time when she had been sent to watch over a battle and bring to Valhalla the body of the man whom Wotan had doomed to die, she was so overcome with pity that she disobeyed her mighty father and tried to protect the hero, Siegmund.

Disobedience to Wotan meant awful punishment, which even his beloved Brunnhilde could not escape. So for this disobedience, Wotan banishes Brunnhilde from among the Valkyries and condemns her to slumber on the rock where the Valkyries gathered before entering Valhalla, with a wall of flame surrounding her.

This terrible punishment for his most beloved daughter saddened Wotan, and he made the punishment somewhat less severe by saying that only a hero who knew no fear could penetrate the walls of flame to awaken her.

This Norse legend perhaps reminds you a little of "The Sleeping Beauty," and it is true that almost all countries have the same folk legends with variations within the story.

As the flames surround Brunnhilde in the final act of the opera, the famous Magic Fire Music is heard. Wagner used the instruments with marvelous skill in this fire music. The sharp-tongued piccolos and the harp suggest the leaping and crackling of the flames, while below them the strings picture the rippling motions of a fire. Then the woodwinds begin a slumber song which indicates that Brunnhilde is asleep behind here wall of fire.
In this opera she remains asleep at the close of the drama, but Wagner has a clever way of giving a hint as to who will be the hero to awaken her. In all of his operas, he uses themes which he calls "leit motifs" for each of his leading characters. In the same way that a theme song is used each time a program is heard again, so the "leit motif" tells us that the drama in including the character whose theme Wagner has put into his music at that point. These leit motifs are each only a few measures in length.

While Brunnhilde sleeps to the Magic Fire music and the Slumber Song, the leit motif of Siegfried, one of Wagner's greatest operatic heroes, is heard in the Magic Fire music. So, we are given a musical hint at the close of this opera that it will be Siegfried who awakens Brunnhilde from her slumber on the fiery rock. And Wagner has written an entire opera entitled "Siegfried," which follows Die Walkure in the trilogy of operas he wrote about the evils that resulted from man's greed for gold. The first performance of this opera was given in Munich, Germany, on June 26, 1870.

AMAHL AND THE NIGHT VISITORS, Gian-Carlo Menotti

"Amahl and the Night Visitors" is an opera which is presented during the Christmas season. Many of the children have seen or will see it performed on television or the stage.

The opera is best presented and accepted when the children can see the libretto. Often words are difficult to hear, and the libretto not only helps them to understand the opera but keeps them moving along with the music.

The following are things which you might say about the story before or during the recording.

"Amahl, a crippled boy, and his widowed mother live alone. They are very, very poor. They have nothing to eat."

You will hear Amahl's mother calling him to come in. When he comes into the house, he tells her a big story about seeing a big star - as large as a window, and it has a tail! Is it the truth, do you think?

As you listen, see if you can hear -
1. Amahl playing on his pipe (like a flutophone).
2. The many fibs he has told his mother - a leopard with what kind of head?
3. How Amahl will like to go begging and how they shall live.

After they go to bed, you should hear three kings coming in the distance. When they get to Amahl's door, see if you are able to hear that Amahl is crippled (the music makes him limp to the door). Would your mother believe you if you told her that a king was at the door?
Amahl's mother tells him not to bother the kings. Does he? One king has something in his box. What is it?

Side Two

This side is more difficult and not quite as much interest is aroused. Before playing it, explain the fact that the mother and the three kings will sing together, but do not really hear one another.

"Listen for the shepherds. All the children are sick with something you get, too. What is it?"

The dance lasts quite a long time and some children may want to do the dance. At first they would be afraid and later the dance gets faster and faster as the shepherds gain confidence.

"To what child, do you suppose, are they taking the gold? See if you can tell what Amahl's mother does about the gold."

Let the children discover that Amahl is cured. It is more of a thrill if they can make the discovery and hear the miracle themselves.

HANSEL AND GRETEL, Engelbert Humperdinck (Hoom'per dingk), 1854-1921

The opera "Hansel and Gretel" was composed by Engelbert Humperdinck, who lived in Germany from 1854 to 1921. Humperdinck was a composer who lived a long life, and was seemingly successful during his life, winning many musical awards, and being a special protege of the famous composer Richard Wagner. And yet, there is not another work of Engelbert Humperdinck's which has remained as well-known as his opera "Hansel and Gretel," a fairy opera, his first and only international success.

On the other hand, the composer Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart, another German composer born about 100 years before Humperdinck, lived for a short period of 35 years, from 1756 to 1791. Though he lived only about half as long a life as Humperdinck did, and lived 100 years before him, there are literally hundreds of musical compositions by Mozart which are very well-known and still performed often today.

So, we might observe that true greatness of works of art cannot be measured at the time they are inspired. The length of time during which a composition of music remains a part of the concert repertoire probably determines its greatness, because it continues to appeal to people even though times change. However, the one opera for which Mr. Humperdinck remains well-known as a composer, is the kind of art that has appealed to many people from his day to our present one.

This opera is based on a fairy tale by the Brothers Grimm. The first performance of the opera was given in Weimer, Germany on December 23, 1893.

C-19 466
In brief, the story of the opera concerns Hansel and Gretel, who are sent into the woods to pick berries. They get lost, and when they are sleepy, they lie down to rest. Angels come down to protect them and they spend a peaceful night. One of the best-known melodies of the opera is the "Children's Prayer," sung by the children as they prepare to go to sleep.

After their night of sleep guarded by the angels, they have the misfortune of being caught in the morning by the Witch of the forest who loves to eat children.

The alert children contrive to lock her in the oven that has been prepared for them. Her death brings to life all the children who have been lost before. Then in usual fairy tale ending, the parents of Hansel and Gretel arrive to find the children and take them home, and we are left believing that they all lived happily ever after.

Humperdinck loved children and enjoyed writing music for and about them. Originally the music started on a very small scale for Hansel and Gretel. Humperdinck's sister wrote a little play from Grimm's fairy tale for her children to give at a family Christmas party. She asked her composer-brother to write a tune for the song "Brother, Come and Dance With Me," which Gretel was to sing. People were so delighted with that tune that they asked him to write more. The more Humperdinck worked at it, the fonder he grew of Hansel and Gretel. And so the little home-made opera eventually called for a full orchestra, elaborate stage settings, and trained actors and singers.

THE MAGIC FLUTE, Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart

Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart was one of the world's greatest creative musicians. He wrote in almost every form and excelled in everything he wrote. Some of his most notable achievements are in the field of opera. Virtually all his major works are played to this very day. Thousands of people travel to Salzburg, Austria, every year to hear a festival which is devoted almost exclusively to his music. Mozart's lyricism is unique. He imparted a special quality to his music that makes it as alive today as when it was written.

V. The Suite

Suite - An ordered series of instrumental dances in the same related key, usually preceded by a prelude.

The suite is another classification in music of compound form. It is a succession of short instrumental pieces.
The "Baroque Suite," also known as the "Dance Suite," developed from the Sixteenth Century practice of playing dances of contrasting meter in sequence. The dances were usually linked together by a common key and were social or court dances. The four principal dances of the baroque suite are called the allemande, the courante, the sarabande and the gigue. The suites frequently begin with a prlude and sometimes included such additional dances as the minuet, the gavotte and the polonaise. The baroque suite virtually disappeared after 1750. The suites of Johann Sebastian Bach are the best known.

Another division of this classification is the "Descriptive Suite" written especially for orchestra which came into favor during the Nineteenth Century. These were after collections of pieces drawn from incidental music to a play or from a ballet.

The following compositions are examples of the baroque suite:
Bach - English Suite No. 2 in A Minor (Harpischord)
        Suite No. 3 in D Major for Orchestra

The following compositions are examples of the descriptive suite:
Grieg - "Peer Gynt Suite"
MacDowell - "Woodland Sketches"
Saint-Saens - "Carnival of the Animals"

The following compositions are examples of the ballet suite:
Prokofiev - "Cinderella Ballet Suite"
Stravinsky - "Firebird Suite"

Suggested suites:
1. Petite Suite "March" "Impromptu," Bizet
2. "March" from Summer Day Suite, Prokofiev
3. "Gigue" from Suite #3, Bach
4. "Fountain Dance" from Wand of Youth Suite #2,
   Elgar
5. "Jack-in-the-Box" from Mikrokosmos Suite #2,
   Bartok
6. "Children's Dance" from Merry Mount Suite, Hanson
7. "Fairies and Giants" from Wand of Youth Suite #1,
   Elgar
8. "The Snow is Dancing" from Children's Corner Suite,
   Debussy
9. "Badinerie" from Suite #2, Bach
10. "Desert Water Hole" from Death Valley Suite, Grofe
11. "Minuetto" from L'Arlesienne Suite #1, Bizet
12. "Waltz" from Masquerade Suite, Khachaturian
13. Laideronnette } Mother Goose Suite, Ravel
    Empress of the Pagodas
14. "In War-Time" from Second (Indian) Suite,
    MacDowell
15. "Grand Walk Around" from Cakewalk Ballet Suite,
    Gottschalk-Kay

R.C.A. Vol. 1
A.M. Gr. 1
A.M. Gr. 3
A.M. Gr. 2
A.M. Gr. 2
A.M. Gr. 3, Vol. 1
A.M. Gr. 3, Vol. 1
A.M. Gr. 3, Vol. 1
A.M. Gr. 3, Vol. 1
A.M. Gr. 4, Vol. 1
A.M. Gr. 4, Vol. 2
A.M. Gr. 4, Vol. 2
A.M. Gr. 4; Vol. 2
A.M. Gr. 5, Vol. 1
A.M. Gr. 5, Vol. 1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mother Goose Suite, Ravel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>&quot;Alla Marcia&quot; from Karelia Suite, Sibelius</td>
<td>A.M. Gr. 5, Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>&quot;Knights Bridge March&quot; London Suite, Coates</td>
<td>A.M. Gr. 5, Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>&quot;Infernal Dance of King Kastche&quot; Firebird Suite, Stravinsky</td>
<td>A.M. Gr. 5, Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>&quot;Suite&quot; from Der Rosenkavalier, Strauss</td>
<td>A.M. Gr. 6, Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>&quot;Street in a Frontier Town&quot; Billy the Kid Suite, Copland</td>
<td>A.M. Gr. 6, Vol. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>&quot;Farandale&quot; from L'Arresiènne Suite #2, Bizet</td>
<td>A.M. Gr. 6, Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>&quot;Sarabande&quot; Suite for Strings, Corelli-Pinelli</td>
<td>A.M. Gr. 6, Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>&quot;Valse&quot; Facade Suite, Walton</td>
<td>A.M. Gr. 6, Vol. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>Country Dance Pastoral Dance</td>
<td>MSB 78020 Crimson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>&quot;War Dance of the Cheyennes&quot; Suite Primeval</td>
<td>MSB 78024 Crimson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>&quot;Solveig's Songs&quot; &quot;The Storm&quot;</td>
<td>MSB 78030 Crimson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>&quot;Doctor Gradus Ad Parnassum&quot;) &quot;Serenade for the Doll&quot; &quot;Jumbo's Lullaby&quot;</td>
<td>MSB 78036 Crimson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;Kokovin's Cakewalk&quot;) &quot;Suite, Debussy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>&quot;The Snow is Dancing!&quot; &quot;The Little Shepherd&quot;</td>
<td>MSB 78037 Crimson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;Goliwogg's Cakewalk&quot;) &quot;Suit, Debussy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>&quot;Carnival of the Animals,&quot; Saint-Saens</td>
<td>MSB 78010 Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MSB 78011 Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MSB 78012 Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MSB 78014 Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MSB 78035 Crimson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MSB 78034 Crimson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MSB 78035 Crimson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Mother Goose Suite, Ravel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>The Nutcracker Suite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Following are summaries of some famous suites:

**CHILDREN'S CORNER SUITE, Claude Debussy (Clod De bu sô') 1862-1918**

Debussy wrote the "Children's Corner Suite" in 1909 and dedicated it to: "my dear little Chouchou*, with her father's affectionate apologies for what follows." His daughter (who died before her fifteenth birthday) was not quite four years old at the time. This suite has become a standard in piano repertoire, and has also been arranged for full orchestra.

The music is impressionistic in style. Each movement paints a brief picture. The six movements are:

* Chouchou is pronounced "shoe-shoe." Her real name was Claude-Emma. "Chou" means "cabbage" in French, but is a word of endearment comparable to the English "honey."
1. "Doctor Gradus ad Parnassum." This describes Chouchou as she begins exercising her fingers at the piano. Parnassus is the legendary mountain whose summit is the poet's goal. By practicing exercises the musician takes a step toward his musical "Parnassus."

2. "Jumbo's Lullaby." Jumbo was an elephant doll of Chouchou's. The music describes the soft stuffed animal.


4. "The Snow is Dancing." A musical impression of falling snowflakes; possibly as observed from the nursery window.

5. "The Little Shepherd" -- who plays a simple melody on his pipe.

6. "The Golliwogg's Cakewalk." This is the best-known selection from the suite. The beginning and ending sections were a reference to jazz. The middle section is a take-off on the Prelude to Tristan and Isolde by Wagner, whom Debussy disliked.

SCENES OF CHILDHOOD, Schumann (shō'ō'man), 1810-1856

This work is a suite of thirteen pieces for piano. It was written in 1838. In the work, the composer is contemplating the world of a child and reproduces that world through short very descriptive pieces. The approach is always subtle and sophisticated.

Probably the most famous of the pieces is the seventh one, "Traumerei" or "Dreaming." Also popular are No. 4, "Pleading Child," No. 5, "Perfect Happiness," and No. 9, "Rocking Horse Knight." Some of the other pieces are entitled "Blindman's Bluff," "Important Event" and "Child Falling Asleep."

THE NUTCRACKER SUITE, Tschaikovsky (chī kof'ski)

The Russian people have always been very fond of ballet. Children are trained from childhood to become ballet dancers, and continue on to study as adults in the very fine schools of ballet in that country. They are especially famous for their story ballets, in which the dancers act out an entire story, as in a pantomime. Because ballet has always been so highly regarded, only the best composers in Russia have been asked to write music for the ballet.

One of those composers highly regarded in Russia during his lifetime (1840-1893) and now a world-reowned composer, Tșchaikovsky, was invited to write a ballet for the Christmas season of the Russian Imperial Opera. The story he chose to write as a ballet was entitled "The Nutcracker."
This story tells us of a little girl named Marie, who was given as a Christmas present a queer wooden nutcracker, carved in the shape of a little man. He cracked nuts between his jaws. The Nutcracker Man was Marie's favorite of all her presents, and it grieved her deeply to have him broken by her brother and his friends as they played too roughly with it one day.

She put the Nutcracker Man into her doll's bed, but found she was unable to sleep after she went to bed because she worried about the injured Nutcracker Man. She crept softly to the living room to see how he was, and there she found the Christmas tree brightly lighted, with all of the toys marching gaily around the tree -- the gingerbread men, the Tim Soldiers, and the Nutcracker Man. As she watched, an army of mice rushed in to make war on the gingerbread men, and they would surely have been eaten to the last crumb had not the gallant Nutcracker Man organized the Tin Soldiers and led them on to counterattack.

The Mouse King and the Nutcracker Man became engaged in a fight, and to Marie's dismay, the Mouse King seemed to be winning. Fearing for the safety of her Nutcracker Man, Marie threw her slipper at the Mouse King and killed him. At that instant the Nutcracker Man turned into a handsome prince. Perhaps this reminds you of other fairy tales in which handsome princes or princesses have been doomed to being a swan, or a toad, or, as in this story, a Nutcracker Man, until they were somehow freed from the spell.

The Prince took Marie on a wonderful voyage with him over the roof tops of the sleeping town until they came to Jam Mountain in the Kingdom of Sweets, where the Sugar Plum Fairy was queen.

Originally, Tschaikovsky wrote 15 dances for this ballet, and later chose seven which he considered the best. To them he added an overture, and this "Nutcracker Suite" is performed in many symphony concerts.

The music is delightful, with the light, delicate sounds we would expect to remind us of toys. Some of the numbers in the suite are:


If you can hear some of the music from this suite, try to imagine how exciting it must be to see a ballet company in beautiful costumes acting out the music. That, of course, was what the Nutcracker Suite was originally written for.

PEER GYNT SUITE, Edward Grieg (ed'vart grēg) 1843-1907

The music of Peer Gynt was originally written by Edward Grieg as a set of pieces for Henrik Ibsen's play "Peer Gynt." Both Grieg
and Ibsen were famous Norwegians, but today the play is not often given outside of Norway, while Grieg's music to "Peer Gynt" is loved by listeners everywhere.

The story of Peer Gynt is an old Norwegian folk tale that is well-known to all Norwegian children. Peer Gynt was the village bad boy, who spent his time dreaming about becoming an emperor some day, instead of helping his widowed mother tend their tiny farm. No one cared for his company because he boasted so much, and told such "tall tales."

Once there was a wedding in the village to whom everybody except Peer was invited. Angry at being snubbed, Peer went to the wedding just the same, stole the bride and carried her off into the mountains. The bridegroom and guests gave chase and found the bride lost in the deep woods. But Peer Gynt was never found.

While running with the bride, he had fallen against a rock and been knocked unconscious. When he revived, he found himself inside the mountain, in the kingdom of the trolls (Norwegian dwarfs). As he wonders where he is, a curious creature, the Green-Clad One, appears. With his usual ability for making up stories, Peer convinces the Green-Clad One that he is a king's son. The Mountain King, father of the Green-Clad One, likes the idea of having a mortal as a son-in-law, so he agrees to give Peer his daughter and his realm if Peer will adopt the ways of trolls. Anxious to obtain this wealth, Peer is happy to promise anything, but little does he realize this means such things as eating troll food, dressing like a troll, including having a tail with a box tied on the end, and finally, having his eyes slit like a troll's so that he sees as trolls do, black becoming white, good becoming evil, dirty appearing clean, and so on. This last seems to much to pay even for having the troll kingdom so Peer Gynt escapes in much confusion because the trolls are indignant at his deserting the Green-Clad One.

The music which Grieg used to depict this scene in which the vicious trolls set upon Peer for rejecting a troll princess is called "In the Hall of the Mountain King."

After his escape from the trolls, Peer does not dare to go back to his village where everyone is angry with him. So, he builds himself a hut high in the mountains. One of the vaillage maidens, Solveig, comes to his hut to tell him that she has always loved him. Peer is touched by her love and beauty and for a time they live happily in the hut on the mountain. But, as always, Peer grew restless, and bids Solveig to wait for him in the hunt while he goes off to seek new fortunes and adventures.

These adventures take him to Arabia where he falls in love with an Arabian princess, Anitra. Another famous Grieg melody, "Anitra's Dance," is heard when Anitra dances for Peer who is smothered in silks and jewels and is resting on cushions in an Arab tent. Peer runs off with Anitra as he did with the bride from the village wedding. But Anitra is more clever and manages to obtain his jewels, his
purse and some of his expensive finery through flattering him. Then while he is dismounted for a minute, Anitra mounts the horse and leaves Peer in the desert.

At this time, Peer's homesickness makes him think of Solveig, who is still waiting for him in the hut in Norway. One of Grieg's loveliest melodies, "Solveig's Song," is heard as Peer thinks of Solveig.

After years of wandering, Peer Gynt grows homesick and takes a ship for Norway. A terrible storm occurs and Peer's ship is wrecked but he is washed ashore and goes on to more adventures.

These stories touch on only a few of the adventures of Peer Gynt as depicted in music by Edward Grieg. There were twenty-two pieces written for Ibsen's play so it would be impossible to include them all. But perhaps this short account has interested you in learning more about the adventures of Peer Gynt.

MA MERE L'OY - MOTHER GOOSE SUITE, Maurice Ravel (Rah-vell)

Ravel was born March 7, 1875, in Giboure, a small town in Southwestern France. At an early age he was taken to Paris and when fourteen he was admitted to the conservatory where he studied under several famous teachers. Ravel's music has been compared to those formal French gardens in which the trees and shrubs are trimmed to precise shapes and the flowers laid out in well ordered patterns. One of his best known compositions is the "Bolero."

The "Mother Goose Suite" was written in 1908 as a set of piano pieces for four hands. The music was dedicated to a little boy and girl, Jean and Mimi, friends of Ravel. The "Mother Goose Suite" was first performed in public in 1910 by Christine Verger, age six, and Germaine Duramy, age ten. Later it was arranged for orchestra as a ballet production.

I. "Pavane of the Sleeping Beauty"
The flute plays the theme while the horn and violas play a counter melody.

II. "Hop O' My Thumb" or "Tom Thumb"
Ravel introduces this section with the following: "He believed he would easily find his way back by means of his bread crumbs, which he had scattered as he passed along; but to his surprise, he could not find a single crumb for the birds had come and eaten them up." The scene is cleverly pictured in music with a solo oboe chanting above wavering muted strings meant to convey the winding path followed by Tom Thumb. In the middle section there are suggestions of birds chirping and chattering.
III. "Little Ugly One, Empress of the Pagodas"
Laideronette, formerly a princess, had been made ugly by a wicked witch. She didn't want anyone to see her so she hid in a far-away castle. While walking in the forest one day, she met a huge green serpent who told her he had also been handsome once and the same evil witch cast a spell upon him. Later the spell was broken and they were married. On one of their adventures, Laideronette and the green serpent came to a country of living pagodas, made of porcelain, crystal, diamonds and emeralds. This music is in march time and full of magical and fantastic effects.

IV. "The Conversations of Beauty and the Beast"
As the fairy tale goes, Beauty is begging beg by the Beast to marry him. Finally she consents and the Beast turns into a handsome prince. At the beginning, a solo clarinet is the voice of Beauty and a bassoon is the Beast. Later Beauty's voice is the solo flute and the Beast a solo oboe. After the beast becomes the prince, his voice is a cello and Beauty's voice is a violin. A cymbal crash announces the end of the wicked witch's spell.

V. "The Fairy Garden"
This section tells of Sleeping Beauty's awakening by Prince Charming. The tinkling celesta, which has a keyboard like the piano, depicts the enchanted princess as she slowly opens her eyes in the sunny room. A joyous fanfare sounds at the end as other storybook characters gather about her and the Good Fairy gives the happy pair her blessings.

THE CARNIVAL OF THE ANIMALS SUITE, Camille Saint-Saëns (ka me'y san sans')

This charming music was written by the French composer, Camille Saint-Saëns, for a Mardi gras concert. It was played for the first time in the United States on August 28, 1922.

As you know, a Mardi gras celebration finds people having fun and this music was written not only "for fun," but also "in fun," because Saint-Saëns made sport of some of the so called "animals" he composed pieces for.

Each piece in this suite employs instruments of the orchestra which will suggest the ways of certain animals. The most famous of them all is probably "The Swan" in which the cello plays the solo part while rippling chords in the accompaniment suggest the rippling
water on which the swan floats. The rich, singing tone of the cello is well-suited to be a noble swan in the music.

In another piece, "The Elephant," the string basses play a very low, cumbersome melody which is hacky sounding though very low, of course, because the string bass is a very deep sounding instrument.

Other beasts represented in this suite are the "Royal March of the Lions," "Hens and Cocks," "Tortoises," "Kangaroos," "The Aquarium," and "Birds" (imitated by flutes).

Two other pieces in which Saint-Saëns is obviously making fun of people are "Personages with Long Ears" and "Pianists." The "personages with long ears" are identified in the music by the unmistakable bray of a donkey. To include pianists in a suite of animal music is obviously poking fun at a breed of animals who spend long hours practicing finger exercises. And that is what the pianist does in this piece while the orchestra just plays chords here and there.

In the piece entitled "Fossils," Saint-Saëns makes fun of himself and other composers. He used fragments of some of his own compositions, as well as those of other composers, implying that they were "fossilized" already.

In a grand finale, all of the animals parade in review with the "Personages with Long Ears" bringing up the rear and having the last word.

This suite can show us that serious music is not always written with the most serious intentions. Sometimes, as in some of these pieces, the composer writes with his "tongue in his cheek," really having a gay time making fun of something or someone. It should be listened to in the same frame of mind.

VI. The Ballet

Ballet - A musical composition written to be danced either as a dramatic presentation or as a part or dance interlude in an opera.

The origin of ballet was during the Renaissance Period, some 500 years ago. The Renaissance was a rebirth in many areas such as sciences and the arts. Italy was the first country to bear fruit in the Renaissance. It is here that the first professional dancing masters appeared. They created dances of their own. Many of the dances produced by these early masters expressed some of the feelings between the performers, such as the rivalry of a group of young men for a girl's favors, or the spurning of an unwelcome suitor's attentions. These dances so caught the fancy of the time that before long the dance spread throughout Italy. During the Sixteenth Century the dance was to find a place in the developing arts of drama and opera.
When King Charles VIII of France crossed the Alps with his army in 1494 to claim the throne of Naples, he and his courtiers were astonished at the wealth of dancing they found. The magnificence of the court entertainments in Milan and elsewhere must have dazzled them almost into disbelief. Often no expense would be spared and the greatest artists of the time would contribute their services.

The French discovery of Italian culture was to have far-reaching consequences in the development of ballet. For along time, dancing has been a courtly recreation in France, where there had been entertainments called "mascarades" which bore a certain primitive resemblance to the ballets of later times, and in which the king himself had sometimes taken part. These mascarades followed no set form and were often just a means of celebration. It was only with the appearance of the Italian dancing masters at the French court that dancing became a refined and essential courtly accomplishment and the seeds of the French court ballet were sown.

The king of France brought Diobono, an Italian dancing master, to Paris, along with a band of Italian musicians. In 1581, a grand ballet, Italian style, was produced in Versailles and from then on the countries interested in adopting the court ballet, turned to France as an example. The court ballet maintained its popularity for nearly 100 years.

During the reign of Louis XIII in France, the court ballet began to change. Music began to play a more important part and the subject was often based on a heroic or romantic theme. In 1621, another type of ballet developed, which consisted of a number of separate sketches or characters, linked only by some general idea. By about 1630, professional dancers began to appear and at first they just played mostly the comic and character roles, never taking part in the grand ballet at the end, which was reserved for the king and his courtiers.

The court ballet entered its last phase under the next king, Louis XIV. Realizing that art could enhance his importance as a monarch, the King chose men of real talent to produce the ballets which added so much to the brilliance of his court. The most famous choreographer of this period, Charles-Louis Beauchamps, invented a system of notation for recording dances. The five positions of the feet were just beginning to be accepted as the basis of technique. Louis XIV founded the Academy Royale de Danse in 1661, which consisted of thirteen dancing masters. Louis XIV founded the Paris Opera in 1669 for the ballet so that it would have a place to perform. This was the ballet's first entrance into theater, which the opera house really was.

At first only men were the dancers but in the Eighteenth Century there were some parts for women dancers. However, ballerinas had to wear heavy, long skirts which prevented them from dancing as skillfully as men. Marie-Anne Camargo was the first woman to appear at the Paris Opera in 1726. One evening when one of the men dancers missed his entrance, Marie-Anne leaped forward
and danced his variation. Before long, Marie-Anne was performing the difficult steps that only men could do before. She shortened her skirt several inches to give her greater freedom of movement and allow these steps to be better seen. This brought about many changes in costuming.

Around 1800, costuming became much simpler. Towards the middle of the Nineteenth Century, the ballerina's skirt followed the trend in women's everyday fashions and became more bell-shaped. The stage picture, ballet as seen by the audience, had also come closer to what the public of today is accustomed to and the introduction of gas lighting, the practice of bringing the curtain down between the scenes and lowering house lights during performance, all helped to produce a greater illusion than ever before. This was the beginning of the Romantic Ballet which was a revolt against strict forms and cold, lifeless techniques. Writers, painters, musicians and artists of all kinds began to seek fresh sources of inspiration and to express themselves in new ways. The Romantic Ballet became more poetic and appealed more directly to the emotions of the audience than in earlier times. Supernatural scenes became very popular and the use of legends using fantastic creatures.

By 1850, the Romantic Ballet began to lose its force because of the popularity of opera and ballet in Western Europe began to decline. However, in the fifty years before the First World War of 1914 to 1918, St. Petersburg, Russia, took pride in becoming the main center of ballet, previously held by Paris. In St. Petersburg alone, the art of ballet maintained an equal standing with opera and at the lovely Maryinsky Theatre, with its huge auditorium decorated in blue and gold, the great Tschaikovsky ballets, "The Sleeping Beauty," "The Nutcracker Suite" and "Swan Lake," were just as important as the operas. The Maryinsky of the late Nineteenth Century was probably the most glamorous opera house in the world. Most of its seats were reserved for the Court, the diplomatic corps, etc., leaving less than a third for the public. This is where Tschaikovsky's ballets gained their importance.

Suggested Ballets:

1. "Ballet of the Sylphs" from the Damnation of Faust, Berlioz
2. "Pizzicato Polka" from Ballet Suite #1, Shostakovitch
3. "Petite Ballerina" from Ballet Suite #1, Shostakovitch
4. "Waltz #1" from Faust Ballet Music, Gounod
5. "Spirits of the Earth" The Perfect Fool Ballet Suite, Holst

Following are summaries of famous ballets:

STORY OF THE FIREBIRD, Igor Stravinsky (e'gor stra vin'ski)

The "Story of the Firebird" as it was displayed in "The Firebird" ballet is based on various Russian fairy tales.
While out hunting one day, Ivan Tsarevitch strays into an enchanted wood surrounding the castle of the wizard, Kastchei. Near him is a tree gleaming with golden fruit. There is the sound of wings and a bird of dazzling plumage lights in the tree. It is the magic Firebird! As it plucks an apple from the tree, Ivan aims an arrow and misses. The frightened bird flies off. Soon it returns and Ivan springs from his hiding place and seizes it. The Firebird begs for its life. Ivan sets it free and is rewarded with a golden feather.

A wistful melody comes from afar as twelve maidens appear through the woods. Ivan conceals himself. He watches them shake apples from the tree and toss them to one another. They draw back startled as Ivan reveals himself. The leader urges him to flee lest he fall into Kastchei's power and be turned into stone. Ivan is determined to remain and match his prowess with the demon's.

Suddenly there is a menacing outcry and the terrified maidens dash back into the castle. Ivan is alone again. As the dark deepens, fear begins to grip him. A fiery light now floods the forest and a band of demons swoop down on Ivan. The dreaded Kastchei himself appears. He scowls ferociously. Ivan fights off the spell by waving the golden feather. The Firebird helps by leading Kastchei's demons into a frenzied dance. Dazed and powerless, they fall asleep. The Firebird directs Ivan to a buried chest. In it Ivan finds a huge egg. Contained in the egg is the soul of Kastchei -- the source of his evil. Kastchei watches frantically as Ivan tosses the egg into the air and catches it. Finally Ivan drops it. There is a sudden blackout and a shattering turmoil. Kastchei and his demons are swept away. The castle vanishes and the youths and maidens, freed from the spell, rush out joyously and acclaim Ivan their hero and ruler. Ivan marries the loveliest of the freed maidens.

RODEO BALLET, Aaron Copland (ar'en köp'ledn)

In 1940, Copland composed the music for the ballet, "Rodeo." The famous Agnes de Mille created the dances to go with the music. The work was first performed by the American Ballet in this country. Later it was taken on the Ballet's European tour and enthusiastically acclaimed as a great American ballet. This music for the ballet is so composed that even though you have not seen it danced you can imagine just what is happening.

Story of the "Rodeo Ballet": The heroine of this story is a little girl in her early teens. She lives on Burnt Ranch. Out heroine has always admired the head wrangler and the champion roper. She has begun to have romantic ideas about her heroes, of which they, of course, are not aware. She thinks she likes the head wrangler best.
The dance opens with the little cowgirl leaning against the corral fence, watching the ranch activities and secretly watching the champion roper and the head wrangler. This time, repeated in various ways, expresses the little cowgirl's awakening to romance ("Buckaroo Holiday").

Then the music changes to a folk dance introduced first by the trombone, then repeated by the trumpet. It has a western flavor. ("Buckaroo Holiday" and "Folk Dance Theme").

After much "fooling around," the cowboys leave without paying attention to our little heroine. With bitterness, she jumps on her horse and gallops off. Will no one realize that she has grown up?

Several city girls have come to visit the rancher's daughter. A square dance and party are planned in their honor that evening. Twilight falls and a quiet mood settles over the ranch. ("Corral Nocturne").

Everyone is busy dressing for the party that evening. The little cowgirl is left alone and sad as the scene ends.

The second scene opens with a jazzy little solo for the piano to set the mood of the party. Everyone is dressed in their party clothes except the little cowgirl. The cowboys are courting the feminine strangers from the city and everyone has a partner for the Saturday Night Waltz except the little cowgirl. ("Saturday Night Waltz").

The little girl watches the wrangler dancing with the rancher's daughter. The roper, feeling sorry for our little heroine, asks her to dance. She starts to dance with the roper, but still watching the wrangler, she is overcome with jealousy. There she stands in the middle of the floor not knowing what to do. The roper, annoyed with the little cowgirl, gives her a spank. She is so shocked that she runs away humiliated.

The party continues without our heroine. The music is lively and exciting. The piano is again used in the score as a percussion instrument. Here is the catchy rhythm "Hoe-Down."

In the midst of the hilarity, the little cowgirl suddenly reappears -- this time wearing a party dress. Everyone is amazed at the change. Now they realize how attractive she is. The roper courts her ardently. She accepts his invitation to dance. With a wistful glance over her shoulder at the wrangler, she joins the roper as everyone continues with the Saturday Night Dance.

A number of American folk songs are woven into the score.

THE GOLDEN AGE BALLET, Dmitri Shostakovich (di mē' tri sho sta ko' vich)

Shostakovich was born in Leningrad, Russia. Because of his daring and experimental style of music, he had frequently been in and out of favor of the Russian government. "The Golden Age Ballet"
was composed in 1930. It reminds one something of the ballet written by Stravinsky, "Petrouchka."

The most well known section of "The Golden Age Ballet" is the polka. The polka is a dance which most likely originated in Bohemia. When the polka was brought to this country, everyone loved the dance. The polka has two beats in each measure. Shostakovich's polka sounds different from most other polkas in that it has modern harmony. This type of harmony is very refreshing to our ears, which are accustomed to more conventional harmonies.

Following are the three themes of the polka from "The Golden Age Ballet." The first theme has a rollicking "rocking chair" rhythm. The second theme seems to sing "I'm the Captain of the Pinafore" in the third and fourth measures to Gilbert and Sullivan "fans." The ending of the polka is very humorous, as one expects that it is finished, and then it goes on.

THE SLEEPING BEAUTY BALLET SUITE, Peter Tschaikovsky (pyo'ter chi kof'ski)

Tschaikovsky was born on May 7, 1840, in Russia. At the age of ten, he was sent to a school to prepare for law and graduated when nineteen. It was not long before Tschaikovsky discovered law was not for him and began to study music. He taught music later in a music conservatory and also traveled considerably conducting his own works. He wrote six symphonies, several overtures, a piano concerto, a violin concerto and several ballet suites.

The "Sleeping Beauty Ballet" is a series of short dance pieces in different styles.

La Fee Des Lilas (The Lilac Fairy): A roll of timpani and a series of bold chords introduce a lovely graceful melody of the lilac fairy.

Adagio (A Slow Dance): The woodwinds usher in a series of glittering figures for the harp and then the singing voices of the strings play the main melody.

Pas d'Action (A Vigorous Dance): Without a break, the music flows into this dance from the slow dance with different rhythm and different combinations of instruments.

Pas de Caractere: Le Chat Botte et la Chatte Blanche (Characteristic Dance: Puss-in-Boots and the White Cat): Opens with a cat's meow and then continues with a dialog in "cat language" in the woodwind section between the White Cat and Puss-in-Boots. Master Puss advances and retreats being met by the White Cat's flashing claws and warning cries. At the end we are left to our imagination as to whether the cats made peace with each other or Puss left with a scratched nose and damaged dignity.
Panorama: A happy scene of dancing figures accompanied by violins and the harp.

Valse (Waltz); Tschaikovsky wrote many beautiful waltzes. There is a bold, impressive introduction by the brass and string instruments. Then the waltzing rhythm is begun by the string basses and woodwinds. Now the violins take up the sweeping, swaying melody.

VII. Program Music

Program Music - Music designed to convey an impression of a definite series of images.

This type of music attempts to present a suggestion rather than an imitation of things in nature, such as a running brook, bird songs, forest sounds or of a story. Its main effort is to suggest the emotions that arise in us from these scenes or stories.

We might also call it "descriptive music" because it attempts to describe through music and the emotions certain specific situations. Program music might be compared to an artist's canvas. The artist expresses his descriptions by using brush and paint, while the composer employs musical devices which will suggest his ideas to the listener.

Program music is found in nearly all periods of music history from at least the Fourteenth Century, but it was not until the Nineteenth Century that it assumed a role of importance among musical compositions. Johann Sebastian Bach, a very famous composer who lived from 1685-1750, wrote a musical suggestion of a hunt. Later, composers developed program music to a much higher level. Before 1600, most composers limited themselves to the suggestion of natural sounds such as thunder or bird calls, to battle cries, trumpet fanfares or to bodily movements such as running, hobbling and falling. Beginning with the Seventeenth Century, composers tended to portray emotions through program music. Anguish, confidence, sorrow or joy could be suggested through music and movies still employ this type of program music in their musical backgrounds. If you listen carefully to the music which accompanies the action of the movie, you will find that it increases your feelings of joy, sorrow, excitement or fear.

Beethoven's "Pastoral Symphony," written in 1808, marked the beginning of program music of the Nineteenth Century. This symphony, as the title suggests, paints a picture of nature and nature's sounds. Beethoven introduced the musical cry of the nightingale, the cuckoo, and the quail, as well as painting on his musical canvas in such a way that our emotions respond in the ways that we might respond to the grandeur of nature. Other composers before Beethoven had used these techniques but never before had a composer written an entire composition such as a long symphony, taking more than a half hour for performance, using the entire form as program music.
The "Grand Canyon Suite" was written in 1931, although many years before, Große had lived in Arizona and his ideas began to form then. He knows the terrain of the Grand Canyon region, its animal and bird life and the people and their habits and customs. He was determined to put it in music someday.

Sunrise: This section begins with a shimmering glow of faint light portrayed by soft violins. Clarinets have a soft continuous sustained part and then the bright rays of the sunrise peep through as the piccolo trills like early morning birds. The flute picks up this birdlike melody. The English horn plays the complete theme, then the flute. Gradually the music gets louder as the sun rises and finally it bursts forth in its brilliance as the full orchestra plays the theme.

Painted Desert: Many combinations of instruments are used to present musical coloring. The section opens with a very soft string background with a p playing octave skips which are heard off and on throughout the section. The woodwinds build background of deep color behind as a celesta (a bell-toned instrument with a keyboard similar to the piano) brings out highlights of brilliant colors. The entire orchestra now presents the full rich coloring of purples, reds, oranges and yellows in the sandy rock formations in the "Painted Desert." A return to the soft introduction and then a solo clarinet plays, followed by an oboe. Full color and depth again comes forth in all its beauties only to end softly as the English horn plays its weird melody, the soft string and harp part similar to the beginning is heard again.

On the Trail: Donkey trains take tourists down the narrow, winding trails from the rim of the Canyon to the floor. A gentle "clip clop" is the very evident rhythm pattern. The section opens with a violin solo as the tourists with their guide prepare for the long trip. The donkeys are anxious to get started and their braying is evident in the music. As the donkeys set out, the oboe plays the predominating theme to the clip-clop background. Much donkey braying is evident in the woodwind section. The music turns to a dreamy, restful mood as the travelers stop for water. One again the journey is resumed as the hoof beats are heard. The celesta has a beautiful little part and then vigorously the orchestra finishes the section.

Sunset: The setting sun casts eery shadows over the Grand Canyon and the music sets the feeling of the grandeur of it all. In the beginning, the horns echo back and forth and the strings play a bell-like melody which gradually builds up. This melody is repeated by the solo oboe, then the whole orchestra.

Cloudburst: The strings remind us of the melody from "On the Trail" in the opening strains of this movement, only so soft and sweet this time. The oboe and flute carry the theme, then the strings, all with a background of harp. Again the melody is brought in by the clarinet, echoed by the oboe, and then the bells. The cello in a solo part portrays the quiet lull before the storm.
Soft rain begins to fall as the strings have a soft shimmering part. Suddenly the shimmering of the violins is rudely interrupted by thunder and lightning. Thunder is played by the timpani and lightning by sharp, piercing tones of trumpets and a fast glissando on the piano. The storm is upon us in all its fury. Almost as quickly as it came, it begins to leave and the Canyon is refreshed and sparkling as the original melody is played in all its fullness.

THE MOLDAU, Frederich Smetana (sme'ta na)

Smetana was born in Bohemia and even as a child became a virtuoso of the piano. Later he became the conductor of the Philharmonic Society of Gothenberg, Sweden. He composed a cycle of six symphonic poems entitled "My Fatherland." Of these, "The Moldau" is the second. Few artists of any period have set forth the glory and beauty of their land with such eloquence. History, tradition and legend sweep through the cycle and the gay laughter and healthy vigor of the Bohemian countryside pulse in its folkish interludes. Smetana wanted others to see his brave little land and learn to love it also.

This music is called "program music" because it has a story background. "The Moldau" is a great river running through Bohemia. The river, Smetana tells us, is a union of two streams that meet in the forest, one cool and calm, the other warm and vivacious. As it rushes through the woods, we hear the call of the hunter's horn. It rushes past a clearing where happy peasants celebrate a wedding feast with dancing and with song. It falls in mighty rapids and at last comes to the great city of Prague, where its channel broadens and it flows in calm majesty on its way to the sea. The flowing melodies, clear and smooth as a sylvan stream, are played by violin, woodwinds and harp. "In these waves are reflected many a fortress and castle -- witnesses of the bygone splendor of chivalry."

PICTURES AT AN EXHIBITION, Modeste Moussorgsky (mo dest' moo sorg' skij)

"Pictures at an Exhibition" was written by the Russian composer, Modeste Moussorgsky. One of Moussorgsky's closest friends was a man named Victor Hartmann, a painter and architect, who died at the untimely age of 39. His death was one of the greatest sorrows of Moussorgsky's life. Other friends and admirers of Hartmann planned to honor his memory with an exhibition of his paintings and this occasion led to the composition "Pictures at an Exhibition".

The music begins with a bold striding theme called "Promenade." This helps us to imagine a casual gallery visitor walking in to look about. The first picture seen by the visitor is "Gnomes." In this, woodwinds and plucked strings help us to picture a grotesque bandy-legged fellow with alternating spry and jerky movements.
The "Promenade" occurs in different ways with interesting changes of tempo, dynamics (loudness and softness), and changes of orchestration in between each "picture."

VII. The Operetta

Operetta - A dramatic musical composition shorter than an opera, lighter in character.

The operetta began as a miniature play given between acts of a play. This short, gay and often humorous entertainment was called an intermezzo. The intermezzo became so popular that often a three-act comedy was given during the intermissions of a serious play.

Later in France, the light opera or operetta grew from short plays which always had a happy ending. The first French operetta was written by Adam de la Halle, a singing knight. It was called "Robin and Marion."

The operetta, as the opera, is a play set to music. The differences between opera and the operetta are several. In the operetta, the dialogue and songs advance the plot. Most operettas have a happy ending while operas usually do not. Operetta music usually contains gay melodies, easily remembered, and are less dramatic than the melodies of opera. Finally, the dances in an opera are done by a ballet company; operetta dances are of a lighter nature.

Some examples of operettas of note are: "Pinafore" by Gilbert and Sullivan; "Mikado" by Gilbert and Sullivan; "Die Fledermaus" by Johann Strauss; "Merry Widow" by Franz Lehar; "Babes in Toyland" by Victor Herbert and "Porgy and Bess" by George Gershwin.

Many Broadway shows are considered by some to be the modern product of operetta. Examples of these are: "Sound of Music" by Rodgers and Hammerstein; "Oklahoma" by Rodgers and Hammerstein and "The King and I" by Rodgers and Hammerstein.

Suggested Operettas:

1. Gilbert and Sullivan, "H.M.S. Pinafore"
2. Gilbert and Sullivan, "The Mikado"
3. Victor Herbert, "Babes in Toyland"
4. Rodger and Hammerstein, "The King and I"

Following are summaries of famous operettas:

THE MIKADO or THE TOWN OF TITIPU, Sir William S. Gilbert and Sir Arthur Sullivan

"The Mikado" was first produced on March 14, 1885, and was one of a long list of "comic operas" composed by the team of Gilbert and Sullivan. Gilbert (the librettist) suggested the theme to Sullivan (the composer) at a time when there was a fad for things
Japanese in England, as a result of a "Japanese village" exhibition in Kensington.

The characters are: The Mikado of Japan; Nanki-Poo, his son (disguised as a wandering minstrel); Ko-Ko, the Lord High Executioner of Titipu; Pooh-Bah, Lord High Everything Else; Fishtush, a Noble Lord; Yum-Yum, Pitti-Sing and Peep-Bo, wards of Ko-Ko; and Katisha, an elderly lady in love with Nanki-Poo.

Authentic Japanese names? Hardly. Gilbert had evidently been spending some time in the nursery for they are all examples of Victorian baby talk. (Pitti-Sing or "pretty thing," and so on).

As a matter of fact, the only thing in "The Mikado" that is authentically Japanese is the song used for the entrance of Katisha and the Mikado. As in all Gilbert and Sullivan operas, the setting is actually England and the satire is directed at English customs, institutions, people and music.

The plot concerns the Mikado's son, Nanki-Poo, who, disguised as a wandering minstrel, arrives in Titipu to seek the hand of Yum-Yum and to escape Katisha, who intends to marry him. He finds, however, that Yum-Yum is engaged to Ko-Ko, the Lord High Executioner. (Ko-Ko was appointed to his position under rather unusual circumstances. It seems he was next in line to be executed for breaking the Mikado's law against flirting, and kind-hearted, or possibly frightened, village authorities appointed him executioner on the theory that "who's next to be decapitated cannot cut off another's head until he's cut his own off.")

Ko-Ko suddenly receives a letter from the Mikado, however, demanding an execution. Since he is next in line, he must behead himself unless he can find another victim. Nanki-Poo, who feels he doesn't want to live without Yum-Yum, volunteers to be executed in a month, if he be allowed to marry Yum-Yum immediately. Ko-Ko agrees. Plans are made for the wedding and everyone wishes Nanki-Poo long life (for a month) until Ko-Ko interrupts their happiness by discovering another of the Mikado's laws -- if a man is beheaded, his wife must be buried alive. This puts Yum-Yum in a difficult position. If she does not marry Nanki-Poo, she must marry Ko-Ko. If she marries Ko-Ko, Nanki-Poo will not agree to be beheaded, which will deprive Ko-Ko of his substitute.

Suddenly Pooh-Bah announces that the Mikado is arriving. Panic stricken, Ko-Ko decides to pretend he has executed Nanki-Poo, who will, in turn marry Yum-Yum and go away forever.

But the Mikado's real purpose is to find Nanki-Poo and when he reads the death certificate he calmly informs all concerned that they've beheaded the heir apparent and will themselves be executed immediately after lunch.

Ko-Ko runs off and finds Nanki-Poo, who refuses to reappear until Katisha is married. The only solution is for Ko-Ko to marry her himself. Katisha finally agrees, Nanki-Poo comes forward with his new bride and everything ends happily with a wedding toast.
The best known selections from "The Mikado" are: "A Wandering Minstrel I," sung by Nanki-Poo, satirizing several types of popular songs; "As Some Day It May Happen," the executioner's song about his little list of potential victims who "never would be missed," (this gives Gilbert a chance to attack all sorts of people who annoy him but he leaves blanks for the names of "apologetic statesman of a compromising kind" and tells the audience to fill them in for themselves); "Were you Not To Ko-Ko Plighted? where Nanki-Poo and Yum-Yum demonstrate what they would do if she weren't engaged; "A More Humane Mikado," the Mikado tells how he'll make the punishment fit the crime" and Gilbert attacks more types of people; "The Flowers That Bloom in the Spring" and "Willow, Titwillow," as Ko-Ko contemplates, then courts Katisha.

BABES IN TOYLAND, Victor Herbert

Victor Herbert was born February 1, 1859, in Dublin, Ireland. His father died when he was two or three years old. He and his mother went to live with his grandfather where he was continually surrounded by music and musicians. When he was seven, his mother married a German doctor and they went to Germany to live. Victor learned to play the piano, flute, piccolo and finally chose the cello as his instrument. When he was seventeen, Victor began to earn his own living as a musician, playing in orchestras and appearing as a soloist. His mother and stepfather did not have enough money to send him to school to be a doctor. (It was traditional for the son to learn his father's profession.) Victor was best suited for music anyway. When he was twenty-four, he wrote a cello concerto which was well received. He married a well-known soprano soloist several years later and they both were given positions with the New York Metropolitan Opera Company and came to the United States. They became well known on the concert stage in New York. When Herbert was thirty-four, he was restless and first desired to compose operettas. Some of his best known operettas include "Babes in Toyland," "Naughty Marietta," "The Fortune Teller," "The Red Mill," and "Sweethearts." He wrote fifty-one operettas before his death on May 26, 1924.

Act I, Scene I: The people of Mother Goose Land were attending a party in Contrary Mary's garden. Barnaby, an old miser who never smiles, revealed that he was giving the party to announce his engagement to Contrary Mary, one of the Widow Piper's fourteen children. The others didn't like to hear this news because they knew that Mary was in love with Alan, Barnaby's nephew. Barnaby also told them that Alan and Jane (Barnaby's niece) were lost in a storm at sea. The guests did not believe him and some of them went to hunt for Alan and Jane.

Contrary Mary refused to marry Barnaby and meanwhile Alan, not really lost at sea, thought she had forsaken him and decided to go with his sister, Jane, to Toyland. Barnaby plotted to cause Alan and Jane to get lost in the Spider Forest. Finally Contrary Mary decided to escape from Barnaby and also went to Toyland.
Scene II: Alan and Jane were lost in the Spider Forest. Alan released a moth from a spider web and in gratitude, the Fairy Queen sent a bear to save them from the Giant Spider and then she guided them safely out of the forest.

Act II, Scene I: Barnaby brought the Widow Piper and her family to Toyland to find Mary. They engaged the services of Marmaduke, the Inspector of Toyland Detectives.

The Master Toymaker gave the Piper children presents and took them out to see the sights of Toyland. Contrary Mary, masquerading as Mademoiselle Elisette, is a designer in the workshop, to try to hide from Barnaby.

Alan and Jane finally decided to leave Toyland but they couldn't get the Master Toymaker's permission to leave. So they dressed as toy soldiers hoping to stow away in a shipment of toys.

Barnaby was very angry because he couldn't find Mary so he wanted the Master Toymaker to make toys for the Piper children that would hurt them. But the Toymaker refused and instead he showed Barnaby a flask where he had confined the spirits of evil. He said that some day he would have all the evil in the world imprisoned and children would always be happy and good. Barnaby wanted to buy the flask but the Master Toymaker ordered him out of Toyland.

Meanwhile, Alan, in his toy soldier's uniform, led a toy soldier parade and Jane was the drum majorette. After the parade, Mary came into the workshop and discovered Alan, her real lover.

Barnaby somehow got the flask of evil spirits and he released them. They all entered dolls and the dolls turned upon him and he barely escapes from them. The Master Toymaker came in, discovering the tragedy, but he was overwhelmed by the dolls and fell into a trance. Barnaby tried to blame Alan for letting out the evil spirits and Alan was led away to be sentenced. The dolls turned upon Barnaby and beat him unmercifully.

Scene II: The Master Toymaker couldn't be awakened and Alan was sentenced to be beheaded but he escaped. His friends planned to smuggle him out of Toyland as a toy general but Barnaby overheard the plot. He forced Contrary Mary to promise to marry him or else he would expose their plot to smuggle Alan out of Toyland. Barnaby drank a glass of water from the Laughing Water Well and when he burst into laughter and fell in a faint, the spell of the evil spirits was broken, releasing the Master Toymaker from his trance. Barnaby was revealed as the villain and everything ended happily.

The chorus of singers in the operetta contains such storybook characters as Dandies, Fairies, Villagers, Toyshop Workers, Toy Soldiers and French Dolls. The Widow Piper's children include Simple Simon, Peter, Tommy Tucker, Boy Blue, Bobby Shafto, Sallie Waters, Miss Muffett, Curly Locks and Red Riding Hood.
"The King and I" is based on Margaret Landon's novel, "Anna and the King of Siam." Anna Leonowens comes to Siam from England to teach the royal princes and princesses the ways of western culture. A widow, she has come with her little boy, Louis, having been promised a house of her own, as well as a salary in English money. When she arrives, she discovers that the King has gone back on his promise; she must live in the palace with the royal wives, children and servants.

There results a clash between eastern and western cultures which, after a time, draws the two together. Anna plans to leave until she learns the King is dying. She gets her house at this part of the story. After the King's death, she decides to stay on in Siam as a teacher of the children she has come to love.

Some of the highlights of this famous musical are the following selections: "Getting to Know You," "I Whistle A Happy Tune," "Hello Young Lovers" and "We Kiss in the Shadow."

VIII. Musical Comedy

Musical Comedy - An American form of theatre music that combines features of the comic opera and the revue.

The plot of a musical comedy is often realistic and contemporary in contrast to the plots of many nineteenth century operas which deal with the mystic and the fantastic. Interspersed throughout the story are songs and dances which add to the mood, help to communicate the personality of the players, comment on the situation, and often further the plot of the story.
Ludwig Van Beethoven
Composers

I. Beethoven

*Ludwig Van Beethoven (lōód'vikh fan ba'to ven)
Born: Bonn, Germany, 1770
Died: Vienna, Austria, 1827

Beethoven's father was a drunken singer who made him become a musician and beat him when he wouldn't practice enough. At four he was studying the violin and piano. At eleven he made his first concert tour, at thirteen he became assistant court organist. At fifteen he took entire charge of the family.

Beethoven studied music in Vienna, achieving great success as a pianist. At twenty-eight he realized he was losing his hearing. He soon gave up his concert work to devote his entire time to composing while he struggled against poverty, ill health and growing deafness.

Beethoven produced some of his greatest works in the isolation caused by deafness.

Beethoven was one of the most famous and influential German composers of the 1800's.

He established the vocation of composers as a dignified profession.

His works total 138 in varied forms. His best known symphonies include "Symphony No. 5 in C Minor," "Symphony No. 3 in E Flat Major," "The Pastoral Symphony" and "The Choral Symphony."

Beethoven is buried in the famed Central Cemetery of Vienna near the tombs of many other famous composers.
*Igor Stravinsky (e'gor stra vin'ski)
Born: St. Petersburg, Russia, 1882
Died:

In 1882 near the capitol city of St. Petersburg, Russia, which is today known as Leningrad, Igor Stravinsky was born. Because the day of his birth was Saint Igor's Day, he was named after the saint. Although Stravinsky's father was a singer in the Imperial Opera and interested in having a musical son, Igor chose to make a career of law. However, when he was twenty years old and a law student, the Russian composer Rimsky-Korsakov heard him play some of the piano music which Stravinsky himself had composed. The Russian master found his music original and powerful. The encouragement Rimsky-Korsakov gave the young Stravinsky was all he needed to turn to the full-time study of music.

After six years of study, Stravinsky wrote an unusual and daring piece for symphony orchestra in which he depicted in music the dazzling and explosive action of fireworks. He wrote this piece, which he called "Fireworks," for the wedding of Rimsky-Korsakov's daughter.

About a year later, a director of a famous Russian ballet company needed someone to write the music for his new ballet, "The Firebird." A composer has been commissioned to write the score but he had delayed so long that the director decided to look for someone else. Because Stravinsky had become famous with his "Fireworks" he seemed to be just the person for this task. Thus the assignment fell to Stravinsky and he completed the score within a few months. In June of 1910, the ballet was first performed in Paris. Later, the music from "The Firebird" ballet was played in concerts as an orchestral suite.

Stravinsky went on to write other ballets, including "Petrouchka" and "The Rite of Spring." His ballets became some of his best known works. In 1925, he came to the United States to conduct some of our major symphony orchestras. He became an American citizen in 1945 and settled in California.
III. Copland

*Aaron Copland (ar'en köp'lend)
Born: 1900
Died:

Aaron Copland is one of America's favorite contemporary composers. He was born in Brooklyn, New York. His parents were born in Lithuania. The original family name was "Kaplan," but when Aaron Copland's father immigrated from Lithuania to England, he pronounced his name so that the officials spelled it "Copland" and it has been spelled that way ever since.

Copland studied piano as a boy. After he graduated from high school, he continued to study piano and had harmony and composition lessons from Rubin Goldmark. Goldmark was also George Gershwin's teacher. After four years of study and composing, Copland went to France to study with the great teacher, Nadia Boulanger of Fontainebleau. Continuing his composing after he returned home, he was the first composer to receive the Guggenheim Fellowship. His "Dance Symphony" won him a five thousand dollar prize. Hollywood paid him to write the music for such well known films as "Our Town," "Of Mice and Men," and "The Red Pony."

In 1940, Copland composed the music for the ballet, "Rodeo." The famous Agnes de Mille created the dances to go with the music. The work was first performed by the American Ballet in this country. Later it was taken on the Ballet's European tour and enthusiastically acclaimed as a great American ballet. This music for the ballet is so composed that even though you have not seen it danced you can imagine just what is happening.

IV. Gershwin

*George Gershwin
Born: 1898
Died: 1937

Gershwin was the son of immigrants and grew up in the slums of New York's lower East Side.

His musical talent lay undiscovered for years, but when he was 12, the Gershwin family acquired a piano and music became his life.

By the time he was 15, he had learned to play the piano well enough to get a job as a song plugger at Remick's publishing house. For hours, he would play the firm's latest songs for visiting performers. He hated the job, but the experience taught him how the songs were put together.
In the years that followed, George began to try his own hand at song writing. He liked to write with a blend of ragtime jazz and the Russian and Jewish turn of melody that were his heritage.

In 1919, when he was 21, the first all-Gershwin show opened on Broadway. It was a smash hit.

The quality of Gershwin's work is best judged by the fact that, 30 years after his death, his songs are as popular as ever.

V. Charles Ives

*Charles Ives
Born: 1874
Died: 1954

Ives is one of the most important composers of the twentieth century.

His father, a Civil War bandleader and a friend of Stephen Foster, started Charles studying drums, piano, violin, and cornet when he was only 8 years old.

At Yale, Ives majored in music, and shocked his teachers by failing to follow the rules of harmony, even though he knew them backwards and forwards.

After graduation, Ives realized that he could never earn a living by writing the kind of music he loved, so he selected the insurance field as a career. While he was struggling to build an insurance agency, he found time to compose, too.

Ives published many of his works at his own expense, and sent them to musicians all over the world. Unfortunately, his songs were considered unsingable, his orchestral works unplayable, and his musical ideas unbearable! However, he went right on composing. Today, forty-five years after his last important work was composed, the music of Charles Ives has at last been given the recognition it deserves.

VI. Samuel Barber

*Samuel Barber
Born: 1910
Died:

Barber was born in West Chester, Pennsylvania in 1910.

Samuel began playing the piano and composing when he was very young. He soon won scholarships and prizes for his compositions. It is now said that his music is performed more often than that of
any other living American composer. Barber's music contains modern sounds, but also shows that he likes and learns from the music of the past. He has written much instrumental music, including symphonies, concertos, overtures, and suites, but several of his famous works are for voice. One of the highest honors of his career came in 1958, when he received the Pulitzer Prize in Music for his opera Vanessa, which had its premier at the Metropolitan Opera in New York City.
GLOSSARY OF COMMON TERMS AND SYMBOLS

This glossary contains definitions of terms used in this handbook and such additional terms as seem necessary for common understandings concerning procedures for music instruction.

Inasmuch as each program of music instruction establishes its own goals and uses somewhat unique materials, it is only reasonable to assume it makes unique demands on its teachers as to their knowledge of content. For this reason, the following information has been compiled to aid teachers to know and understand what content demands will be placed upon them. Few teachers will use all of this information in any year; however, it is well for them to be aware of it.

Accent: More than usual stress.

Accidentals: Cancel or natural sign cancels the flat or sharp previously indicated by the key signature or by an accidental (a sharp or flat not in the key signature, added to alter a scale tone).

Sharp chromatic raises the tone 1/2 step from its pitch in the scale; or restores the regular scale pitch after previous change by a cancel.

Flat chromatic lowers the tone 1/2 step; or restores the regular scale pitch after previous change by a cancel.

Alle breve, or cut time, means 4 meter moving fast enough to feel two pulses per measure. It is equal to $\frac{2}{4}$ but with quick movement as in marching.

Autoharp: A musical instrument designed to be used in chording in accompaniment with vocal music. It generally has twelve wooden bars marked with chord names, each of which produce a specific chord when depressed. The chord bars are lowered with the fingers of the left hand while the strings are strummed with the right hand. The instrument is held on the lap or placed on a table to be most readily played.

Brace: A vertical line at left end of two or more staves, meaning that the music of both staves happens at the same time.
Chord: Three or more tones sounded together harmonically.

Chord, tonic: A triad (a three-note chord built of thirds) based on "do" (do-mi-sol). (Also referred to as the I chord.)

Chord, dominant: A triad based on "sol" (sol-ti-re); also referred to as V chord.

Chord, dominant seventh: A triad based on "sol" (sol-ti-re-fa); also referred to as V7 chord.

Chord, sub-dominant: A triad based on "fa" (fa-la-do); also referred to as the IV chord.

Clef, treble, or G clef, gives pitch meaning to lines and spaces of the staff. It designates the second line the G above middle C.

Clef, bass, or F clef, designates the fourth line of the staff. The F below middle C.

Coda: A short tune added to a musical selection as a closing.

Common time: Means the same as 4/4 time.

D.C. or da capo: From the beginning. Repeat from the beginning to the end, or to the place marked Fine (means ending).

Directing procedures:

1. For music felt in twos, the arm movements are: down, up/ down, up/ -- not just down like hitting the desk, but down with a little bounce or rebound curving outward. This gives lightness to the movement. The up movement is just the reverse, beginning with a slight down dip.

2. For music felt in threes, the arm movements: down, out, up/ down, out, up/. (The out of count two is to the side, not to the front.)

3. When measures go with a feel of four, the arm movements are: down, in, out, up/ down, in, out, up/.
Double bar: End of the piece.

D.S. (Dal Segno) or D.S. al Fine (pronounced fee-nay), from the sign. Go back to $\text{C}\text{S}$ (the sign) and sing or play to the FINE ending.

Dynamic markings:
- **Forte** - loud $f$
- **Fortissimo** - very loud $f^f$
- **Mezzo forte** - medium loud $mf$
- **Piano** - soft $p$
- **Pianissimo** - very soft $pp$
- **Mezzo piano** - medium soft $mp$
- **Crescendo** - gradually increasing in loudness $<$
- **Descrescendo** or **diminuendo** - gradually decreasing in loudness $>$

Fermata or hold: Indicates longer duration than the note value. This is used for interpretive effect.

Fine: The end.

First and second endings: $\underline{1}$ above the staff means to sing or play these notes the first time through, but when repeating, skip this part and go to the second ending marked $\underline{2}$.

Grace note: An ornamental note, in small print, played or sung quickly and before the beat, but not counted in the note value of the measure.

Harmony: Two or more tones sounded together.

Intervals: The difference between any two notes, measured by degrees on the staff.

Key: A system of tone relationships following the pattern of a recognized scale, the keynote of which is "do", or the first tone of the scale.

Keyboard experiences: Making use of the piano keyboard as a visual aid to the teaching of music fundamentals.

Key signature: The number of sharps or flats, or absence of them, which occur on the staff immediately following the clef sign.

Leger (or ledger) line: Short lines written above or below the staff to extend the range of the staff.
Light double bar: End of the section; for example, end of introduction.

Melody: A pleasing succession of tones, usually having a pleasing rhythm.

Melody bells: A graduated series of marked flat metal bars mounted on a frame in xylophone fashion which are struck with a wooden mallet to reproduce indicated tones. These are used to accompany vocal or instrumental music.

Meter: The number of "beats" per measure, determined by the regularity of accents.

Music appreciation: Active listening to all types of music to broaden musical interest and enjoyment.

Notes: Symbols used to describe tone and duration.

Note singing: Singing a song by reading music through the use of syllables.

Orff instruments: Mallet instruments designed to enrich the musical instruction of children.

Pianet: An electronic keyboard instrument with earphone attachments allowing for "silent" practice.

Piano: A musical instrument usually having eighty-eight black and white keys used to reproduce basic tones and groups of tones or chords. The keys of the piano reproduce tones represented on the staff as described below.

Pitch pipe: A flat, circular, tonal instrument used to locate pitch. The teacher first blows the note "do" as indicated by the key signature of the song, then sings up or down by syllables to the starting note of the song.
Repeat sign: Sing or play again from the previous repeat \( \underline{\text{\textcircled{a}}} \); or if there is no previous repeat sign, go back to the beginning.

Resonator bells: A set of individual tuned resonating bars made of plastic or wood, usually in sets of twenty.

Rests: Symbols used to describe duration of absence of tone.

Rhythm: The time relation among tones as expressed by strong and weak beats.

Rhythmic activities: Bodily movement to music through singing games and creative response.

Rhythm instruments: Cacophonous instruments used as an instrumental group and for special effects to songs and rhythmic activities.

Ritard: Gradually slower.

Rolled chord or arpeggio: Notes played one after another, starting with the lowest. An instrumental notation.

Rote singing: Singing songs by repetition and imitation utilizing the ability to listen and repeat.

Scalewise pattern or passage: Consecutive notes of a scale.

Select band: An instrumental group of pupils selected for musical aptitude and ability given special instruction who occasionally play as a school band.

Select chorus: A vocal group of pupils selected for good voices, given special instruction who occasionally sing at special performances.

Select strings: An instrumental group of pupils selected for musical aptitude and ability given special instruction and who occasionally play at special performances.

Slur: Singing two notes on one syllable of a word.

Staff: A series of alternate lines and spaces (5 lines) and 4 spaces) on which notes are placed to show their pitch. The names are as indicated and are numbered from the bottom up. Each line and space is assigned a letter. The letter names are
Syncopation: A temporary replacement of the regular rhythmic pulse.

Tempo: The speed at which a piece of music moves.

Tempo marking: (arranged from slow to fast)
- Largo - slow, noble and broad
- Maestoso - with majesty; slower than andante
- Andante - a walking tempo
- Moderato - moderate tempo
- Allegro - quickly (literally, cheerful)
- Presto - fast, faster than allegro

Tie: A curved line connecting two notes of the same pitch. The notes are to be sung or played as one note, sustained as long as the two note values added together.

Time signature or meter: The two numbers or symbols, on the staff immediately following the key signature. The following illustration has a time signature. The lower number tells the kind of notes used as the unit of time measurement, (or the kind of note getting one beat) in this case the quarter note. The upper number tells how many such units (or beats) there are per measure.

Triplet: A group of three even notes played in the usual time of two similar ones, for example, three eighth notes played in the usual time of two eighth notes.

Tuned water glasses: A series of glasses or bottles of similar design gilled with varying amounts of water producing tones of varying pitches to form a scale when they are struck. They are used to provide accompaniment to vocal or instrumental music.
BIBLIOGRAPHY


Craig, Jean. **The Story of Musical Notes.** Minneapolis: Lerner Publications Co., 1963

General Music, (K-6). Rochester Public Schools, District #4. Rochester, Minn., 1966


Surplus, Robert W. **The Alphabet of Music.** Minneapolis: Lerner Publications Co., 1963

Surplus, Robert W. **The Story of Musical Organizations.** Minneapolis: Lerner Publications Co., 1963


Wolfe, Irving; Krone, Beatrice Perham; Fullerton, Margarett. **Together We Sing Series** (Grade 1-6). Chicago: Follett Publishing Company, 1959